

3rd

PREP

SECOND TERM



ALAWWAN

Gem

2026

HSITUNE



Contents

	Start Smart	5
Unit 7	Sports	7
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 7	49
Unit 8	Cultures and Traditions	52
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 8	94
Unit 9	Courage and Survival	97
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 9	136
Review	Review 3.....	139
Unit 10	Animal Adaptations	143
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 10	184
Unit 11	Stories on the Move	187
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 11	230
Unit 12	Leadership and Teamwork	233
	Al-Adwaa Test on Unit 12	275
Review	Review 4.....	278
	Challenging Questions Answers	283
	Irregular verbs	285

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثالث الإعدادي للعام الدراسي 2025-2026

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

English for Preparatory Schools - Year Three (SB)

MONTH(S)	FEBRUARY	MARCH	APRIL	MAY
UNITS	Units 7 + 8	Units 9 + 10	Units 11 + 12	General Revision

1 Finish the following dialog:

Maha and her friend Nada are talking about screen time.

Maha : I've been staring at my phone nonstop—my screen time was shocking!

Nada : Same! It's so easy to get stuck scrolling.

Maha : (1).....

Nada : That's a lot! Have you tried setting app limits?

Maha : (2)..... I need to be more alert.

Nada : Try leaving your phone out of the bedroom an hour before bed—it helps me.

Maha : (3).....

Nada : Right? Less screen time at night really improves sleep.

Maha : (4).....?

Nada : I read or go for a quick walk—it feels more productive.

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

unique – confidence – determination – confused – customize – talents

Modern education requires students to develop strong personal (1).....
Many successful learners show great (2)..... when facing challenges.
Teachers think that students who (3)..... their learning experience often
achieve better results. However, some students still feel (4)..... about new
technologies. Each student has (5)..... qualities that should be developed.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Learning a new language opens doors to different cultures, improves memory, and boosts problem-solving skills. Consistent practice—even just 15 minutes a day—is more effective than occasional long sessions. Listening to native speakers, reading simple texts, and speaking regularly help develop fluency. Mistakes are a natural part of learning; they show progress, not failure. Using apps, language partners, or watching shows in the target language makes practice enjoyable and practical. Most importantly, stay motivated by setting small, achievable goals, like ordering food or introducing yourself. Over time, these small wins build confidence and competence.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Consistent practice—even for just 15 minutes a day—is than occasional long sessions.

a) less effective b) equally effective c) more effective d) unnecessary

2. According to the text, mistakes in language learning show

a) carelessness b) lack of understanding
c) failure d) progress

3. To stay motivated, learners should set goals.
 a) difficult and long-term b) small and achievable
 c) unclear and flexible d) random and unplanned

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Why is consistency important in language learning?
 5. How can setting small goals help you stay motivated?
 6. Describe one strategy you could use to practice speaking daily.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My friends are always very and helpful when I face a challenge.
 a) awkward b) silent c) stressful d) supportive
2. There is complete in my street at night.
 a) curiosity b) confusion c) silence d) confidence
3. My first today is to clean my room.
 a) task b) honesty c) distraction d) feedback
4. The charity receives to help poor families.
 a) initiatives b) donations c) creativity d) impression
5. You can your phone settings to make it work the way you like.
 a) copy b) customize c) borrow d) ignore
6. If I about the meeting, I would have attended it.
 a) know b) knew c) have known d) had known
7. I think it rain tomorrow, so take an umbrella.
 a) is b) was c) will d) has
8. You wear a seat belt when you drive. It's the law.
 a) can b) must c) may d) should
9. She said she to the gym the next day.
 a) goes b) went c) is going d) would go
10. They in this city for ten years.
 a) have lived b) are living c) live d) lived

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If he (study) harder, he would have passed the exam.
2. I'm sure they (arrive) on time for the meeting.
3. You (can't) finish your homework before you play games.
4. She told me she (not/feel) well the day before.
5. We (not/see) that movie yet.

6 Write from ONE HUNDRED (100) to ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"An email to your friend about your last visit to the New Museum"

.....

.....

Unit

7

SPORTS



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Correctly compare and contrast ancient and modern sports using at least three specific points of difference.

Listening

- Identify specific details regarding fair play in an audio text.

Speaking

- Compare and contrast ancient and modern sports in a 3-minute roleplay.

- Express personal views on values such as teamwork and fair play.
- Discuss how sports unite people in a group discussion.

Language

- Use "used to + inf." to express past habits.

Writing

- Write a short descriptive or narrative text (100-110) words about a sporting event, using relevant vocabulary from the unit.

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

athlete (n)	لاعب رياضي	fair play (n)	اللعب النظيف
battle (n)	معركة/قتال	generation (n)	جيل
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	inspire (d) (v)	يلهم
compete (d) (v)	يتنافس/ينافس	knight (n)	فارس
competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة	value (d) (v/n)	يقيم/يقدر/قيمة

Sports رياضات

archery	رماية القوس	fencing	المبارزة بالسيف
chariot racing	سباق عربات الخيول	gladiator fights	معارك المصارعين/المحاربين
cricket	الكريكت (رياضة جماعية مشهورة)	horse riding	ركوب الخيل
discus throwing	رمي القرص	wrestling	المصارعة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

ancient times (n)	العصور القديمة	practice (d) (v)	يمارس/يتدرب
community (n)	مجتمع (محلّي)	race (n)	سباق
continue (d) (v)	يستمر	skill (n)	مهارة
culture (n)	ثقافة	social (adj)	اجتماعي
global (adj)	عالمي	soldier (n)	جندي
health (n)	صحة	speed (n)	سرعة
human (n)	إنسان	strength (n)	قوة
include (d) (v)	يشمل/يتضمن	teamwork (n)	العمل الجماعي
physical (adj)	بدني/جسدي		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

create friendships	ينشئ صداقات	in peace	في سلام
do a task	يؤدي مهمة	keep the mind fresh	ينشط العقل
for fun	للمتعة/للمرح	prepare ... for	يجهز/يعد ... لـ
good for	مفيد لـ	take part in	يشارك في
important for	هام لـ	work as a team	يعملون كفريق

Read and complete with a word from the list:

competed – speed – in – for

- 1 The train moved at a high, so we arrived early.
- 2 Our team bravely although the other team was very strong.
- 3 They played football in the park fun, not to win a prize.

VOCABULARY

Lesson 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

admiration (n)	إعجاب	medal (n)	ميدالية
attack (ed) (v)	يهاجم	opponent (n)	خصم/منافس
champion (n)	بطل رياضي	respect (ed) (v/n)	يحترم/احترام
focus (ed) (v/n)	يركز/تركيز	result (n)	نتيجة
honor (ed) (v/n)	يُكْرَم/شرف	sportsmanship (n)	الروح الرياضية
injury (n)	إصابة	victory (n)	نصر

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

bronze (n/adj)	البرونز/برونزي	Japanese (adj)	ياباني
choice (n)	اختيار	offer (ed) (v/n)	يعرض/عرض
earn (ed) (v)	يكسب مالاً	patient (adj)	صبور
final (adj/n)	نهائي/النهائي	reach (ed) (v)	يصل إلى
gold (n/adj)	ذهب/ذهبي	rival (n)	خصم
interview (n)	حوار/مقابلة	reporter (n)	صحفي/مراسل
judo (n)	رياضة الجودو	silver (n/adj)	فضة/فضّي

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

compete in peace	تنافس بسلام	prize for	جائزة لـ
feel about	يشعر تجاه	show fair play	يظهر اللعب النظيف
go on vacation	يذهب في إجازة	show fairness	يظهر العدل
instead of	بدلاً من	show respect	يظهر الاحترام

Read and complete with a word from the list:

for – at – show – opponent

- 1 I hope to win the prize the best story.
- 2 My in the game ran faster than me.
- 3 It is good to respect for older people.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تمريرات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
bring	يُحضِر	brought	brought
lose	يُخْسر/يُفقد	lost	lost
show	يُعرِض/يُبيِّن	showed	shown
spread	يُنشِر/يُنْتشِر	spread	spread
teach	يُعَلِّم	taught	taught

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
dangerous	خطير	serious	خطير	safe	آمن
modern	حديث	new	جديد	old/ancient	قديم
popular	شائع/محبوب/مشهور	common	شائع	unpopular	غير شائع
true	حقيقي	real	حقيقي	untrue	غير حقيقي

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
compete (v)	يتنافس	-tion	تحويل إلى اسم	competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة
regular (adj)	منتظم	ir-	تعطى العكس	irregular (adj)	غير منتظم
start (v)	يبدأ	re-	تعنى الإعادة	restart (v)	يبدأ من جديد

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The players had to restart the game. The prefix "re-" means ".....".
a) again b) not c) late d) first
- 2 The doctor advised me to do regular exercise. We use the prefix "....." to get the opposite of "regular".
a) un- b) im- c) ir- d) en-
- 3 I saw a/an statue in the museum.
a) new b) lively c) modern d) ancient

Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 How do sports bring people together today?
- 2 Why do you think people have played sports since ancient times?

 Read the following text.

Lesson 1

SB page 12

The History of Sport



Sport has been part of human life for thousands of years. In ancient times, people competed to show **strength**⁽¹⁾, speed, and skill. For example, the Olympic Games began in Greece more than 2,700 years ago. They included running, **wrestling**⁽²⁾, and **discus throwing**⁽³⁾. These games were not only for fun, but also to bring communities together.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| (1) قوة/طلاقة | (2) مصارعة |
| (3) رمي القرص | (4) مصارع |
| (5) سباق عربات الخيول | (6) رياضة القوس |
| (7) المبارزة بالسيف | (8) فرسان |
| (9) معارك | (10) اللعب النظيف |

Later, the Romans enjoyed sports such as **gladiator**⁽⁴⁾ fights and **chariot racing**⁽⁵⁾. Although some of these were dangerous, they showed how important sport was in Roman culture. In the Middle Ages, people in Europe practiced **archery**⁽⁶⁾, horse riding, and **fencing**⁽⁷⁾. These activities prepared **knights**⁽⁸⁾ for **battles**⁽⁹⁾, and they also became forms of competition.

Modern sports started to grow in the 19th century. Football, tennis, and cricket became popular in England and soon spread across the world. The modern Olympic Games were restarted in 1896 in Athens, and today they are a global event where athletes from many countries compete in peace.

Sport is now practiced not only for winning, but also for teamwork, **fair play**⁽¹⁰⁾, and health. It continues to connect people, create friendships, and inspire new generations.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 How do modern sports teach values like teamwork?
- 2 What is the difference between ancient sports and the sports you watch today?
- 3 In your opinion, why is sport important for young people?

Listening Text



Lesson 2

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 What makes a sports champion truly great: winning medals or showing respect?
- 2 Can you remember an event when showing fair play was valued more than the result?

Listen to the interview, and then answer these questions.

SB page 14

Mohamed Rashwan

Mohamed Rashwan used to be one of Egypt's most admired sports champions. He became famous during the 1984 Olympic Games in Los Angeles, where he reached the judo final against a strong Japanese opponent⁽¹⁾. His rival⁽²⁾ used to train hard, but he was injured at that time. Many people said Rashwan had the chance to attack⁽³⁾ his rival's weak point to win the gold medal.

Rashwan used to believe that fair play was more important than victory⁽⁴⁾. He chose to compete with honor⁽⁵⁾ and refused to take advantage of his rival's injury. Although he lost the final and won only the silver medal, he earned something far greater – respect⁽⁶⁾ and admiration⁽⁷⁾. Later, the Japanese people gave him a special award for his great sportsmanship⁽⁸⁾.

Rashwan's story reminds us that sport isn't just about medals. Athletes often say, "We used to train harder," or "We should have focused⁽⁹⁾ more." Rashwan proved that honesty and respect can make someone a true champion⁽¹⁰⁾ – even without gold.



- | | |
|-----------|----------------|
| (1) خصم | (2) غريم/منافس |
| (3) يهاجم | (4) النصر |
| (5) شرف | (6) احترام |
| (7) إعجاب | (8) روح رياضية |
| (9) ركز | (10) بطل |

Post-listening questions:

58

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 In which Olympic Games did Mohamed Rashwan compete?
 - a) 1980 Moscow.
 - b) 1984 Los Angeles.
 - c) 1988 Seoul.
 - d) 1992 Barcelona.
- 2 Rashwan won a medal in the final.
 - a) gold
 - b) silver
 - c) bronze
 - d) none
- 3 Rashwan avoided in the final.
 - a) attacking his opponent's injury
 - b) talking to his rival
 - c) losing the match
 - d) training hard

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات

chariot	عربة الخيل	cart ⁽¹⁾ pulled by horses	عربة (1)
fair play	اللعب العادل/النظيف	treating others honestly ⁽²⁾ in games	بأمانه (2)
knight	فارس	soldier ⁽³⁾ in the Middle Ages	جندى (3)

1 not only ... but also

ليس فقط ... ولكن أيضا

- These games were **not only** for fun, **but also** to bring communities together.

2 although + subject + verb

على الرغم من/مع أن (تعبير عن التناقض)

- **Although** some of these were dangerous, they showed how important sport was in Roman culture.

3 where

حيث (تعبير عن المكان)

- The modern Olympic Games are a global event **where** athletes compete in peace.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Olympics are a big global event athletes from all countries compete in many sports.

a) although

b) who

c) which

d) where

- 2 Mariam studied hard, she didn't get high marks.

a) However

b) Although

c) Also

d) Where

- 3 A/An is a soldier in the Middle Ages.

a) builder

b) knight

c) runner

d) athlete

LESSON 1

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The soldiers fought bravely in the and defeated the enemy.
 a) sport b) archery c) battle d) teamwork
- The story of great heroes can children to act bravely.
 a) inspire b) include c) contain d) create
- People in the 21st use technology every day in their lives.
 a) age b) century c) decade d) time
- The brave rode his horse into battle to protect his king.
 a) reporter b) swimmer c) athlete d) knight
- The players had to restart the game. The prefix "re-" means ".....".
 a) opposite b) again c) slowly d) before
- In ancient times, people used for hunting and battles.
 a) archery b) fencing
 c) wrestling d) discus throwing
- The movie became very popular. "....." is the synonym of "popular".
 a) Common b) Untrue c) Lazy d) Safe
- You must your tasks carefully to achieve good results.
 a) take b) have c) do d) give
- Many students will in the school play this year.
 a) take part b) think c) create d) do
- His condition became serious after the accident. It was very
 a) dangerous b) common c) untrue d) lazy

2. Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

connect – soldiers – global – competitions – speed

Sport has been an important part of human culture since ancient times. Gladiator fights and chariot racing were popular events that brought (1) and athletes together. People competed to show skill, strength, and (2) Today, sports continue to (3) people globally, and create friendships from all ages. The modern Olympic Games were restarted in 1896 in Athens, and today they are a (4) event.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1. Students must when the teacher is explaining the lesson.
a) compete b) reach c) attack d) focus
2. Our local inspired young players to focus and train hard.
a) enemy b) champion c) fan d) reporter
3. means treating others honestly in games.
a) Chariot b) Fair play c) Knight d) Cart
4. The school will the champion who showed great sportsmanship.
a) attack b) punish c) honor d) focus
5. You must be if you want to achieve good results in your studies.
a) patient b) lonely c) alone d) rich
6. We plan to go vacation next week to the seaside.
a) in b) on c) to d) at
7. Kady celebrated her after winning the tennis match.
a) rival b) opponent c) victory d) losing
8. The teacher said my story was untrue. "Untrue" can be an antonym to ".....".
a) lazy b) new c) real d) common
9. It was a difficult between joining the football club or the art club.
a) choice b) result c) offer d) plan
10. True means playing fairly and respecting every opponent.
a) medal b) result
c) friendship d) sportsmanship

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

offered – champions – respect – show – punish

Yuki, a Japanese swimmer, won a bronze medal after years of effort. She was admired for her kindness and ability to (1)..... fair play. In her interview, she said, "I didn't sleep early last night." Her honesty made everyone smile. She (2)..... her medal to her coach as a sign of (3)..... and honor. She believed that true (4)..... reach hearts, not just the finish line.

LANGUAGE

e.g. When I young, I play cards.

Usage

- We use **used to + inf.** to talk about habits that were true in the past but are no longer true now.

- نستخدم (used to + inf.) للتحدث عن العادات التي كانت حقيقة في الماضي ولكنها لم تعد حقيقة الآن.

Form

التكوين

A) Affirmative:

الإثبات

Subject + used to + inf. مصدر الفعل

اعتاد أن

e.g. I play the guitar when I was thirteen.

B) Negative:

النفي

Subject + didn't use to + inf. مصدر الفعل

لم يعتد أن

e.g. My dad drive along the desert when he was younger.

Questions

A) Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ «هل»

Subject + used to + inf. مصدر الفعل

هل اعتاد أن...؟

e.g. A: Did you use to swim?

B: Yes, I did.

B: No, I didn't.

B) Wh- question:

السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word + subject + used to + inf. مصدر الفعل

هل اعتاد أن...؟

e.g. A: What you use to do when you were 10? B: I run fast.

مثبتة.

إذا كانت

- عند المقارنة بما نفعله الآن نستخدم (used to) أو (do/does) إذا كانت

ونستخدم (do/does) إذا كانت (used to) منفية.

e.g. I ride a bike, but now I .

He have a car. Now, he .

ما عدا إذا كان الفعل بعد (used to) هو (be) فنستخدم (am أو is أو are).

e.g. I poor. Now, I .

He fat, but now he .



Exercises

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 My grandma used to in the countryside.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (live) لأن (used to) يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر.

2 Which team he use to play for when he was 18?

- الإجابة الصحيحة (like) لأنها سؤال في الماضي مع (used to).

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My uncle used to his car to work.
 a) drives b) drove c) drive d) driving
2. When you were ten, did you to live in a different house?
 a) uses b) use c) used d) using
3. She used to fat, but now she's thin.
 a) was b) is c) being d) be
4. Soha's mother to be a teacher, but now she is a housewife.
 a) used b) use c) is using d) uses

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I (use) to play in the park when I was a child. SB
2. My father didn't (used) to work in the bank. SB
3. We used to (going) to Alexandria every summer. SB
4. (Did/use) to watch cartoons when you were young?
5. My father usually (travels) by train when he worked in Mansoura.
6. We (not/use) to spend the summer vacation outside our village.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. My parents lived in a small flat twenty years ago. (used to)

2. I usually caught fish when I lived in Alexandria. (used to)

3. Samir never drank tea when he was a child. (didn't use)

4. Did your father smoke when he was younger? (use to)

5. Hala doesn't have long hair anymore. (used to)

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Dina use to get up early, but now she does.
a) wasn't b) didn't c) don't d) doesn't
- They have a lot of money, but now they are poor.
a) used b) used to c) didn't use to d, didn't use
- Did you use to basketball when you were young?
a) play b) plays c) played d) playing
- People used to letters instead of emails in the past.
a) send b) sending c) not send d) sends

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I didn't (use) to know much about my family history.
- She (not/use) be active, but now she is.
- Yasser's grandfather (use) work hard on his farm.
- He used to (eat) lots of candy when he was a child.
- Hani didn't use to have a car, but now he (drive).
- Which hobby (do) he use to do during his free time?

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- He used to ride his bike to school. (not)
- She used to live in Luxor. (Where...?)
- No, he didn't use to travel alone. (Did...?)
- Sara always got up early when she was young. (use to)
- I didn't make noise inside the classroom when I was a student. (use to)

حل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





The history of sport تاريخ الرياضة



Do you think sport connects cultures as it did before?

هل تعتقد أن الرياضة تربط الثقافات كما كانت تفعل من قبل؟

Yes, I think sport still connects people. They share joy and respect.

نعم، أعتقد أن الرياضة ما زالت تربط الناس. فهم يتشاركون الفرح والاحترام.



Why did people in ancient Greece start the Olympic Games?

لماذا بدأ الناس في اليونان القديمة الألعاب الأولمبية؟

They started the Olympic Games to spread peace and connect people together.

بدأوا الألعاب الأولمبية لإحلال السلام والصداقة.



What is your favorite sport?

ما هي رياضتك المفضلة؟

My favorite sport is football because it's fun.

رياضتي المفضلة هي كرة القدم لأنها ممتعة.



Why do people enjoy races?

لماذا يستمتع الناس بالسباقات؟

People enjoy races because they love speed.

يحب الناس السباقات لأنهم يحبون السرعة.



What sport shows a lot of skill?

ما الرياضة التي تُظهر الكثير من المهارة؟

I think archery shows a lot of skill.

أعتقد أن الرماية تُظهر الكثير من المهارة.

Speaking Exercise

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Salma is asking Omar about the Olympic Games.

Salma : Can I ask you some questions about the Olympic Games?

Omar : (1) I'm listening.

Salma : (2) ?

Omar : The first Olympic Games started over 2,700 years ago.

Salma : Did girls take part in them?

Omar : (3) Only boys and men could compete.

Salma : (4) ?

Omar : The Olympic Games had running, wrestling, jumping, and discus throwing.

Salma : Was there a prize for winning?

Omar : (5) Winners got a crown made of olive leaves.



How to write about sports

كيفية الكتابة عن الرياضة



اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"Sports"

Sports are fun and good for everyone. There are many kinds of sports. Some are team sports like football and basketball, where players work together. Others are individual sports, like running or swimming. Sports can be played indoors or outside. Doing sports helps us stay fit and healthy. It also helps us make new friends and learn to work together. Sports teach us to follow rules, be fair, and never give up. When we play sports, we feel energetic and less stressed. For children and adults, playing sports every day is a good habit. It gives us energy and keeps our minds clear. That is why sports are important in our lives.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Many students like to in school sports every year to test their strength and speed.
a) include b) contain c) take part d) take place
- Long ago, warriors often rode to battle in a
a) fair play b) knight c) chariot d) game
- Everyone showed their when the teacher helped the injured student.
a) sportsmanship b) admiration c) choice d) chance
- The suffix "-tion" in competition changes the verb "compete" into a noun meaning ".....".
a) someone who plays b) the act of competing
c) to win a game d) to lose a match

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

competitions – skill – events – social – peace

Horse riding and archery were popular sports for soldiers preparing for battle. These (1)..... needed focus, speed, and strength. Knights practiced daily to have (2)..... and energy. Some of them competed for money. If the community valued teamwork at that time, soldiers would compete in social (3)..... . Now, sports continue to connect people globally and create friendships, showing that competition can have great (4). and cultural effects.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- My family lived in the countryside when I was a child. (used to)
.....
- Was it Adel's habit to read a book before bed? (use to)
.....
- My brother didn't like vegetables when he was little. (use to)
.....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My father (using) to work as a teacher.
2. She (not/used) to wake up early.
3. (Do) Anas use to play football after school?

5 Complete the following dialog:

Ali and Noor are talking about the history of football.

Ali : Was football played a long time ago?

Noor : (1)..... . In ancient China, they played a game like it.

Ali : How did they play it?

Noor : (2)..... .

Ali : Did they kick it like we do?

Noor : (3)..... . But they couldn't use their hands.

Ali : (4)..... ?

Noor : Modern football started around 1863 in England.

Ali : (5)..... ?

Noor : A group of schools and clubs made the rules.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A sports event you went to"

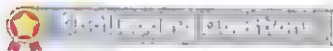
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. She lived in London before she moved here. (used)
2. Ahmed drank a lot of coffee, but he stopped. (stop)
3. We had a cat when we were young. (only you...?)

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

50 : 64% Practice more

85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 3

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

achievement (n)	إنجاز	gymnastics (n)	الجمباز
celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل	host (ed) (v)	يستضيف/ يقيم
continent (n)	قارة	represent (ed) (v)	يمثل
excellence (n)	تفوق/ امتياز/ براعة	united (adj)	موحد/ متحد
friendship (n)	صداقة	weightlifting (n)	رفع الأثقال

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

athletics (n)	ألعاب القوى	peace (n)	السلام
expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع	remind (ed) (v)	يذكر
fan (n)	مشجع	ring (n)	حلقة
flag (n)	علم	spirit (n)	روح
join (ed) (v)	ينضم إلى	sports event (n)	حدث رياضي
nation (n)	أمة/ دولة/ شعب		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

a big fan of	معجب كبير بـ	from all over the world	من كل أنحاء العالم
come together	تتجمع معاً	values of	قيم لـ

Read and complete with a word from the list:

fan – continent – remind – expect – united

- I usually my brother that he must do his homework first.
- Karim is a big of football and watches every game.
- Family and friends are always during difficult times.
- Africa is a large with many countries.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
hit	يضرب hit	hit	hit
hold	يعقد/يقيم held	held	held
throw	يرمي threw	threw	thrown
win	يفوز won	won	won

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
friendship	صداقة	bond	ترابط	enmity	عداوة
winning	فائز	successful	ناجح	losing	خاسر
ancient	قديم	old	قديم	modern	حديث
modern	حديث	new	جديد	ancient	قديم/أثري
famous	مشهور	well-known	معروف	unknown	غير معروف
peace	سلام	quiet	هدوء	war	حرب
respect	احترام	admiration	إعجاب	disrespect	عدم احترام
united	موحد/متحد	shared	مشترك	separated	منفصل

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
appear (v)	يظهر	dis-	تعطى عكس الكلمة	تعطى عكس الكلمة	disappear (v)	يختفي
achieve (v)	ينجز	-ment	تحويل إلى اسم	تحويل إلى اسم	achievement (n)	إنجاز

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The school a fun fair last weekend.
a) hit b) held c) dove d) sit
- My city has a famous museum. The synonym of "famous" is ".....".
a) weak b) well-known c) global d) tiny
- He showed disrespect by talking while the teacher was speaking. "Disrespect" is an antonym of ".....".
a) like b) respect c) hate d) avoid

Reading Text

Lesson 5

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Why do you think countries from all over the world join the Olympics?
 - 2 What values can students learn from international sports events?
-  Read the following text and guess the meaning of the words in bold.

SB page 16

The Olympic Games are the most famous sports **event**⁽¹⁾ in the world. Today, they are held every four years in different countries. **Athletes** from more than 200 nations come together to **compete**⁽²⁾ in many sports such as football, swimming, **athletics**⁽³⁾, and **gymnastics**⁽⁴⁾. The Olympic flag, with its five rings, **represents**⁽⁵⁾ the five continents (Africa, Asia, the Americas, Europe, and Australia) of the world united in **friendship**⁽⁶⁾.

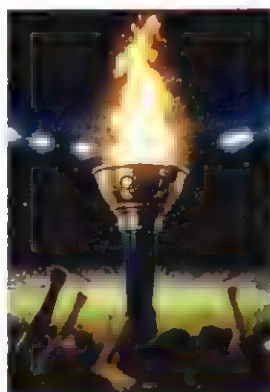
The Olympics are not only about winning medals. They also teach the **values**⁽⁷⁾ of **excellence**, respect, and friendship. Athletes are expected to compete fairly, respect their **opponents**, and celebrate **achievements**⁽⁸⁾ together. Egypt has proudly joined the modern Olympics since 1912 and has won medals in **weightlifting**⁽⁹⁾, wrestling, and judo.

The Olympic spirit reminds us that sport can bring people from different countries, cultures, and languages together in peace.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 Why do you think the Olympic Games are important for the world?
- 2 What Olympic value do you admire most: excellence, respect, or friendship? Why?
- 3 If Egypt hosted the Olympics, what would you show the world about your country?



- | | |
|-----------------|-------------|
| (1) حدث | (2) ينافس |
| (3) ألعاب القوى | (4) الجمباز |
| (5) يمثل | (6) الصداقة |
| (7) قيم | (8) إنجازات |
| (9) رفع الأثقال | |

1 **athletics**
gymnastics

ألعاب القوى (اسم مفرد لا يعد)

ألعاب الجمباز (اسم مفرد لا يعد)

- **Athletics** is a sport that includes running, jumping, and throwing events.
- **Gymnastics** is a cool sport where you jump and twist.

2 **win**

يفوز بـ

- I hope we will **win** the final match.

earn

يكسب مالاً

- Do you think athletes **earn** much money?

beat

يهزم

- Salma **beat** her opponent in the final match.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** Athletics popular in my school, and many students train hard for competitions.

a) is

b) are

c) have

d) has

- 2** I was happy when the Egyptian team the final match.

a) earned

b) won

c) missed

d) lost

تطبيق الامواء مجاناً

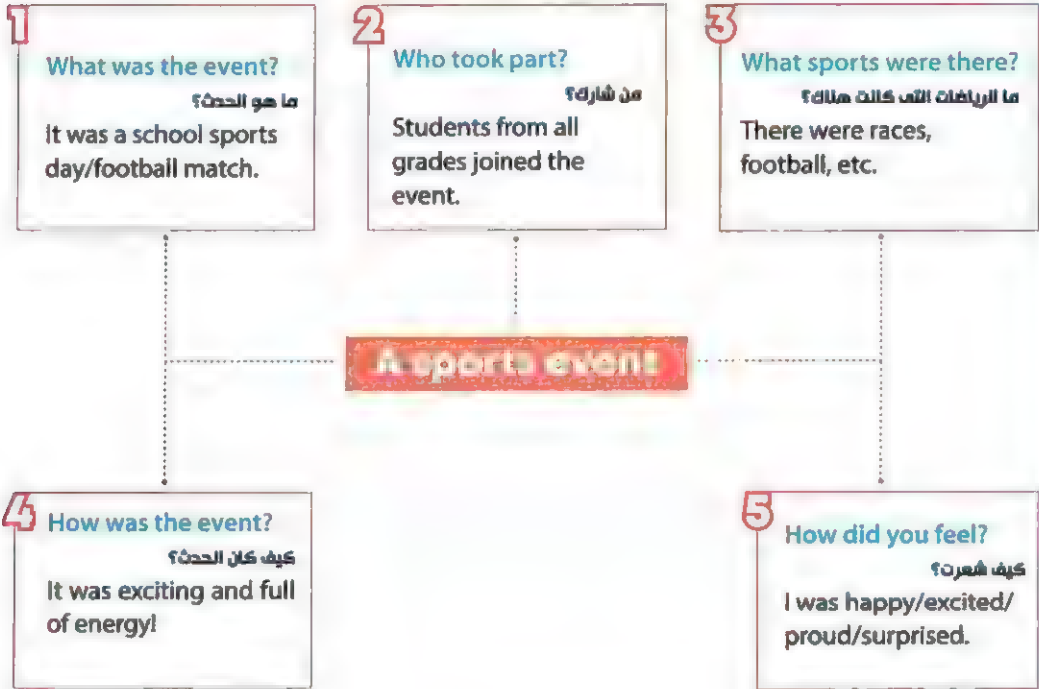
ادخل كودك الشخصي الموجود في الغلاف
الخاصة وادخل رقم الكتاب واسمك
تطبيق الامواء مجاناً.

لن التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الامواء
www.aladwaa.com



How to write about a sports event you attended

كيفية الكتابة عن حدث رياضي حضرته



اقرأ هذا النموذج العجيب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"A sports event"

Last Friday, our school held a big sports event at the playground. Students from all grades took part in many games like football, running, and gymnastics. I played in the football match with my class. It was very exciting! The crowd cheered loudly when my friend Ali scored the winning goal. Everyone showed great teamwork and fair play. I also watched the gymnastics show. It was amazing! The athletes jumped with perfect balance. I felt happy and proud of my school. I enjoyed spending time with my friends and cheering for our team. I hope we have another sports event soon!

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Nada joined the team because she is very good at jumping.
a) singing b) athletics c) athlete d) reading
- Japan the Olympics and showed excellence in organization and kindness.
a) hosted b) reminded c) remembered d) expected
- We when our team won the gold medal in weightlifting.
a) hosted b) represented c) attended d) celebrated
- The group must be united to achieve their goals. "....." is the opposite of united.
a) Shared b) Winning c) Separated d) Successful
- in sports comes from practice and patience.
a) Excellence b) Hate c) Failure d) Peace
- Eman trained for months to compete in the big sports next summer.
a) continent b) nation c) event d) achievement
- Hana succeeded to achieve her goals. The suffix "....." is added to the verb "achieve" to form a noun.
a) -ness b) -ment c) -less d) -ous
- Who will our class in the sports event next week?
a) receive b) throw c) represent d) hit
- Europe is a that excels in gymnastics and athletics.
a) city b) continent c) nation d) country
- Nader's in math made his parents very happy and proud.
a) sadness b) friendship c) failure d) achievement

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

unity – nation – hold – Olympics – honor

The Olympic Games bring athletes from all over the world to compete in sports like athletics, gymnastics, and weightlifting. Every (1) proudly waves its flag as its athletes represent their people with (2) I'm a big fan of gymnastics, especially the men's ring event. The host country always works hard to strengthen friendship and (3) among competitors. I dream of attending the (4) one day. Watching it on TV just isn't the same.

Lesson 4

Twenty Thousand Leagues under the Sea



Introduction about the Author:

Jules Verne (1828 - 1905) was a French novelist and is often called the "Father of Science Fiction." He wrote imaginative adventure tales that combined scientific ideas with vivid storytelling. His most famous works include *Journey to the Center of the Earth* (1864), *Around the World in Eighty Days* (1873), and *Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea* (1870). Verne's writings inspired both readers and scientists.

مقدمة عن المؤلف



Characters الشخصيات



Professor Pierre Aronnax:
A French marine scientist

البروفيسور بير أرونكس:
عالم بحريات فرنسي



Captain Nemo:
The Captain of the Nautilus

الكابتن نيمو: قبطان
سفينة النوتيليس



Ned Land:
A Canadian harpooner

نيد لاند: صائد حيتان كندي



Conseil:
Professor Aronnax's loyal servant

كونسيل: الخادم الوفي
للبروفيسور أرونكس

EVENTS MAP

خريطة الأحداث

A French scientist and his companions join a voyage to hunt a sea monster, only to discover it is a mysterious man-made submarine.

The three men are taken aboard Captain Nemo's submarine, where they experience the wonders of the ocean, but are prisoners with no way to return to land.

They explore the ocean's wonders aboard the submarine. However, Ned Land longs for freedom and wants to escape.

They experience adventures and deadly dangers. They see Captain Nemo's courage and ruthlessness. Aronnax admires Captain Nemo, but, Ned Land's frustration grows.

As the Nautilus traveled, Aronnax became curious about Nemo, while Ned Land wanted to escape, and the crew struggled between adventure and freedom.

After months at sea, the three men finally escaped the Nautilus during a storm, returning to land with incredible memories, but never learning all of Nemo's secrets.

1

Chapter One: The Mystery of the Sea Monster

Chapter (1) in points:

الأساطير والأشياء الغامضة



- 1 The story takes place in the mid-nineteenth century when some sailors said they saw a huge sea monster in the Pacific Ocean.

تدور أحداث القصة في منتصف القرن التاسع عشر عندما رأى بعض البحارين وحشاً بحرياً في المحيط الهادئ.

- 2 Newspapers described it as marvelous and terrifying so people decided to launch a voyage to either kill or capture the monster.

وصفت الصحف هذا الوحش بأنه عظيم ومخيف؛ لذا قرر الناس عمل رحلة بحرية لقتل أو صيد الوحش.

- 3 Professor Aronnax, his servant Conseil, and Ned Land, the harpooner, joined this voyage.

شارك البروفيسور أرونكس وخدامه كونسيل ونيد لاند في هذه الرحلة.

- 4 For many months, the crew sailed and found nothing.

لعدة أشهر، أبحر الطاقم ولم يجدوا شيئاً.

- 5 Some sailors stopped believing that the monster existed, while others became impatient.

بعض البحارين توقفوا عن تصديق وجود هذا الوحش والبعض الآخر أصبح غير صبور.

- 6 One night, they saw a long glowing shape in the water and chased it.

في إحدى الليالي، رأوا جسماً طويلاً لامعاً في الماء وطاردوه.

- 7 They fired cannons and harpoons, but the "monster" hit their ship and threw Aronnax and others into the sea.

أطلقوا عليه النيران والقوه بالرماح ولكن الوحش ضرب السفينة وألقى بأرونكس والآخرين في البحر.

- 8 They swam toward the creature and discovered it was not an animal, but a man-made submarine of a special design.

عاشوا تجاه المخلوق واكتشفوا أنه ليس بحيوان ولكنه غواصة من صنع الإنسان بتصميم خاص.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

creature (n)	مخلوق	monster (n)	وحش
debate (n)	مناقشة/نقاش	harpooner (n)	صائد الحيتان/رامي الرمح
intense (adj)	مكثف/شديد	submarine (n)	غواصة
legend (n)	أسطورة/حكاية شعبية	loyal (adj)	وفى/مخلص
marvelous (adj)	رائع	voyage (n)	رحلة بحرية

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

adventure tale (n)	حكاية مغامرة	impatient (adj)	غير صبور/متعجل/نفد صبره
astonishment (n)	ذهول/دهشة	launch (ed) (v)	يطلق
beast (n)	وحش/بهيمة	man-made (adj)	من صنع الإنسان
board (ed) (v)	يصعد إلى/يعتلى	marine (adj)	بحري
cannon fire (n)	نيران المدفع	mystery (n)	غموض/سر/لغز
capture (d) (v)	يأسر	professor (n)	أستاذ جامعي
claim (ed) (v)	يُدعى/يطالب بـ	relationship (n)	علاقة
combine (d) (v)	يجمع/يمزج	science fiction (n)	خيال علمي
companion (n)	رفيق	smash (ed) (v)	يخطم
crew (n)	فريق/طاقم العمل	steel-like (adj)	قوي كال فولاد
desperately (adv)	بأس	struggle (d) (v)	يكافح/يناضل
determined (adj)	مصمم/عازم	survive (d) (v)	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
expedition (n)	رحلة استكشافية	tentacled (adj)	مزود بأذرع ممتدة
glowing (adj)	متوهج/لامع	terrifying (adj)	مرعب/مخيف
imaginative (adj)	مبدع/ابتكاري	warship (n)	سفينة حربية

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

create a sense of	يخلق إحساساً بـ	grow intense	يزداد حدة/يشدّ
fascinated with	مفتون بـ	set sail	يرفع الأشرعة/ينطلق (في البحر)

Pre-reading question:

- Why do people sometimes believe in sea legends?

 Read the following text.

SB page 18

Chapter One: The Mystery of the Sea Monster

In the mid-nineteenth century, sailors across the oceans reported a strange creature مخلوق غريب. Ships claimed to have seen a huge "sea monster," moving faster than whales and smashing ships with terrible force. Newspapers described it as both مخيف and terrifying. Public interest grew so much that a voyage was launched to catch it or kill the beast.

Why did people decide to send a ship to find the sea monster?

Professor Pierre Aronnax, a French marine scientist, was invited to join the voyage. His loyal servant الخادم المخلص Conseil and a Canadian harpoonier named Ned Land also became part of the crew. They boarded a ship and set sail across the Pacific. For months, they searched without success.

Some sailors doubted the monster's existence وجود الوحش, while others became impatient.

At last, one evening, a long glowing shape شكل منوهج appeared in the waves. The crew chased it desperately. Cannon fire and harpoons الرماح were launched. Suddenly, the "monster" turned and hit the ship with its steel-like body جسمها بنسبة الفولاذ. Aronnax and his companions were thrown into the sea.

What happened when the crew finally found the "monster"?

Struggling to survive, they swam toward the mysterious creature مخلوق غامض. To their surprise, they discovered it was not an animal at all but a man-made submarine عوامة من صنع الإنسان of special design. Their adventure beneath the oceans was about to begin.

What did Aronnax and his friends discover about the "sea monster"?

وحش

مذهل/رائع

مناوشة

مكتف/شديد

يأس

صائد الحيتان (6)

سفينة حربية

مدفم (8)

رفاق/صدية

دهشة/تعجب (10)

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. What did the ships claim to have seen?

ماذا ادعت السفن أنها رآته؟

- They claimed to have seen a huge sea monster.

2. Who were the three main characters that joined the voyage?

من هم الشخصيات الثلاثة الرئيسية التي انضمت إلى الرحلة؟

- Professor Aronnax, his servant Conseil, and the harpooner Ned Land.

3. Where did the crew sail to search for the creature?

إلى أين أبحر الطاقم للبحث عن المخلوق؟

- They sailed across the Pacific Ocean.

4. What happened when the crew attacked the "monster"?

ماذا حدث عندما هاجم الطاقم "الوحش"؟

- The "monster" hit the ship hard, and the crew fell into the sea.

5. What did Aronnax and his friends discover the "monster" really was?

ما حقيقة الوحش التي اكتشفها أرونلاكس وأصدقائه؟

- It was a special man-made submarine.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think the public believed in the sea monster so quickly?

لماذا تعتقد أن العامة صدقوا بوجود وحش البحر بهذه السرعة؟

- Because many sailors said they saw it.

2. What does the discovery of the submarine suggest about technology in the 19th century?

بماذا يوحي اكتشاف الغواصة عن التكنولوجيا في القرن التاسع عشر؟

- It shows that people could build amazing machines.

3. Why do you think the author chose to reveal the monster as a submarine instead of a real animal?

لماذا تعتقد أن الكاتب اختار أن يكشف أن الوحش هو غواصة بدلاً من حيوان حقيقي؟

- I think he wanted to surprise readers and show that science can seem like a mystery.

4. The crew searched for months. How do you think they felt before they finally saw the shape?

بحث الطاقم لعدة أشهر. كيف تعتقد أنهم شعروا قبل أن يروا الشكل أخيراً؟

- I think they felt doubtful, impatient, or tired because they searched for so long without success.

5. How does this chapter prepare the reader for the adventure ahead?

كيف يهيئ هذا الفصل القارئ للمغامرة القادمة؟

- It sets the stage for an underwater adventure full of danger, discovery, and exploration.

Chapter 1 Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- In the mid-nineteenth century, sailors claimed to have seen a huge
 a) whale b) sea monster c) shark d) giant squid
- Professor Aronnax was invited to join the
 a) party b) voyage c) army d) flight
- The sea monster was described as having a body.
 a) fish-like b) steel-like c) rock-like d) small-size
- Ned Land, a Canadian harpooner, became part of the
 a) crew b) scientists
 c) expedition d) warship crew
- The ship's crew chased the creature after it
 a) swam away b) attacked them
 c) appeared in the waves d) dove underwater

2 Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think the sailors were so fascinated with the idea of a sea monster?

- What role did Professor Aronnax play in the voyage, and how did his scientific background help?

- Why do you think some sailors doubted شك the existence وجود of the sea monster while others were determined to capture it?

- How did the description of the sea monster create a sense of both fear and wonder among the crew?

- What do you think was the importance of the "public debate" over the sea monster's existence?

- In your opinion, how might the voyage to capture the sea monster affect the relationship among the crew members اعضاء?

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- During the mid-nineteenth, sailors claimed to have seen a huge sea monster.
a) year b) month c) decade d) century
- Professor Pierre Aronnax is a
a) biologist b) teacher c) marine scientist d) harpooner
- Some doubted the monster's existence وجود الوحش .
a) thieves b) sailors c) sharks d) writers
- The boarded warship across the Pacific Ocean.
a) traveled b) launched c) flew d) set sail
- The crew were to discover that the monster wasn't an animal.
a) bored b) relaxed c) amazing d) astonished
- The monster that hit the ship was a
a) shark b) steel-like body c) stone d) wood-like body
- They discovered that the animal was a man-made
a) submarine b) airplane c) boat d) motorcycle

2 Answer the following questions:

- How did the newspaper describe the sea monster?
.....
- What did the sailors think when they were unsuccessful for months?
.....
- What appeared at last in the sea after months of being unsuccessful?
.....
- Why were the warship crew astonished when they saw the sea monster?
.....
- Why do you think Professor Aronnax wanted to join the voyage?
.....
- If you were a marine scientist, would you join a voyage to discover sea monsters? Why?
.....
- How do you think the warship crew felt when they learned the truth about the sea monster?
.....

TEST YOURSELF

1. Learning (2, 3, 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- needs focus, power, and daily practice to improve slowly.
a) Friendship b) Weightlifting c) Writing d) Legends
- The team celebrated a winning season. "....." has nearly the same meaning as "winning".
a) Losing b) Successful c) Ancient d) Modern
- Science helped people imagine things long before they happened.
a) legends b) creatures c) monsters d) fiction
- The sound of the ship breaking was to everyone on board.
a) marvelous b) relaxing c) terrifying d) determined

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Every four years, the world watches the Olympic Games with excitement. The Summer and Winter Olympics bring together athletes from all over the world. They compete in sports like swimming, gymnastics, athletics, and ice skating. Before the Games begin, a special flame شعلة is lit in Greece. It travels through many countries until it reaches the host city. The flame stays lit during the whole event and reminds everyone of peace, unity, and friendship. Athletes work hard for years to represent their nations. When they win, their country's flag is raised, and people cheer. I'm a big fan of the Olympics because it shows how people can be united through sport, even if they speak different languages or live on different continents. The Games celebrate excellence, effort, and fair play.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the passage is the
a) Olympic flame is made of fire b) Olympics bring the world together
c) best country in the Olympics d) summer sports
- The Olympic flame is first lit in
a) the host city b) the United States c) Greece d) Japan
- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
a) athletes b) teachers c) doctors d) languages

B) Answer the following questions:

- Where does the Olympic flame stay lit during the Games?
- Why does the flame travel through many countries?
- Why do you think the Olympic flame is an important symbol?

The Story

3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Conseil is the of Professor Aronnax.
a) sailor b) harpooner c) servant d) manager
2. Ships claimed to have seen a huge
a) sea monster b) whale c) bird d) rock
3. The crew discovered that the sea monster was a
a) stone b) submarine c) spaceship d) motorbike
4. Professor Aronnax was invited to join the across the Pacific Ocean.
a) trip b) flight c) voyage d) tour

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why was there an intense public debate over the sea monster?
6. How would you feel if you went on a voyage for months and were unsuccessful to find the sea monster?

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Did you take the train to work every day? (use to)
.....
2. My grandfather rode his bicycle everywhere he went. (used to)
.....
3. There were many trees here before they built these houses. (used)
.....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There (use) be a movie theater near our house.
2. The children used to (playing) in the garden after school.
3. Eslam used to smoke, but now he (do).



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I had a bicycle, but I sold it. (used to)
.....
2. The train was always late every morning. (to be)
.....
3. I didn't celebrate my birthday when I was little. (use to)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

<50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

championship (n)	بطولة	inspiration (n)	إلهام
discipline (n)	انضباط	refreshed (adj)	منتعش/متجدد النشاط
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	relaxing (adj)	مريح
excitement (n)	إثارة	relay race (n)	سباق التتابع
focused (adj)	مركز/متنبه	team sport (n)	رياضة جماعية
individual sport (n)	رياضة فردية	tournament (n)	دورة رياضية

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

anger (n)	غضب	selfishness (n)	أنانية
atmosphere (n)	جو/أجواء	semi-final (n)	مباراة نصف النهائي
challenging (adj)	صعب/ممتليء بالتحديات	space stadium (n)	استاد فضائي
confused (adj)	مرتبك/مشوش	spirit (n)	روح
fitness (n)	لياقة بدنية	sports report (n)	تقرير رياضي
honesty (n)	أمانة	talent (n)	موهبة
long jump (n)	الوثب الطويل	upset (adj)	منزعج/مستاء
national (adj)	قومي/وطني	weakness (n)	ضعف

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

apologize for	يعتذر عن	make friends	يكون صداقات
cheer for	يهتف لـ	on a TV show	في برنامج تلفزيوني
each other	بعضهم البعض	on weekends	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
full of	ممتليء بـ	stay fit/active/strong	يظل لائق بدنياً/نشطاً/قوياً
late for	متأخر على	try a sport	يجرب رياضة

Read and complete with a word from the list:

inspiration – try – challenging – tournament – make

- 1 Learning English can be, but fun.
- 2 Our school won the football last week.
- 3 The athlete's speech was a real for everyone to follow their dreams.
- 4 Playing games helps children friends.

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
calm	هادئ	quiet	هادئ	noisy	صاخب/مزعج
encourage	يشجع	support	يساند	discourage	يحبط
strong	قوى	powerful	قوى	weak	ضعيف

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
health (n)	صحة	-y	تحول إلى صفة	healthy (adj)	صحي
inspire (v)	يلهم	-ation	تحول إلى اسم	inspiration (n)	إلهام
nation (n)	أمة	-al	تحول إلى صفة	national (adj)	قومي/وطني
selfish (adj)	أناني	-ness	تحول إلى اسم	selfishness (n)	أنانية
win (v)	يفوز	-er	تحول إلى اسم فاعل	winner (n)	فائز

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Friends encourage each other to try new things. The opposite of the word "encourage" is ".....".
a) noisy b) discourage c) weak d) support
- 2 I feel calm when I listen to music. The synonym of "calm" is ".....".
a) quiet b) noisy c) powerful d) weak
- 3 Mr. Said's speech inspires everyone in the class. We delete 'e' and add the suffix "....." to "inspire" to get its noun.
a) -er b) -y c) -ness d) -ation
- 4 The bridge is strong and safe. The antonym of "strong" is ".....".
a) noisy b) quiet c) weak d) powerful

Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What sports do you like to watch or play?
- 2 Do you prefer team sports or individual sports? Why?

 With a classmate, discuss the following questions.

SB page 18

Salma Hi Mona! What's your favorite sport?

Mona My favorite sport is basketball. I play it with my friends after school, and sometimes we even join small competitions.

Salma That sounds fun! Why do you like basketball so much?

Mona Because it's fast and exciting, and it also helps me stay fit and active. I love the feeling when we work as a team and score points. What about you?

Salma I really enjoy swimming. For me, it's very relaxing, and I feel healthy and refreshed after I swim. It also makes me feel calm and focused⁽¹⁾.

Mona That's great! Swimming sounds like a wonderful way to stay strong. Do you go to a club or a pool near your house?

Salma Yes, I usually go to the sports club on weekends. It's also a good place to meet new people and practice *swimming*.

Mona Amazing! Maybe one day we can try each other's sport. You can join me for a basketball match, and I can try swimming with you.

Salma That would be fun! Trying new sports is always a good idea. We can both learn new skills and enjoy ourselves.

Mona Exactly⁽²⁾! Sports are not only for fitness⁽³⁾ but also for making friends and having fun.



منافسات/مسابقات

مريح

مركز/مكتب

بانتظام⁽¹⁾

بالطبع⁽⁵⁾

لياقة بدنية

Post-reading questions:

SE

- 1 How does Salma feel after she goes swimming?
.....
- 2 What is the benefit Salma mentions about the sports club?
.....
- 3 What are the two main benefits of sports, besides fitness?
.....

LESSONS 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. The team trained hard to win the this year.
 a) pool b) spirit c) championship d) coach
2. Without, it is hard to achieve any goal in sports.
 a) race b) weakness c) anger d) discipline
3. The players looked after the halftime break.
 a) confused b) refreshed c) upset d) weak
4. I prefer a calm house, but my neighbors are very and keep me awake.
 a) quiet b) support c) noisy d) strong
5. To succeed in tournaments, you need to be
 a) upset b) busy c) national d) focused
6. We should practice well to improve our
 a) noise b) talent c) game d) rule
7. It's fun to a sport like tennis or swimming.
 a) stay b) try c) make d) score
8. Tamer, you must apologize this bad mistake.
 a) for b) of c) by d) from
9. The team showed high during the championship. They were great.
 a) selfishness b) club c) weakness d) spirit
10. Our nation team won the final. We can correct the word "nation" by adding the suffix ".....".
 a) -al b) -ity c) -ist d) -ly

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

semi-final – fitness – selfishness – fun – coach

The national tournament was a challenging day for all athletes. The long jump competition was amazing, and the players showed great (1)..... . Some teams were late for their matches, which caused anger among people. I wanted to arrive earlier to see the (2)..... without missing any of the actions. The (3)..... encouraged every player to join team sports. I enjoyed making friends and had (4)..... there.

Talking about sports التحدث عن الرياضة



Do you prefer team sports or individual sports? Why?

هل تفضل الرياضات الجماعية أم الفردية؟ ولماذا؟

I prefer team sports because I like working in a team.

أفضل الرياضات الجماعية لأنني أحب العمل ضمن فريق.



What is your favorite sport?

ما هي رياضتك المفضلة؟

My favorite sport is basketball.

رياضتي المفضلة هي كرة السلة.



When do you play it?

متى تمارسها؟

I play it after school.

أمارسها بعد المدرسة.



Who do you play it with?

مع من تمارسها؟

I play it with my friends.

أمارسها مع أصدقائي.



Why do you like it?

لماذا تحبها؟

Because it helps me stay fit and active.

لأنها تساعدني على البقاء نشيطًا وبصحة جيدة.

Speaking Exercise

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

Finish the following dialog:

Hana and Hany are talking about sports.

Hana : What's your favorite sport?

Hany : (1)

Hana : Who do you play football with?

Hany : (2)

Hana : (3)

Hany : I like it because it's exciting. What about you?

Hana : (4) It's wonderful hitting the ball over the net with my racket.

Hany : (5)

Hana : I play it every weekend.

Hany : That sounds fun! I'll try it.



A sports report حدث رياضي

is a journalistic piece that covers sporting events and provides clear and accurate information. It includes

Headline: عنوان رئيسي	Introduction: مقدمة	Main Events: الأحداث الرئيسية	Conclusion: الخاتمة
- A title that reflects the event.	- A brief summary of the event, including teams, players, and key details.	- Highlight key moments (goals, saves, etc.)	- Summarize the significance of future impact.



اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"A sports report"

Last Saturday, our school held a national sports tournament at the city stadium. Many students, teachers, and parents came to watch. There were many sports, including long jump, swimming, relay races, and football. My favorite sport was the relay race because it was exciting and fast. Players from different classes joined the event, and my team played very well. The athletes were calm, focused, and full of talent. The atmosphere was lively, and everyone encouraged each other. I was proud and happy to cheer for my friends. The tournament taught me teamwork, discipline, and how to enjoy sports. I want to join again next time.

TEST YOURSELF

LESSONS 1-4-6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Tennis is an example of a/an sport where you compete alone.

a) individual	b) team
c) water	d) tournament
2. Great athletes often become a/an for future generations.

a) selfishness	b) spirit
c) winner	d) inspiration
3. Who's the winner? The suffix "-er" added to the verb "win" makes it a/an

a) adjective	b) adverb
c) noun	d) antonym
4. Winning a is a dream for many athletes.

a) stadium	b) tournament
c) club	d) champion

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

events – fitness – confused – talent – encouraged

The semi-final match of the national championship was full of action. The winning team showed amazing (1) while the losing side looked upset. I watched the match from the main stand to see all the (2) clearly. The coach (3) the players all the time. Sports are not only for (4), but also for making friends and having fun.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Did you play football frequently? (use to)
.....
2. My brother never ate vegetables as a child. (didn't use)
.....
3. We always walked to school every afternoon. (used to)
.....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I (use) to read comics when I was young.
2. Kady (not/used) to eat meat when she was a child.
3. Did you (used) to play tennis?

5 Complete the following dialog:

Heba likes athletics, especially running and long jump.

Tamer : What is your favorite sport?

Heba : (1)

Tamer : Which events do you like?

Heba : (2)

Tamer : Do you run every day?

Heba : (3) I practice on weekends.

Tamer : (4)

Heba : My coach trains me.

Tamer : (5)

Heba : I feel proud and refreshed.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

SB

"An important football match you watched"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My brother (use/play) the violin when he was at school.
2. Did you (used/like) reading mystery novels?
3. We didn't (used/go) camping because we were afraid of insects.
4. There used to (is) a cinema in this neighborhood, but it closed years ago.

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
train	يتحرب	weakness	ضعف
respect	احترام	unfaithful	غير مخلص
amazement	ذهول	absence	غياب

2 Comprehension strategies:

في هذا الجزء سنتعرف على كيفية التعامل مع أسئلة القطعة:

What does the word "....." mean?

How to guess the meaning of a word:

كيفية تخمين معنى كلمة:

هناك عدة نقاط يمكن أن تساعد في تخمين معنى الكلمة:

1. Try to understand what type of word it is. (اسم، فعل، صفة،)
حاول أن تفهم نوع الكلمة (اسم، فعل، صفة،)
2. Read the passage well. You may find synonyms, antonyms, or a definition.
اقرأ القطعة جيدًا. فمن الممكن أن تجد مرادفات، متضادات أو تعريفًا للكلمة.
3. Look for clues: Point to words around the unfamiliar word that might help you understand its meaning.
ابحث عن أدلة: أشر إلى الكلمات المحيطة بالكلمة غير المألوفة التي قد تساعد على فهم معناها.
4. Make a guess.
حاول تخمين المعنى.

FOR EXAMPLE:

After walking in the sun for hours, Omar felt exhausted. His legs were weak, and he could hardly stand. He decided to sit under a tree and drink some water.

- The underlined word "exhausted" means

a) tired

b) spirit

c) winner

d) inspiration

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- The Olympic Games are the most famous sports event in the world.

- الألعاب الأولمبية هي أشهر حدث رياضي في العالم.

- الألعاب الأولمبية هي أشهر احتفال رياضي في العالم.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- يتنافس الناس لإظهار القوة والسرعة والمهارة.

People compete to show strength, speed, and skill.

People compete to feel strength, speed, and skill.

Vocabulary

athlete	لاعب رياضي
battle	معركة/قتال
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
competition	منافسة/مسابقة
fair play	العب العادل/اللطيف
knight	فارس
admiration	إعجاب
honor (ed)	يكرم/يُشرف
opponent	خصم/منافس
achievement	إنجاز
friendship	صداقة
weightlifting	رفع الأثقال
creature	مخلوق
intense	مكثف/شديد
monster	وحش
loyal	وفاء/مخلص
legend	أسطورة/حكاية شعبية
championship	بطولة
discipline	انضباط
excitement	إثارة
individual sport	رياضة فردية
relay race	سباق التتابع
tournament	دورة رياضية
team sport	رياضة جماعية

Language

(used to) for regular past habits

- When I was young, I **used to** play football every weekend.

Usage

- We **use** (used to + inf.) to talk about habits that were true in the past, but are no longer true now.

Form

A) Affirmative:

Subject + **used to** + inf. + the verb

- She **used to** live in Cairo. (Now, she lives somewhere else.).

B) Negative:

Subject + **didn't use to** + inf. + the verb

- I **didn't use to** like vegetables. (But now I do.).

Question

A) Yes/No question:

Did + subject + **use to** + inf. + the verb
هل اعتاد أن...؟

- A: Did she **use to** live near the beach?

B: Yes, she did.

B) Wh- question:

Q. Word + **used to** + inf. + the verb
السؤال بنية استخدام

- A: Where did you **use to** buy clothes?

B: I used to buy clothes from the shopping mall.

Skills

A. Speaking

1. Do you think sports connect cultures as they did before?

Yes, I think sports still connect people. They share joy and respect.

2. Why did people in ancient Greece start the Olympic Games?

They started the Olympic Games to spread peace and friendship.

3. What is your favorite sport?

My favorite sport is football because it's fun.

B. Writing

The Olympic Games

The Olympic Games are a famous sports event held every four years. Athletes from many countries come together to compete in different sports like running, swimming, football, and gymnastics. The Olympics teach us about peace, friendship, and fair play. The first modern Olympic Games were held in Greece in 1896. Every time, a new country hosts the games and shows its culture. People around the world watch and cheer for their teams. Winning a gold medal is a big dream for every athlete. The Olympics bring nations together and remind us that sports can unite the world in a positive way.



Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Rashwan showed when he refused to attack his opponent's injury.
a) selfishness b) respect c) anger d) weakness
2. The five Olympic rings represent
a) medals b) continents c) athletes d) sports
3. A team cannot win without
a) luck b) talent c) teamwork d) mistakes
4. Our sports teacher teaches us play and friendship.
a) fire b) fear c) fair d) fare
5. from many countries come together to compete in the Olympic Games.
a) Teachers b) Athletes c) Actors d) Soldiers



Language

2 Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

1. He (use) to play judo every day.
2. Did the player to win many matches?
3. He (don't) use to be rude.
4. The team train at noon. It was very hot at that time.
5. People used to Aya's honesty.



Writing

3 Write a report of 100-110 words about "A sports event":

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The structure was built to be very strong. "Strong" has the same meaning as ".....".
a) weak b) quiet c) powerful d) discourage
- Anas appears tired today. We add the prefix "....." to get the antonym of "appear".
a) ir- b) dis- c) un- d) il-
- Our began when we both joined the school athletics team.
a) flag b) nation c) friendship d) achievement
- A/An is a long, organized trip for a special purpose.
a) tournament b) match c) expedition d) instruction

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

award – injured – final – sportsmanship – victory

Mohamed Rashwan was a famous Egyptian judo champion. He became known during the 1984 Olympic Games in Los Angeles. In the (1), his Japanese opponent was (2) in his leg, but Rashwan refused to attack the weak point نقطة الضعف. He valued fair play more than (3)..... Although he won only the silver medal, he gained worldwide respect and an award for his (4)

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The semi-final of the national championship was full of excitement. Players in team sports and individual sports tried to score points and stay fit. Some athletes were confused about the rules, which caused anger, but the coaches encouraged them to do their best. The fans cheered for everyone, creating a lively and inspiring atmosphere. Winners were proud, while others learned from their mistakes. Children tried new sports and made friends while having fun. The tournament was amazing, and all players stayed calm, disciplined, and focused. For me, the best part was seeing children enjoy healthy competitions and learning the importance of honesty, talent, and team spirit in sports.



Writing

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. My teacher usually gave us a lot of homework. (used to)

.....

2. My father didn't travel much before he retired. (use to)

.....

3. Did Mr. Hatim drive a taxi when he was a young man? (use to)

.....

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There (use/be) a garden here.

2. He (use/goes) fishing on weekends.

3. They didn't use to (studied) hard.

7 Finish the following dialog:

Salma likes running and relay races.

Hassan : What sport do you like?

Salma : (1)

Hassan : Why do you like running?

Salma : (2)

Hassan : Do you run every day?

Salma : (3) I only run on weekends.

Hassan : (4) ?

Salma : My classmate, Nadine, runs with me.

Hassan : (5) ?

Salma : I feel refreshed and happy.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Your favorite sport"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 8

CULTURES AND TRADITIONS

LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

Identify the core values in short texts describing specific cultural practices.

Listening

Correctly identify three specific cultural details in a short interview about cultures and traditions.

Speaking

Compare and contrast traditions from two different countries.

Share personal experiences about a local or family tradition.

Language

Use "defining relative clauses".

Writing

Write a short article expressing a personal opinion on the importance of traditions using at least two reasons to support their view.

A

VOCABULARY

Lesson 1

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

celebration (n)	احتفال	identity (n)	هوية
ceremony (n)	مراسم احتفال	patience (n)	صبر
culture (n)	ثقافة	reflect (ed) (v)	يعكس
custom (n)	عادة	traditions (n)	تقاليد
harmony (n)	انسجام/تناغم	transformation (n)	تحويل/انتقال

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

abroad (adv)	بالخارج/خارج البلاد	importance (n)	أهمية
alike (adj/adv)	على حد سواء	joyful (adj)	مفرح/سار
beauty (n)	جمال	kindness (n)	لطف/طيبة
celebrate (d) (v)	يحتفل بـ	locals (n)	السكان المحليون
creativity (n)	إبداع/ابتكار	massive (adj)	ضخم
the elderly (n/adj)	كبار السن	perform (ed) (v)	يؤدي
exchange (d) (v)	يتبادل	region (n)	إقليم/منطقة
feast (n)	عيد	relatives (n)	أقارب
festival (n)	مهرجان	risotto (n)	أكلة أرز إيطالية
foreign (adj)	أجنبي	sculpture (n)	تمثال منحوت
gather (ed) (v)	يجمع/يتجمع/يحشد	seasonal (adj)	موسمي
gatherings (n)	تجمعات/لقاءات	society (n)	مجتمع

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

around the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم	draw people/tourists	يجذب الناس/السياح
at Christmas	في عيد الميلاد	end with	ينتهي بـ
at Easter	في عيد الفصح/القيامة	in harmony with	في تناغم/انسجام مع
bring joy/excitement	يجلب الفرح/الإثارة	light up	يضئ/يثير
care for	يعتني/يهتم بـ	respect for	احترام لـ
celebrate with	يحتفل بـ	rich in	غني بـ
common for	شائع لـ/منتشر بين	start with	يبدأ بـ
connected to	مرتبط/متصل بـ	tell a story	يحكي/يخبر قصة

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition (v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

Read and complete with a word from the list:

reflect – for – to – celebration

- 1 My neighbor asked me to care her child while she was away.
- 2 Good actions a kind heart.
- 3 We're planning a small for my mother's birthday.

VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

consider (ed) (v)	يعتبر/يفكر في	preserve (d) (v)	يحافظ على
cultural interview (n)	مقابلة ثقافية	real-life (adj)	واقعي
neighbor (n)	جار	record (ed) (v)	يسجل

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

colorful (adj)	ملون	meals (n)	وجبات
value (n)	مبدأ/قيمة	presenter (n)	مذيع/مقدم برنامج
cultural talk (n)	حوار ثقافي	source (n)	مصدر
guest (n)	ضيف/نزيل/مدعو	talented (adj)	موهوب
ignore (d) (v)	يتجاهل/يهمل	visitor (n)	زائر
honor (n)	فخر	wisdom (n)	حكمة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

feel connected	يشعر بالترابط	prepare for	يعد/يجهز لـ
pass to	يمرر لـ	play music	يلعب الموسيقى
learn about	يتعلم عن	source of	مصدر لـ
play a role	يلعب دورًا	show kindness	يظهر العطف

Read and complete with a word from the list:

for – about – guest – preserve

- 1 To food, we keep it in the fridge.
- 2 Our was very kind and friendly.
- 3 We must prepare the school trip tomorrow.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
build	يبني	built	built
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
light	يضيء/يئير	lit	lit
teach	يعلم/يُدرّس	taught	taught
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
ignore	يتجاهل/يهمّل	neglect	يهمّل	care for	يعتني بـ
massive	ضخم	huge	ضخم	small/tiny	صغير
preserve	يحافظ على	protect/keep	يحمي/يحافظ	damage	يتلف

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
celebrate (v)	يحتفل	-ion	تحول إلى اسم	celebration (n)	احتفال
culture (n)	ثقافة	-al	تحول إلى صفة	cultural (adj)	ثقافي
joy (n)	فرح	-ful	تحول إلى صفة	joyful (adj)	مفرح/سار
kind (adj)	لطيف/طيب	-ness	تحول إلى اسم	kindness (n)	لطف/طيبة
visit (v)	يزور	-or	تحول إلى اسم فاعل	visitor (n)	زائر

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- They a candle when the lights went out.
a) spoke b) drew c) lit d) celebrated
- Helping others brings a sense of joy. Add the suffix "....." to "joy" to get its adjective.
a) -ful b) -ion c) -al d) -or
- The ancient temple was built with massive stones. The synonym of "massive" is ".....".
a) small b) huge c) colorful d) cultural
- The museum welcomes over a thousand every weekend.
a) visits b) visited c) visiting d) visitors

Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Why do you think traditions are important for families and communities?
 - 2 Can you name an ancient tradition that people still celebrate today in your country?
-  Read the following text and guess the meaning of the words in bold.

SB page 25

Traditions are an important part of every **culture**. They help people feel connected to their families, communities, and history. Around the world, traditions appear in festivals, food, music, and **celebrations**. Each tradition tells a story about the values of a society.

For example, in Egypt, it is common for people to wear new clothes and visit **relatives** during festivals. This tradition, which brings joy and **excitement**, shows the importance of family. Another important value in Egyptian culture is **respect** for the elderly. Younger people are taught to greet and care for older people, which **reflects** kindness and respect.

In Japan, the tea **ceremony**, which is carefully performed step by step, reflects respect, **patience**, and **harmony**. Another famous tradition is the **Sapporo snow festival** in Japan, where people gather to build **massive** ice and snow **sculptures** that light up the winter city. The celebration, which draws people and tourists alike, shows creativity, community spirit and the beauty of seasonal **transformation**⁽⁸⁾.

Although traditions are different, they often teach similar values such as respect, friendship, and sharing. Some **customs** are hundreds of years old, while others are modern but are quickly becoming part of cultural **identity**.

Post-reading questions:

- 1 Give two examples of traditions from the text.
- 2 How can traditions help people feel connected to their culture?
- 3 What examples from Egypt show the importance of family and respect?



1) حفلات

2) الأعراس

3) إثارة/حماس

4) الاحترام

5) مهرجان سايبورو للتتويج

6) فخم

7) تماثيل منحدونة

8) تحول

9) عادات

Listening Text



Lesson 1

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 Why do you think traditions can play an important role in our life?
- 2 What questions would you ask a visitor about their culture?

Listen to an interview between a presenter and a guest. Then do the following tasks.

SB page 28

An interview between a presenter and a guest.

Presenter Welcome to Culture Talk! Today we are learning about traditions and customs.

Can you share an example from your country?

Guest Of course. In my town, there is a **festival**⁽¹⁾ which is celebrated every spring. People wear colorful clothes and play traditional music, which makes the streets **full of life**⁽²⁾.



Presenter That sounds **exciting**⁽³⁾! What do people usually do during this festival?

Guest Families prepare special meals that are shared with neighbors. Dancing and singing are also enjoyed, and everyone feels **connected**⁽⁴⁾.

(1) كرنفال/عيد (2) مفعم بالحياة

(3) مشوق (4) مترابط

(5) كبار السن (6) الحكمة

(7) شيمة (8) حفيظ

(9) محفوظة (10) منقول

Presenter Wonderful. In Egypt, many people respect the **elderly**⁽⁵⁾, who are considered a source of **wisdom**⁽⁶⁾. Is there a similar **value**⁽⁷⁾ in your culture?

Guest Yes, respect for older people is very important. Children are taught customs that show kindness and honor.

Presenter One last question – why are cultural interviews important?

Guest Because they give us **real-life**⁽⁸⁾ stories. Many interviews are recorded and then shared online, so traditions are **preserved**⁽⁹⁾ and **passed**⁽¹⁰⁾ to new generations.

Post-listening questions:

SB

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 When is the guest's festival celebrated?
 - a) Every winter
 - b) Every spring
 - c) Every summer
 - d) Every fall
- 2 What do families prepare for neighbors?
 - a) Clothes
 - b) Music
 - c) Special meals
 - d) Games
- 3 Who are considered a source of wisdom in Egypt?
 - a) Teachers
 - b) Children
 - c) Tourists
 - d) The elderly

Definitions التعريفات

ceremony	مراسم احتفال	special event like a wedding	
culture	ثقافة	the way of life of a group of people	(1) حفل زفاف
harmony	انسجام/تناسق/تناغم	peace or balance among people or things	
identity	هوية	who someone is	(2) توارث

- 1** **although** بينما / **while** على الرغم من/مع أن (تستخدم هذه الروابط للتعبير عن التناقض)
- **Although** traditions are different, they often teach similar values.
 - Some customs are hundreds of years old, **while** others are modern.

- 2** **everyone/ someone/ none/ anyone** تعامل معاملة المفرد ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد
- **Everyone** feels connected.
 - There isn't **anyone** in the kitchen.

- 3** **The + (adjective)** تدل على جماعة تنقسم بنفس الصفة
- Many people respect **the elderly**.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** My father caught the bus he got up late.
a) while b) although c) so d) but
- 2** To live in means to live in peace among people or things.
a) culture b) kindness
c) beauty d) harmony
- 3** The government opened a new center to provide medical care for the who are over 60.
a) elder b) elderly c) eldest d) oldest
- 4** Everyone happy with the end of the war in Gaza.
a) are b) is c) were d) have

LESSON

1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Learning a new skill needs a lot of and practice every day.
a) peace b) kindness c) friends d) patience
- The teacher asked the students to arrange their project in with each other.
a) festival b) harmony c) feast d) ceremony
- Wearing new clothes during Eid is a happy
a) source b) society c) sculpture d) custom
- The company only makes massive machines. The word "....." is the antonym of "massive".
a) huge b) neglect c) small d) careful
- She showed great kindness by offering help. "Kindness" in this sentence is a/an
a) noun b) adjective c) verb d) preposition
- Everyone enjoyed the of the cultural festival with food and songs.
a) harmony b) society c) celebration d) community
- Grandparents love to stories about their childhood.
a) draw b) bring c) tell d) perform
- Eating rice and beans is common families in many countries.
a) in b) at c) for d) on
- A wedding is a type of formal event known as a/an
a) culture b) harmony c) ceremony d) identity
- It is a/an to give small gifts on special occasions in this city.
a) tradition b) creativity c) region d) identity

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

to – excitement – of – gathers – exchange

In many regions, festivals are celebrated to preserve cultures. The ceremony, which (1) relatives and friends, is always joyful. People (2) gifts and traditional foods during the celebration. Traditions that are connected (3) respect for the elderly are carefully followed. These events also attract people and tourists who want to experience the customs of the society. Everyone enjoys these festivals and shares moments of joy and (4) together.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. During the festival, people wear clothes that shine under the sunlight beautifully.
a) old b) dark c) colorful d) heavy
2. Many people education the key to success in modern life.
a) spread b) consider c) protect d) take
3. Each at the wedding got a small gift as a sign of thanks.
a) painter b) teacher c) host d) guest
4. If you ignore a task, it means you it completely.
a) care b) neglect c) preserve d) keep
5. My next door takes care of my cat when I travel for work.
a) baby b) driver c) neighbor d) guide
6. My cousin is a TV on a morning show.
a) painter b) presenter c) actor d) driver
7. We try to preserve our historical buildings. The antonym of "preserve" is ".....".
a) protect b) damage c) keep d) have
8. You should your notes carefully to study them later before the exam.
a) record b) delete c) think d) hide
9. Books are a great of knowledge for students and teachers alike.
a) reason b) habit c) source d) nation
10. Our teacher says Sara is a student who learns very quickly.
a) nervous b) stupid c) lonely d) talented

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

talented – wisdom – neighbor – consider – ignore

The Spring Festival is one of the most colorful events of the year. Every (1) decorates the house with bright lights. A (2) presenter records the celebrations for the evening news. Guests enjoy traditional meals that families prepare together. People (3) it a time of joy and peace. The visitors who travel from other cities love the warmth and (4) shown by everyone who plays an amazing role in the festival.

Defining Relative Clauses:

جملات الوصل التعريفية

(who/which/that/whose/where/when)

A relative clause gives more information about a noun.

جملة الوصل تعطي مزيدًا من المعلومات حول اسم.

e.g. • This is the girl **who** won the competition.

• I like the car **which** we bought.

Relative pronouns	Usage	Examples
-------------------	-------	----------



people

الأشخاص (فاعل/مفعول)

e.g. • I saw the boy **who** you told me about.

• The student **who** studies hard always gets good grades.

• The chef **who** cooked our dinner is famous.

e.g. • The book **which** I read was very exciting.

• I bought the dress **which** we saw yesterday.

• The car **which** is parked outside is new.

يمكن استخدام حرف جر قبل (which)

• This is the job **for which** you applied.



things/animals

الأشياء غير العاقلة/الحيوانات

(فاعل/مفعول)

e.g. • The bike **that** I got for my birthday is blue.

• The boy **that** helped me is very kind.

• I greet anyone **that** visits us with a warm smile.



people or things

الأشخاص/الأشياء غير العاقلة

(فاعل/مفعول)

e.g. • The girl **whose** bag is pink is my sister.

• We bought the house **whose** door is brown.

• We saw a cat **whose** fur is soft.

يمكن استخدام حرف جر قبل (whose)

• The woman **to whose** house we went was very kind.



possession

الملكية (للمنقل/غير عاقل)



places

الأماكن

- e.g. This is the park **where** we play football.
(= in which)
That's the school **where** Ahmed studies.
(= at which)



time

الزمن

- e.g. I remember the day **when** I got my new bike. (= on which)
Summer is the season **when** we go to the beach. (= in which)



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 The man we met in the park is from Spain.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (who) لأن المعلومة بعد أداة الوصل تعود على شخص.

- 2 The movie made us laugh was very entertaining.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (which) لأن المعلومة بعد أداة الوصل تعود على شيء غير عاقل.

لاحظ

نستخدم (which) مع الأماكن إذا:

١- كانت الجملة الثانية وصف للمكان:

That's the school **which** has the best teachers.

٢- إذا وجد حرف جر (قبل **which** أو بعدها).

This is the park **in which** we play football.

This is the school **which** we learn **in**.

نستخدم (which) مع الوقت إذا:

١- كانت الجملة الثانية وصفاً للوقت:

Summer is the season **which** has many hot days.

٢- إذا وُجد حرف جر (قبل **which** أو بعدها).

I remember the day **which** I got my new bike **on**.

Monday is the day **on which** I visit my grandmother.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The woman won the prize is very talented.

SB

- a) when b) where c) which d) who

2. The city we visited last summer is very old.

SB

- a) where b) whose c) when d) which

3. 2006 was the year my brother was born.

SB

- a) where b) when c) whose d) that

4. The child mother is a doctor wants to be a nurse.

- a) when b) who c) which d) whose

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The girl (when) arrived late missed the first lesson.

2. I went to the zoo (who) has many new animals from Africa.

3. I visited the village (which) my grandfather was born.

4. The cell phone (where) Sara bought last week stopped working suddenly.

5. I visited my friend (who) father returned from abroad.

6. I remember the day (where) we first met.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. This is the book. I bought it yesterday. (which)

.....

2. I saw the boy. You met him in the club last week. (who)

.....

3. I want the dress. It is displayed in the shop window. (that)

.....

4. I visited Faten in the new villa. She lives there. (where)

.....

5. July is the month in which we go to Marsa Matrouh. (when)

.....

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The story I bought yesterday is about wild animals.
 a) when b) who c) which d) when
2. I love places I can relax and read books.
 a) when b) where c) whose d) who
3. The boy won the race trains every morning.
 a) where b) when c) that d) whose
4. We visited the museum has the oldest Egyptian statues.
 a) which b) where c) who d) when

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We stayed in a hotel **who**, was built near the river.
2. The lady **whose** car broke down asked for our help.
3. This is the club **where** my parents first met each other.
4. I remember the day **(where)** we moved to our new house.
5. I know the man **whose** fixed our television last week.
6. The tree **where** stands near our gate gives us cool shade.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I thanked the man. He repaired my cell phone. (who)

2. The car is very expensive. My father bought it a week ago. (which)

3. The restaurant serves Italian food. We had lunch there. (where)

4. The man is a doctor. His son is in my class. (whose)

5. Friday is the day. I go to the club on Friday. (when)

حل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بإجابة الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



SKILLS Speaking

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



Asking about cultures and traditions

السؤال عن الثقافات والتقاليد



What tradition is important in your family or country?

ما التقليد المهم في عائلتك أو بلدك؟

Eid Al-Fitr is an important tradition in Egypt.

عيد الفطر تقليد مهم في مصر.



What do people usually do during this tradition?

ماذا يفعل الناس عادةً خلال هذا التقليد؟

People wear new clothes, visit their relatives, and eat kahk.

يرتدي الناس ملابس جديدة، ويزورون أقاربهم ويأكلون الكحك.



Why should this tradition be remembered?

لماذا يجب أن نتذكر هذا التقليد؟

Because it brings joy and keeps families close.

لأنه يجلب الفرح ويحافظ على ترابط العائلة.



Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► Salma is asking Karim about Sham El-Nessim, which is a spring festival.

Salma: What is Sham El-Nessim, Karim?

Karim: (1)

Salma: (2)?

Karim: People celebrate it on the Monday after Easter.

Salma: What do people usually do?

Karim: (3)

Salma: Why do families go out to parks and gardens?

Karim: (4)

Salma: (5)?

Karim: Yes, they eat special food like fish, onions, and eggs.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Knowing your cultural helps you understand your traditions.
a) beauty b) identity c) feast d) rule
- His family felt such joy when their long-lost pet came home. We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective of "joy".
a) -less b) -ness c) -er d) -ful
- In Egypt, people wear new clothes and visit during festivals.
a) celebrations b) relatives c) feasts d) countries
- means the way of life of a group of people.
a) Harmony b) Patience c) Identity d) Culture

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

Egyptians – decorations – gatherings – local – tell

In Egypt, we celebrate many beautiful traditions. During Eid, families wear new clothes, visit each other, and share food which is very delicious. Grandparents (1) stories and teach us how to respect our culture. The streets look happy with lights and (2) Everyone smiles and says, "Eid Mubarak!" Tourists also come to see our celebrations and learn about (3) life. I really enjoy these (4)

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- I'll never forget the present. You bought for me last week. (which)
.....
- The girl was sad. Her mobile was lost. (whose)
.....
- The tourists were very pleased. We met them at the station. (who)
.....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The movie (who) we watched last night was really funny.
- The man (whose) lives next door travels every month.
- The student (who) project won the prize is very proud.

5 Complete the following dialog:

Tom and Omar are talking about Mother's Day on March 21st.

Tom : When is Mother's Day in Egypt?

Omar : (1)

Tom : (2)?

Omar : Children give gifts to their mothers.

Tom : (3)?

Omar : They give gifts like flowers, cards, or souvenirs.

Tom : Do schools celebrate it?

Omar : (4) They celebrate it with songs.

Tom : Is it a happy day?

Omar : (5) It's full of love and appreciation.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A wonderful festival in your city"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The boy plays football every day. He lives next door. (who)

2. The house belongs to my uncle. It is near the river. (which)

3. This is the shop. I bought my shoes there. (where)

4. I'll never forget the day. I met you then. (when)

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆

< 40% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more examples

85 : 100% Well done!

VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

generation (n)	جيل	Lunar New Year (n)	رأس السنة القمرية
grave (n)	قبر/مقبرة	purpose (n)	غرض
honor (ed) (v)	يكرّم/يتقدّر/يشرف	shared (adj)	مشترك/متبادل
hospitality (n)	كرم الضيافة		

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

alive (adj)	حي/على قيد الحياة	long-standing (adj)	عريق/مستمر منذ زمن طويل
candle (n)	شمعة	loved (adj)	محبوب
care (n)	رعاية/عناية	memory (n)	ذاكرة
connect (ed) (v)	يوصل/يربط	offer (ed) (v)	يعرض/يقدم
dead (adj)	ميت	practices (n)	ممارسات
envelope (n)	ظرف (للخطاب)	replace (d) (v)	يستبدل/يبدل
friendship (n)	صداقة	uniform (n)	زي موحد
generosity (n)	كرم/عطاء	warmly (adv)	بحرارة/بحفاوة
happiness (n)	سعادة	welcome (d) (v)	يرحب بـ

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

belong to	ينتمي إلى	keep ... alive	يحافظ على استمرار/بقاء
decorate ... with	يُزين/يُزخرف ... بـ	remind ... of	يُذكر ... بـ
hope for	أمل بـ		

Read and complete with a word from the list:

honored – purpose – generosity – with – by

- 1 My friend showed great by sharing his lunch with me.
- 2 They decorated the Christmas tree lights.
- 3 They the hero with a special ceremony.
- 4 The of this meeting is to plan the school trip.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past participle
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
give	يعطي	gave	given
send	يرسل	sent	sent

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
accept	يقبل	agree	يوافق	refuse	يرفض
better	أفضل	finer	أفضل	worse	أسوأ
grand	كبير/ضخم	huge	ضخم	small	صغير
honor	يكرم/يقدر/يشرف	value/admire	يقدر/يحترم	dishonor	يُهين/يساء إلى

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
happy (adj)	سعيد	-ness	تحول إلى اسم	happi <u>ness</u> (n)	سعادة
rest (n)	راحة	-less	تحول إلى صفة	rest <u>less</u> (adj)	مُقلق/مضطرب
tradition (n)	تقليد	-al	تحول إلى صفة	traditi <u>onal</u> (adj)	تقليدي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- It is a family tradition to eat koshari together on Fridays. To get the adjective of "tradition", add the suffix ".....".
 a) -al b) -ness c) -ity d) -less
- The ceremony was held to the winners of the competition.
 a) ignore b) forget
 c) honor d) accept
- The palace looked grand with its tall doors. The antonym of "grand" is ".....".
 a) small b) huge
 c) easy d) complex

Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What customs do families in Egypt usually follow during festivals?
- 2 Why do you think customs are passed down from generation to generation?

Read the following text, then do the following tasks.

SB Page 30

Customs are everyday practices that show the culture of a community. They are not always big festivals, but they play an important role in people's lives. Around the world, customs may look different, but they often share the same **purpose** : to bring people together.

In Mexico, people celebrate **the Day of the Dead** by decorating **graves** with flowers and candles. Families believe this custom honors their loved ones and keeps their memory alive. In China, **the Lunar New Year** is a time when families clean their houses, wear new clothes, and give red envelopes with money to children. This custom shows hope for luck and happiness. In Egypt, **hospitality** is a long-standing custom that reflects generosity and respect. Guests are welcomed warmly, and a lot of food is often prepared. Offering tea, coffee, or traditional dishes is not just polite—it is a way of showing friendship and care.

These customs may belong to different cultures, but they all remind us of shared values: love, respect, and community. Customs, whether simple or grand, keep traditions alive and connect generations.

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 Why are customs important in daily life?
- 2 How do Mexicans honor their loved ones during the Day of the Dead?
- 3 What do Egyptian customs during festivals show about family values?



(1) عاعة

(2) غرض

(3) يوم الموتى

(4) مقابر

(5) رأس السنة القمرية

(6) كرم الضيافة

Notes on Reading

- 1 **everyday** + اسم (صفة بعدها اسم) = **daily** (صفة) (يومي)
 • Dad is the person who pays for our **everyday needs**. (= daily needs)

- 2 **every day** (ظرف) (= **daily** (حال) (يوميًا)
 • I go to school by bus **every day**. (= daily)

- 3 **customs** العادات / الممارسات الاجتماعية التي تعبر عن ثقافة المجتمع.
 • Eating together on Fridays is a **custom** in some families.
traditions تقاليد قديمة تنتقل عبر الأجيال.
 • Wearing special clothes on celebrations is a **tradition**.
habits عادات شخصية، مثل عادة شخص معين.
 • Anas has a **habit** of reading a story before bed.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Walking is my sport.
 a) every day b) everyday c) every d) day
- 2 I brush my teeth before I go to bed.
 a) everyday b) every day
 c) a daily d) a day
- 3 Salma drinks milk every morning—it's her
 a) custom b) habit
 c) tradition d) experience

تطبيق الأضواء

أدخلوا الرقم المكون من 12 رقم
 امسح الكود الشخصي بالفلأف الداخلي في
 نهاية الكتاب، واحصل على محتوى المادة
 الرقمية من تطبيق الأضواء

www.adaaw.com

SKILLS



How to write about the customs you admire most

كيفية الكتابة عن العادات التي تعجب بها كثيرا

Customs:

العادات:

- **Definition:** Customs are everyday practices ممارسات that show the culture of a community.
- **Importance:** They show respect, kindness, and culture.

Examples:

الأمثلة:

- **Greeting people:** Saying hello, shaking hands, bowing.
- **Family respect:** Listening to elders, caring for grandparents.

Personal opinion:

الراي الشخص:

- I try to follow them every day.
- They help me be kind and polite.

Why I admire them?

لماذا اعجب بها؟

- They make people happy.
- They show love and respect.
- They keep traditions alive.

اقرأ هذا النموذج العجيب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"Customs you admire most"

I admire many customs in my country. Customs are traditions that people follow in daily life. One custom I like is greeting people politely, even if they are strangers. Saying hello, shaking hands, or showing respect is part of our daily traditions. Another custom is helping others even if they don't ask for help. People share food, give gifts, and visit sick friends. Festivals are also important customs. During holidays, families celebrate together with joy and happiness. I also admire our tradition of respecting the elderly. Listening to grandparents and helping parents are good habits. I try to follow these customs every day. They make people happy, show love and respect, and keep our culture alive. I feel proud when I practice them.

LESSON

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. During the festival, visitors enjoy the of the villagers.
a) cleverness b) hospitality c) purpose d) memory
2. During the storm, the electricity went out. The suffix "-ity" is added to the adjective "electric" to form a/an
a) adjective b) noun c) adverb d) verb
3. Mr. Hossam has a good of all the events that happened last year.
a) memory b) distance c) honor d) generosity
4. During the ceremony, they gifts to all the guests.
a) honored b) offered c) welcomed d) replaced
5. Dad the broken chair with a stronger one last week.
a) reminded b) decorated c) replaced d) welcomed
6. Students always have hope good results after studying hard.
a) on b) in c) at d) for
7. We must honor our heroes. The prefix "....." is added to "honor" to form the antonym.
a) un- b) pre- c) ir- d) dis-
8. A is a hole dug محفورة in the ground where a dead person is buried.
a) grave b) theater c) library d) mountain
9. True helps people support each other in difficult times.
a) ceremony b) happiness c) friendship d) purpose
10. The teacher the new students to the class with a smile.
a) welcomed b) belonged c) gave d) connected

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

connect – graves – long-standing – hospitality – purpose

In Mexico, people celebrate the Day of the Dead. This (1) custom shows the deep care and love that people have for dead people. Families decorate (2) with flowers and candles. The (3) of this celebration is to keep the memory of the dead alive and to (4) generations together. It is a tradition which belongs to everyone who values family and love.

2

Chapter Two: Captives of Captain Nemo

Chapter (2) in points



- 1 Aronnax, Conseil, and Ned Land were brought inside the Nautilus and met Captain Nemo.
تم إحضار أرونالكس وكونسيل ونيد لاند داخل (غواصة النوتيليس) وقابلوا القبطان نيمو.
- 2 Captain Nemo is a mysterious man of strong will and deep knowledge. He's the captain of the Nautilus.
القبطان نيمو شخص غامض ذو عزيمة قوية وعلم عميق وهو قبطان غواصة النوتيليس.
- 3 Captain Nemo said the Nautilus was built for life underwater and was powered by electricity.
أخبرهم القبطان نيمو أن النوتيليس بنيت للحياة تحت الماء وتعمل بالكهرباء.
- 4 Nemo told them they could never return to land once they were on the submarine.
أخبرهم القبطان نيمو أنهم لن يعودوا أبداً للأرض بمجرد أنهم على متن الغواصة.
- 5 Aronnax accepted this because he was curious and wanted to learn more about the ocean.
وافق أرونالكس من أجل الفضول، ولأنه أراد أن يعرف أكثر عن المحيط.
- 6 Conseil stayed loyal to his master, while Ned Land was angry because he valued freedom. Ned Land began planning his escape.
ظل كونسيل وفيا لسيده ولكن نيد لاند شعر بالفضب لأنه يقدر الحرية. بدأ نيد لاند بالتخطيط للهروب.
- 7 Life on the Nautilus was amazing, with a library, museum, and large windows to see the deep ocean.
كانت الحياة على متن النوتيليس رائعة، بها مكتبة ومتحف وشبابيك كبيرة لرؤية المحيط العميق.
- 8 Nemo kept himself away from land and insisted that the sea was his only homeland.
ابتعد نيمو نفسه عن الأرض وأصر أن البحر هو موطنه الوحيد.
- 9 The three men began to feel like half-prisoners and half-guests.
بدأ يشعر الرجال الثلاثة بأنهم نصف سجناء ونصف ضيوف.

VOCABULARY

Lesson 4

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

aboard (adv)	على متن/ظهر	floating (adj)	طاف/عائم
artifact (n)	قطعة أثرية	insist (ed) (v)	يصر على
astonishing (adj)	مذهل/مدهش	palace (n)	قصر
captive (n)	أسير	surface (d) (v/n)	يطفو على السطح/سطح
commander (n)	قائد	will (n)	إرادة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

captain (n)	قبطان	homeland (n)	وطن
civilization (n)	حضارة	jewel/gem (n)	جوهرة/حجر كريم
coral (n)	مرجان	knowledge (n)	معرفة
declare (d) (v)	يعلن/يصرح	master (n)	سيد
diamond (n)	الماس	painting (n)	لوحة فنية/رسم
distance (n)	مسافة	pearl (n)	لؤلؤة/درة
electricity (n)	كهرباء	remain (ed) (v)	يبقى/يظل
entirely (adv)	كلياً	restless (adj)	فَلِق/مضطرب
features (n)	ميزات/خصائص/سمات	seashell (n)	صدفة بحرية/قوقعة
freedom (n)	حرية	secret (n/adj)	سر/سري
half-guest (n)	ضيف جزئياً	situation (n)	موقف
half-prisoner (n)	سجين جزئياً	treasure (n)	كنز

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

compare ... to	يقارن ... بـ	loyal to	مخلص/وفى لـ
desire for	رغبة لـ	on a journey	في رحلة
escape from	يهرب من	powered by	يتشغل بـ
keep away from	يتبعد عن	react to	يتفاعل مع/يرد على

Pre-reading question:

Do you think people can really live under the sea? Why/Why not?

SB Page 32

Chapter Two: Captives of Captain Nemo

Aronnax, Conseil, and Ned Land were brought inside through an iron door **باب حديدي**. There, they met the **commander**⁽¹⁾: Captain Nemo, a mysterious man of strong will and deep **knowledge**⁽²⁾. Nemo explained that his ship, the Nautilus, was built entirely for life beneath the sea. Powered by **electricity**⁽³⁾, it could travel very long distances without surfacing.

(1) قائد

(2) معرفة

الكهرباء

(3) فضول

(4) أسرار

(5) مخلص

(6) الحرية

(7) مخجل/مدهش

(8) كنوز

(9) عجائب

Why is the Nautilus suitable for life under the sea?

Nemo welcomed them politely, but made it clear: once aboard, they could never return to land. They were to remain **imprisoned**⁽¹⁾ with him as long as they lived. Professor Aronnax was filled with scientific **curiosity**⁽²⁾. He accepted that, as he wanted to learn about the ocean **المحيط** and its **secrets**⁽³⁾. Conseil stayed **loyal**⁽⁴⁾ to his master. But Ned Land, who valued **freedom**⁽⁵⁾ above all, was angry. He began making a plan to escape from **the Nautilus**⁽⁶⁾.

How did each of the three men react to Captain Nemo's rule?

Life on the Nautilus was **astonishing**⁽¹⁾. The ship looked like a floating palace **مصر عائم** under water with a library, a museum, and big windows to see the deep ocean. Nemo showed them **treasures**⁽²⁾ gathered from the sea: pearls, gold, and ancient artifacts **أشياء قديمة**. He told them that he kept himself away from land. The sea, he insisted, was his only homeland **وطن**. Thus, they began to feel like half-prisoners **نصف سجناء** and half-guests **نصف ضيوف**. They were kept on a journey that was full of **wonders**⁽³⁾ and dangers.

What makes the Nautilus look like a palace?

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. Who was the captain of the Nautilus?

من كان قائد الـ «نوتيلوس»؟

- The captain of the Nautilus is Captain Nemo.

2. How was the Nautilus powered?

كيف تم تشغيل الـ «نوتيلوس»؟

- The Nautilus is powered by electricity.

3. Why did Professor Aronnax stay on the Nautilus?

لماذا بقي البروفيسور أرونالكس على متن الـ «نوتيلوس»؟

- He stayed because he wanted to learn about the ocean and its secrets.

4. What did Captain Nemo show them from the sea?

ماذا أراهم الكابتن نيمو من البحر؟

- He showed them pearls, gold, and ancient artifacts.

5. Who wanted to escape from the Nautilus?

من أراد الهروب من الـ «نوتيلوس»؟

- Ned Land wanted to escape from the Nautilus.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think Captain Nemo doesn't want to return to land?

لماذا تعتقد أن الكابتن نيمو لا يريد العودة إلى اليابسة؟

- Maybe he likes the sea and wants to discover it.

2. How do you think Conseil feels about being on the Nautilus?

كيف تعتقد أن كونسيل يشعر وهو على متن الـ «نوتيلوس»؟

- He probably feels calm and safe because he trusts Professor Aronnax.

3. Why is Ned Land different from the other two men?

لماذا يختلف نيد لاند عن الرجلين الآخرين؟

- Because he loves freedom and doesn't care about adventure.

4. Do you think life on the Nautilus is a gift or a prison? Why?

هل تعتقد أن الحياة على الـ «نوتيلوس» هبة أم سجن؟ ولماذا؟

- It can be both—a gift because of its wonders, but a prison because they can't leave.

5. What does the sea mean to Captain Nemo?

ماذا يعني البحر للكابتن نيمو؟

- To him, the sea is his home, his freedom, and his only world.

Chapter 2 Exercises

 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ned Land was angry because he valued above all.
a) the sea b) freedom c) treasure d) knowledge
2. Professor Aronnax accepted to be on the Nautilus because of his
a) excitement b) curiosity c) fear d) desire for freedom
3. Captain Nemo's ship, called, was built for life beneath the sea.
a) Nautilus b) Atlantis c) Sea King d) Odyssey
4. Nemo showed treasures collected from the sea, such as
a) pearls, gold and ancient artifacts b) jewels, metals, and paintings
c) seashells, corals, and ships d) gold, diamonds, and gems
5. Nemo declared that the sea, not the, was his only homeland.
a) land b) ocean c) river d) village

 Answer the following questions:

1. How did Professor Aronnax react to the situation on the Nautilus, and why?
.....
2. Why was Ned Land so restless and angry about being aboard the ship?
.....
3. How was life on the Nautilus?
.....
4. How did Captain Nemo compare the sea to the land?
.....

 Read and write True (T) or False (F):

1. Captain Nemo welcomed Aronnax and his companions politely, but told them they could never return to land. ()
2. Professor Aronnax refused to accept to be on the Nautilus and became very angry. ()
3. Ned Land valued freedom above everything else and wanted to escape. ()
4. The Nautilus was just a simple ship with no special features. ()
5. Nemo said the sea was his only homeland. ()

 Answer the following questions: Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think Captain Nemo chose to keep Aronnax and his friends on the Nautilus instead of sending them back to land?
2. In what ways could life on the Nautilus be better or worse than life on land? Give examples.
3. If you were in Ned Land's place, would you try to escape or stay on the ship? Why?

LESSON

4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- is the commander of the Nautilus.
 - Professor Aronnax
 - Ned Land
 - Captain Nemo
 - Conseil
- The Nautilus was advanced because
 - it was powered by electricity
 - it was powered by petrol
 - it was very big
 - it could travel at night
- Professor Aronnax accepted to be on the Nautilus because he was
 - happy
 - curious
 - amazing
 - disappointed
- Ned Land valued instead of being on the Nautilus.
 - honesty
 - knowledge
 - power
 - freedom
- The Nautilus had inside of it.
 - a library and a museum
 - bedrooms
 - statues
 - artifacts
- To Captain Nemo, was his only homeland.
 - the sea
 - the Nautilus
 - the beach
 - the museum
- stayed loyal to his master.
 - Ned Land
 - Conseil
 - Captain Nemo
 - Professor Aronnax

2 Answer the following questions:

- How was Captain Nemo described?
.....
- What was different about the Nautilus?
.....
- Why did Professor Aronnax accept to be on the Nautilus?
.....
- What was the feeling of the three men?
.....
- Would you accept to stay on the Nautilus as long as you live? Why?
.....
- Why do you think Conseil stayed loyal to his master?
.....
- In your opinion, what dangers might face the three men on the Nautilus?
.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- is the quality of being kind and willing **مستعد** to share or give things (like money, time, or help) freely.
a) Honor b) Respect c) Worry d) Generosity
- Teachers usually students who work hard in class activities.
a) offer b) replace c) connect d) honor
- You look tired. You should take a rest. We add the suffix "....." to the word "rest" to mean "without rest".
a) -ness b) -less c) -ful d) -ity
- Abeer didn't want to miss the to visit the museum today.
a) chance b) charge c) custom d) artifact

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Customs are everyday traditions that reflect a community's culture and values. They may not always be big celebrations, but they play a meaningful role in people's lives. Around the world, customs differ in form but often share the same goal: bringing people together. In Mexico, families honor their loved ones during the Day of the Dead by decorating graves with flowers and candles. In China, the Lunar New Year is celebrated by cleaning homes, wearing new clothes, and giving red envelopes filled with money to children for good luck. In Egypt, hospitality is a long-standing custom—guests are warmly welcomed with a lot of food, tea, or coffee, showing generosity and respect. Although these customs come from different cultures, they all express **universal** values like love and respect. Whether simple or grand, customs preserve cultures and connect generations through shared traditions.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the passage is about
a) customs b) unique foods c) values d) communities
- People in Mexico during the Day of the Dead.
a) give red envelopes b) clean their houses
c) decorate graves d) serve tea
- The underlined word "**universal**" means
a) national b) simple c) global d) strong

B) Answer the following questions:

- What is one way Egyptians show hospitality to guests?
- What are the values the customs express?
- Why do you think some customs are still practiced today?

The Story

3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The three men were brought through a/an door.
a) glass b) iron c) wooden d) plastic
2. wanted to learn about the ocean and its secrets.
a) Ned Land b) Captain Nemo c) Conseil d) Professor Aronnax
3. The ship looked like a floating under water.
a) room b) submarine c) palace d) house
4. The ship had big to see the deep ocean.
a) screens b) windows c) rooms d) doors

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why was Ned Land angry to be on the ship?
6. Would you give up حياة life on land and stay only in the sea like Captain Nemo?

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The book was useful. My friend gave it to me. (which)
.....
2. The park is far away. We like to play there. (where)
.....
3. I respect my friend. He never tells lies. (who)
.....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The computer (who) I use for work is very old.
2. The year (where) the Pyramids were built is still unknown.
3. The man (whose) repaired our car was very clever.



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I know the new house which Gamal lives in. (where)
.....
2. I like the book I bought it last week. (which)
.....
3. Did you know the man? He wrote that interesting book. (who)
.....
4. I saw the new baby with blue eyes. (whose)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

50 : 64% Practice more

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!



VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

decoration (n)	زينة/زخرفة/ديكور	participant (n)	مشارك/مشارك
expert (n)	خبير	unity (n)	وحدة/ترابط

Vocabulary in Reading and Listening المفردات في القراءة والاستماع

belonging (n)	انتماء	lovely (adj)	جميل/رائع
carnival (n)	كرنفال/مهرجان	shape (d) (v)	يشكل/يكون
delicious (adj)	لذيذ	strengthen (ed) (v)	يقوى
develop (ed) (v)	يتطور/يطور/ينمي	ties (n)	روابط/علاقات
exist (ed) (v)	يوجد	wax (n)	شمع
explanation (n)	شرح/تفسير	wood (n)	خشب
fast-changing (adj)	سريع التغير		

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

Not at all!	على الإطلاق!	pass from ... to	ينتقل من ... إلى
on TV	على التلفاز	welcome to	مرحباً بك في
connect ... to	يربط ... بـ	a sense of identity	شعور بالهوية
It shows respect	إنه يظهر الاحترام	stay connected	يبقى متصلاً

Read and complete with a word from the list:

decorations – unity – strengthen – to – in

- 1 To the muscles, you need to exercise regularly.
- 2 Welcome Egypt! Don't forget to visit the Pyramids.
- 3 People add to their homes for Eid.
- 4 The students showed great when they worked together to clean the school.

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	لذيذ	horrible/ awful	فظيع
develop	يتطور/ يطور/ ينمى	improve	يحسن	worsen	يزداد سوءاً
important	مهم	essential	ضروري	unimportant	غير مهم
special	خاص	particular	مخصص	ordinary	عادي

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function الوظيفة	The new word الكلمة الجديدة
decorate (v)	يزين/ يزخرف	-ion	تحويل إلى اسم	decoration (n) زينة/ زخرفة/ ديكور
participate (v)	يشارك	-ant		participant (n) مشترك / مشترك

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I want to develop my English by practicing. The synonym of "develop" is ".....".
 a) worsen
 b) improve
 c) shape
 d) exist
- We will decorate the class for the school party. We delete "e" and add the suffix "....." to change "decorate" into a noun.
 a) -or
 b) -ness
 c) -ate
 d) -ion
- My mom made a delicious cake for my birthday. The antonym of "delicious" is ".....".
 a) horrible
 b) tasty
 c) lovely
 d) fast
- Hazem likes to participate in school activities. The noun of the word "participate" is ".....".
 a) participated
 b) participates
 c) participant
 d) participle

Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What traditions do you celebrate with your family?
- 2 Do you think traditions are important in modern life? Why or why not?

SB Page 34

 Read the following dialog between a TV presenter and an expert.

Presenter Good evening, and welcome to "Culture Around Us"! Tonight, we're talking about traditions and customs. With me is Dr. Salma, a cultural **expert**⁽¹⁾. Dr. Salma, could you tell us why traditions are so important?

Dr. Salma Thank you. Traditions are important because they connect people to their **history**⁽²⁾ and values. They create a sense of identity and **belonging**⁽³⁾.

Presenter Interesting! Can you give us an example from England?

Dr. Salma Of course. In England, one tradition is the "afternoon tea." Families and friends gather to drink tea and eat small cakes or sandwiches. It shows the **values**⁽⁴⁾ of hospitality and friendship.

Presenter That sounds lovely. What about customs in Saudi Arabia?

Dr. Salma In Saudi Arabia, Eid is a very special time. Families visit **relatives**⁽⁵⁾, wear new clothes, and share delicious meals. This **reflects**⁽⁶⁾ the values of family unity, and **generosity**⁽⁷⁾.



(1) خبير

(2) تاريخ

(3) انتماء

(4) قيم

(5) اقارب

(6) يمسك

(7)كرم

Presenter Beautiful. And what about Malaysia?

Dr. Salma In Malaysia, during "Hari Raya Aidilfitri" (the end of Ramadan), people decorate their homes, visit neighbors, and prepare traditional foods. It shows respect, harmony, and the importance of community.

Presenter So, would you say traditions are only about the past?

Dr. Salma Not at all! Some traditions are hundreds of years old, but others are modern and still developing. The important thing is that they help people stay connected in today's fast-changing world.

Presenter Thank you, Dr. Salma. That was a wonderful explanation of how traditions and customs shape our lives.

Post-reading questions:

SB

Read the sentences, and write True (T) or False (F):

- 1** Traditions only existed in the past. ☐
- 2** In England, the afternoon tea is a tradition of hospitality. ☐
- 3** In Saudi Arabia, people wear new clothes and share meals during Eid. ☐
- 4** In Malaysia, Hari Raya shows the importance of community. ☐



Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What is one tradition your family or community celebrates?
- 2 Why do you think people around the world keep traditions alive?

SB Page 36

The Importance of Traditions

Traditions, which connect families and communities, bring people **together**⁽¹⁾ and keep history alive. In Egypt, families gather in Ramadan to share meals, which **strengthens**⁽²⁾ family **ties**⁽³⁾ and teaches hospitality. In India, people celebrate Diwali, the Festival of **Lights**⁽⁴⁾, which spreads joy and hope everywhere. In Brazil, the **Carnival**⁽⁵⁾, which is full of music and colorful clothes, fills the streets with happiness.

Although traditions are different, they teach values like respect, friendship, and sharing. They also create happy memories that are passed from one **generation**⁽⁶⁾ to another. Old or new, traditions are part of cultural identity, which helps people stay connected across time.



- | | |
|---------------|----------|
| (1) جمعاً | (2) يقوي |
| علاقات/روابط | أضواء |
| كرنفال/مهرجان | جيل |

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 How do traditions help connect families and communities?
- 2 What values do traditions teach, according to the text?
- 3 How is Ramadan celebrated in Egypt, and what does it teach?
- 4 What is Diwali, and what feeling does it spread?
- 5 Why are both old and new traditions important for cultural identity?

LESSONS

5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The little girl wore a dress made by her mother.
a) wooden b) delicious c) fast-changing d) lovely
2. Good habits a person's future and guide their choices later in life.
a) exist b) shape c) pass d) welcome
3. She continues to develop her skills every day. "Develop" is the opposite of ".....".
a) worsen b) decorate c) improve d) attend
4. Strong family help people support each other during hard times.
a) ties b) decorations c) experts d) participants
5. The football team showed strong when they worked together to win.
a) sadness b) decoration c) unity d) carnival
6. The teacher's helped everyone understand the difficult lesson easily.
a) carnival b) unity c) decoration d) explanation
7. We saw an interview with a famous scientist TV last night.
a) from b) to c) on d) at
8. People often feel a strong sense of when they join community groups.
a) belonging b) decoration c) explanation d) carnival
9. As a participant in the workshop, you must attend all sessions. The suffix "-ant" is added to the verb "participate" to mean ".....".
a) an adjective b) the doer of the action
c) the cause of the action d) full of
10. We used paper and candles for a simple and beautiful at home.
a) education b) wood c) decoration d) assistant

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

values – participants – fast-changing – worsen – regions

In every country, traditions develop over time and shape people's way of life. They help communities that exist in different (1) stay united. During holidays, (2) join events full of laughter, food, and music. Each family (3) its customs and teaches children to respect the elderly and love others. Traditional dishes that taste delicious bring people together. Even though life is (4), traditions continue to strengthen the ties that connect one generation to another.

SKILLS



How to write a short article كيفية كتابة مقال قصير

A short article المقال القصير

A short article is a piece of writing that gives information or ideas about a topic in a clear and simple way.

Title: العنوان:

Choose a catchy title
عنوان جذاب

Introduction: مقدمة:

One or two sentences to introduce the main idea.

Body: النص:

The main topic and more examples.

Conclusion: الخاتمة:

A simple sentence to summarize your article.

Definition: التعريف:

- A tradition is something people do again and again.

2

Examples: الأمثلة:

- Celebrating Eid with family.
- Eating special food (like kahk).
- Wearing new clothes on holidays.

3

Importance: الأهمية:

- They bring people together.
- They make us happy.
- They teach us about our culture.
- They help us remember special times.

4

How I feel about traditions: كيف أشعر عن التقاليد:

I love traditions because they make me feel warm and safe.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"The importance of traditions"

Traditions are special habits that people do again and again. In Egypt, we celebrate Eid Al-Fitr with family. We wear new clothes, eat delicious kahk, and visit our relatives. Traditions are important because they bring people together and make us happy. They also teach us about our culture and history. When we follow traditions, we feel connected to our family and our country. I love traditions because they give me joy and make me feel safe. Even small traditions, like sharing a meal or saying special greetings, help us remember what matters most. That's why we should keep our traditions alive for future generations.

Lessons (5 & 6)

d) -re

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The man (who) son plays football is our neighbor.
2. The driver (whose) took us to the airport was very friendly.
3. The book (where) is on the table belongs to my sister.

5 Complete the following dialog:

Mariam and Lina are talking about the spring festival in Thailand.

Lina : Mariam, have you ever watched the spring festival in Thailand on TV?

Mariam : (1)..... . The streets were full of decorations and music.

Lina : (2)..... ?

Mariam : People wore colorful clothes and carried flowers.

Lina : That's wonderful. I think traditions like this are important because (3)..... .

Mariam : Right. They also bring happiness to children and tourists.

Lina : (4)..... ?

Mariam : Yes, I would love to go there one day.

Lina : That's great. (5)..... .

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Traditions in two different countries"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I don't know the time (when) Ahmed returns home.
2. The house (who) we lived in has been sold.
3. The boy (whose) drew that picture is very talented.
4. The girl (who) brother is very friendly lives next to my house.

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★



50 : 64% Practice more



85 : 100% Well-done!

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
area	منطقة	ignorance	إهمال
statue	تمثال	remove	يزيل
plenty	وفرة	expected	متوقع

2 Comprehension strategies:

من الأسئلة الأساسية في القطعة هو إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية (أي ما يدور حوله النص)، ويكون السؤال كالتالي:

- What's the main idea of the passage? - What does the passage talk about?
- What is the passage about?

How to find the main idea of the text:

كيفية إيجاد الفكرة الرئيسية للنص:

Steps:

الخطوات:

1. Read the first and last sentences carefully.
2. Notice repeated words or ideas.
3. Focus on the general message, not the examples.

اقرأ أول وآخر جملة بعناية.

لاحظ الكلمات أو الأفكار المتكررة.

ركز على المعنى العام وليس الأمثلة.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Some people enjoy swimming in the sea, while others love jogging in the morning. A few prefer to go cycling with friends. Whatever the activity, doing exercise helps the body stay strong and the mind stay fresh.

The main idea of this paragraph is that

- a) people have different hobbies
- b) exercise keeps people healthy
- c) jogging is better than swimming
- d) sports are difficult to do

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- This custom shows hope for luck and happiness.

☐

- يظهر هذا العرف الخوف من الحظ والسعادة.

☐

- يظهر هذا العرف الأمل في الحظ والسعادة.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- ☐ Traditions are an important part of every culture.

- تشكل التقاليد جزءاً مهماً من كل ثقافة.

- ☐ Traditions are an important piece in any culture.

Vocabulary

celebration	احتفال
ceremony	مراسم احتفال
culture	ثقافة
custom	عادة
decoration	زينة / خرفة / ديكور
expert	خبير
generation	جيل
grave	قبر / مقبرة
harmony	انسجام / تناغم
honor (ed)	يكرم / يقدر / يشرف
hospitality	كرم الضيفة
identity	هوية
Lunar New Year	رأس السنة القمرية
participant	مشارك / مشترك
patience	صبر
purpose	غرض
reflect (ed)	يمكس
shared	مشترك / متبادل
tradition	تقاليد
transformation	تحول / انتقال
unity	وحدة / ترابط

Language

Defining Relative Clauses

جعل الموصول المضافة

Who:

e.g. - I saw the **boy** who you told me about.

- The **chef** who cooked our dinner is famous.

Which:

e.g. - The **book** which I read was very exciting.

- The **car** which is parked outside is new.

That:

e.g. The **bike** that I got for my birthday is blue.

Whose:

e.g. The **girl** whose bag is pink is my sister.

Where:

e.g. This is the **park** where we play football.

When:

e.g. - I remember the **day** when I got my new bike.

- Summer is the **season** which has many hot days.

Skills

A. Speaking

Asking about cultures and traditions

- What tradition is important in your family or country?
- Eid Al-Fitr is an important tradition in Egypt.
- What do people usually do during this tradition?
- People wear new clothes, visit their relatives, and eat kahk.
- Why should this tradition be remembered or preserved?
- Because it brings joy and keeps families close.

B. Writing

Famous Traditions in Egypt

Egypt is a country with many beautiful traditions. One of the most famous traditions is celebrating Ramadan. Families fast **يُفصم** during the day and eat together after sunset. Streets are decorated with colorful lights. Another popular tradition is Eid Al-Fitr, when people wear new clothes, visit relatives, and give sweets to children. Egyptians also celebrate Sham El-Nessim, a spring festival where families go out for picnics and eat salted fish and eggs. During weddings, people dance, sing, and play drums. These traditions show their joy, love, and unity.



Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. What do customs often teach people?
 - a) Technology and science
 - b) Respect, friendship, and sharing
 - c) Rules of modern sports
 - d) How to speak foreign languages
2. In China, what is given to children during the Lunar New Year?
 - a) Toys and food
 - b) Red envelopes with money
 - c) Special clothes
 - d) Food and drinks
3. What value is shown when Egyptians welcome guests with food and drinks?
 - a) Generosity and respect
 - b) Celebration and fun
 - c) Patience and harmony
 - d) Energy and power
4. Which Japanese tradition reflects respect, patience, and harmony?
 - a) The Carnival
 - b) The Tea Ceremony
 - c) The Day of the Dead
 - d) Family visits
5. In Sapporo Festival, the participants built sculptures made of
 - a) gold
 - b) wax
 - c) snow
 - d) wood



Writing

2 Write an article of about (100–110) words about a custom in your family or community. Use these hints:

1. When does it happen?

.....

2. What do people do?

.....

3. Who takes part?

.....

4. What values does it show?

.....



Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- is a custom or belief passed down ينتقل through generations.
a) Festival b) Tradition c) Society d) Food
- The main hall of the building was grand. The word "....." gives the same meaning of "grand".
a) small b) huge c) worse d) refuse
- The museum displayed ancient from the Roman age.
a) libraries b) languages c) artifacts d) mobiles
- Daily exercise can both your body and your mind over time.
a) strengthen b) weaken c) reflect d) exist

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

celebrations – with – for – connect – purpose

Festivals are important cultural events that happen all over the world. We mark نميز these occasions (1) special food, music, and gatherings. Every tradition has a clear (2), which is often teaches history or strengthens social ties. These customs help to (3) generations, ensuring that old stories and wisdom are passed down. The bright lights and joyful atmosphere make these (4) memorable times for everyone.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Every year, a cultural carnival is held in the city to celebrate local customs. The carnival, which gathers families and tourists alike, starts with music and ends with fireworks that light up the sky. Participants perform traditional dances that reflect harmony and creativity. Children, who are joyful, wave flags and exchange smiles with each other. The elderly, who have preserved these traditions for years, explain the importance of patience and **respect** for culture. Seasonal foods and feasts are prepared by families for everyone to enjoy. Tourists from abroad visit to see the massive sculptures and performances that tell a story about the region. The carnival brings joy and excitement to the community and reflects the identity of the society beautifully.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the passage is about a
 - community
 - cultural carnival
 - performance
 - feast
- The explain the importance of patience and respect for culture.
 - children
 - elderly
 - tourists
 - performers
- The underlined word "respect" can mean
 - hate
 - create
 - admire
 - ignore

B) Answer the following questions:

- #### 4. What activities do children participate in during the carnival?

© 2016 Pearson Education, Inc. or its affiliate(s). All rights reserved.

- ### 5. Why do tourists come to the cultural carnival?

[illegible]

- 6. What do you think families will prepare for next year's carnival?**

[illegible]

B The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Captain Nemo's ship, the Nautilus, was powered by
a) wind b) coal c) electricity d) steam
2. Ned Land was unhappy on the Nautilus because he
a) didn't like Captain Nemo
b) wanted to return to land and be free
c) was afraid of the ocean
d) didn't trust his friends
3. The sea was the only homeland to
a) Professor Aronnax b) Captain Nemo
c) Conseil d) Ned Land
4. Nemo showed to the three men.
a) animals b) treasures c) libraries d) books

B) Answer the following questions:

- ### 5. What was the Nautilus built for?

[illegible]

- 6. Why do you think the sea was the only homeland for Captain Nemo?**

[illegible]

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. A festival is a special event. People celebrate it every year. (which)
2. The teacher explained the tradition. Students asked about it. (which)
3. This is the guest. We interviewed him on TV. (who)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The child lost his toy was crying loudly.
2. The bag he bought is made of real leather.
3. The classroom we study English has colorful posters.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ali is asking Sara about traditions.

Ali : Do you think traditions are important, Sara?

Sara : (1) They help us remember our past.

Ali : What kind of traditions does your family have?

Sara : (2)

Ali : (3)?

Sara : We visit our relatives and share delicious food.

Ali : Do you like those traditions?

Sara : Yes, I do. They make me (4)

Ali : (5)?

Sara : People keep traditions because they bring families together.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A famous tradition you admire"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit

9

COURAGE AND SURVIVAL



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

Identify the moral lesson in a short legendary or heroic text.

Listening

Identify the challenge heroes faced in a short podcast about legends and heroes.

Speaking

Discuss a plan for a treasure hunt in group discussion.

Retell a folktale in a short role-play using specific vocabulary and clear articulation.

Language

Accurately identify the correct verb form (gerund or infinitive) in a variety of contexts.

Use the correct verb form (gerund or infinitive) in a variety of contexts.

Writing

Write a short paragraph outlining an exploration plan, connecting short-term goals to a long-term aspiration.



VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

artifact (n)	قطعة أثرية/فنية	pirate (n)	قرصان
clue (n)	مفتاح حل اللغز	riddles (n)	فوازير/الغاز
explorers (n)	مستكشفون/رحالة	treasure hunt (n)	لعبة البحث عن الكنز
hidden (adj)	مخبأ/مخفي	valuable (adj)	قيم/ثمين

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

challenge (n)	تحدي	include (d) (v)	يضمن/يتضمن
creatively (adv)	بإبداع/بطريقة مبدعة	lost (adj)	مفقود
discover (ed) (v)	يكتشف	problem-solving (n)	حل المشكلات
educational (adj)	تعليمي	quick thinking (n)	سرعة البديهة/التفكير
encourage (d) (v)	يشجع	series (n)	سلسلة/مسلسل
enjoyable (adj)	ممتع	survival (n)	نجاة/بقاء
hint (n)	تلميح/دليل صغير	sunken (adj)	مغمور/غارق
historical (adj)	تاريخي	teamwork (n)	عمل جماعي

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات والعبارات ودروس النحو

build skills	يبني المهارات	on paper	على ورق
hidden in	مخبأ في	out of sight	بعيد عن الأنظار
on an island	على جزيرة	search for	يبحث عن

Read and complete with a word from the list:

on – at – explorers – encourages – riddles

- 1 Our teacher always us to speak English in class.
- 2 Many trees only grow this island.
- 3 Kids enjoy solving at school.
- 4 Some travel by ship, plane, or on foot.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

courage (n)	شجاعة	shelter (n)	ماوى/مسكن
jungle (n)	غابة/ادغال	sour/acidic (adj)	لاذع/حامض
magical (adj)	سحري	survive (d) (v)	ينجو/يبقى حيا
panic (ked) (v/n)	يصاب بالذعر/ذعر	torch (n)	كشاف/مصباح يدوى

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

backpack (n)	حقيبة ظهر	hero (n)	بطل
blanket (n)	بطانية	invent (ed) (v)	يخترع
block (ed) (v)	يحجز/يعوق	ordinary (adj)	عادى
branch (n)	غصن/فرع	path (n)	مسار
compass (n)	بوصلة	rainwater (n)	ماء المطر
direction (n)	اتجاه	rope (n)	حبل
face (d) (v)	يواجه	sudden (adj)	مفاجئ
fear (n)	خوف	tool (n)	أداة/وسيلة
filter straw (n)	أنبوب لتنقية المياه	trip (n)	رحلة قصيرة
fire (n)	نار	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
folktale (n)	حكاية شعبية	villagers (n)	قرويون/سكان القرية

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

afraid of	خائف من	make choices	يتخذ قرارات
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	make my heart race	يجعل قلبى ينبض/يتسارع
get lost	يفضل الطريق	solve the question	يحل السؤال
in circles	فى حلقة مفرغة	seem to	يبدو أن

Read and complete with a word from the list:

panic – torch – shelter – make

- 1 The explorer used a to see through the dark cave.
- 2 Hamza felt because he lost his phone.
- 3 We found from the storm inside the small cabin.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
mean يعنى/يقصد	meant	meant
fight يقاتل	fought	fought
hide يخفى	hid	hidden
lose يخسر	lost	lost

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms تراكيب مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
brave	شجاع	courageous	شجاع	afraid	خائف
easy	سهل	simple	بسيط	difficult	صعب
exciting	مثير/مشوق	interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
lost	مفقود	missing	مفقود	found	وجد
real	حقيقى	true	حقيقى	unreal	غير حقيقى
valuable	قيم/ثمين	precious	نفيس/ثمين	valueless	عديم القيمة

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
courage (n)	شجاعة	en-	تحول إلى فعل	encourage (d) (v)	يشجع
creative (adj)	مبدع	-ly	تحول إلى ظرف	creatively (adv)	بإبداع/بطريقة مبدعة
enjoy (v)	يستمتع	-able	تحول إلى صفة	enjoyable (adj)	ممتع
value (n)	قيمة			valuable (adj)	قيم

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- This old book is very valuable. The antonym of "valuable" is ".....".
a) unlucky b) brave c) true d) valueless
- Good leaders find creative ways to solve problems. We add the suffix "....." to change "creative" into an adverb.
a) -ive b) -al c) -able d) -ly
- Mazen the present from his friend because he wanted to surprise him.
a) hid b) fought c) meant d) lost

Reading Text

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Have you ever joined a game or an activity where you had to follow clues to find something?
 - 2 Why do you think people enjoy treasure hunts?
-  Read the following text, then try to guess the meaning of the words in bold.

SB page 39

Treasure hunts⁽¹⁾ have been popular for centuries, not only in stories, but also in real life. A treasure hunt is a game in which players follow a series⁽²⁾ of clues to find hidden objects or a final “treasure.” The clues may be written on paper, hidden in places, or even given as riddles.

In schools, treasure hunts are often used to make learning fun. Teachers may hide small cards around the classroom, each with a question to answer. When students solve the question, they get the next clue. This activity encourages⁽³⁾ teamwork, problem-solving⁽⁴⁾, and quick thinking.

In history, real treasure hunts were often connected to explorers and pirates⁽⁵⁾. Many legends⁽⁶⁾ tell about pirates hiding gold on islands and brave sailors searching for it. Even today, some people search for lost treasures, such as old coins, sunken ships⁽⁷⁾, or valuable artifacts.

A treasure hunt is more than just a game—it builds skills. Students learn to read carefully, think creatively, and work together. Whether in a classroom, a garden, or a whole city, the excitement of finding the “hidden prize” makes treasure hunts enjoyable⁽⁸⁾ for all ages.



(1) لعبة البحث عن الكنز

(2) سلسلة/مجموعة

(3) يشجع

(4) حل المشكلات

(5) قراصنة

(6) أساطير

(7) السفن الغارقة

(8) ممتع

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What makes a treasure hunt exciting for students?
- 2 How can treasure hunts help you learn teamwork?
- 3 Do you prefer real treasure hunts or classroom ones? Why?

Listening Text

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 What dangers do you think an explorer might face in the jungle?
- 2 If you got lost on an island, what three items would you like to have with you?

Listen to the podcast. What is the text mainly about?

SB page 41

My name is Nader, and this is the story of how I **survived** in the jungle.

I had planned a trip, but unfortunately, I got lost in the jungle. The air was hot, and the trees seemed to **block** every path. Suddenly, I heard a strange sound that made my heart race. I tried to stay calm, reminding myself that **panic** means losing energy.

The rain kept falling heavily, but I forced myself to keep walking. I used an empty bottle to collect water. I remembered packing a **filter straw** in my backpack. For food, I chose **sour** fruits, even though they weren't easy to eat. At night, I built a **shelter** from leaves and branches. Hearing animals near my shelter made me nervous, but holding my **torch** helped me to feel safe.

During the day, I followed the sun to avoid walking in circles. I was tired, but I refused to stop moving. After three days, I reached a river. Following it meant finding a way out.

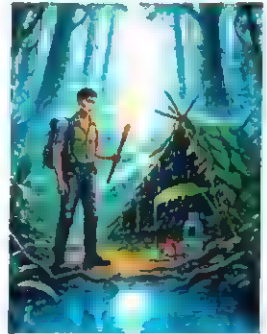
Finally, I discovered a small village. People welcomed me and listened to my story.

"The jungle taught me this," I say now. "**Survival** isn't about being physically strong – it's about thinking clearly, making smart choices, and **never giving up**."

Post-listening questions:

SB

- 1 What survival skills helped Nader stay alive in the jungle?
- 2 How did he use simple tools and nature to survive?
- 3 How was the weather in the jungle at the beginning of the trip?



1) بقى/الجى

2) تحجب

3) الهلم/الدعر

4) أنبوب لتنقية المياه

5) حاض/لاذع

6) مأوى/ملجأ

7) مصباح/كشاف

8) البقاء على قيد الحياة

9) الاستسلام

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات

artifact	قطعة أثرية/فنية	a piece of historical object from the past	تلميح/إشارة (1)
clue	دليل/تلميح	a hint ⁽¹⁾ that helps you solve something	خارج نطاق الرؤية (2)
explorer	مستكشف/رحالة	a person who travels to discover new places	خوف (3)
hidden	مخفي/مخفى	being out of sight ⁽²⁾ or not easily seen	مذلف حمض (4)
panicked	مذعور/مزعوب	showed sudden fear ⁽³⁾	
riddle	فزورة/لغز	a question or puzzle with a hidden answer	
shelter	ماوى/مسكن	a safe place to stay and protect yourself	
sour	لاذع/حامض	having an acidic taste ⁽⁴⁾ , like lemon	
survival	نجاة/بقاء	living through a dangerous or difficult situation	
torch	كشاف/مصباح يدوي	a small electric lamp that you can hold in your hand	

1 voice / sound صوت غير آدمي (شيء - حيوان - طائر) / صوت إنسان

My sister shouted at me. I heard her loud **voice**.

The bell makes a ringing **sound**.

2 fall (v) يسقط / fall (n) فصل الخريف

Be careful or you will **fall** on the stairs.

The weather becomes cool and windy in **fall**.

3 reach

يصل إلى (لا يستخدم أى حرف جر)

They **reached** the airport at ten o'clock.

arrive at

يصل إلى مكان صغير (داخل مدينة)

They **arrived at** the airport at ten o'clock.

arrive in

يصل إلى مكان كبير (مدينة/دولة)

Salma **arrived in** Cairo at 3 p.m.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A is a safe place to stay and protect yourself.

a) clue

b) shelter

c) fall

d) riddle

2 My father arrived the office on time.

a) on

b) in

c) at

d) of

3 Birds make sweet in the morning.

a) voices

b) sounds

c) fears

d) noises

LESSON



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A/An means a question or puzzle with a hidden answer
 a) shelter b) artifact c) torch d) riddle
2. We discovered a/an message written behind the old painting.
 a) educational b) creative c) hidden d) clear
3. You should value good friends. We form the adjective of "value" by adding the suffix ".....".
 a) -less b) -able c) -ness d) -er
4. The treasure hunt included many like torches, ropes, and blankets.
 a) items b) artifacts c) leaves d) branches
5. Keep your cell phone of sight when studying for exams.
 a) on b) in c) out d) at
6. My parents encourage me to read more books. The prefix "en-" added to "courage" makes it a/an
 a) noun b) adjective c) verb d) adverb
7. Climbing a high mountain requires a brave person. The word "....." is a synonym to "brave".
 a) courageous b) sleepy c) shy d) weak
8. The brave traveled through the jungle to find new lands.
 a) player b) pilot c) teacher d) explorer
9. This book is very because it is more than 500 years old; it has very useful information.
 a) lost b) valuable c) hidden d) creative
10. It was a real to answer all the questions correctly.
 a) activity b) challenge c) series d) clue

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

puzzles – enjoyable – valuable – brave – riddles

Last weekend, we joined a treasure hunt. The game included many hidden artifacts that were very (1) Players had to follow clues carefully to find each object. I enjoyed solving (2) and discovering historical items. The organizers wanted us to learn teamwork. While playing, some (3) were difficult, but we worked together. The activity encouraged quick-thinking and problem-solving skills. Everyone wanted to win the prize, but having fun was more important. Playing this treasure hunt was truly an (4) activity.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The lemon tasted very when I first tried it.
a) sweet b) sour c) dark d) sudden
2. The hero's survival in the desert showed his strength and
a) worry b) fear c) courage d) wealth
3. The explorer used a to see inside the dark cave.
a) branch b) blanket c) map d) torch
4. "....." means living through a dangerous or difficult situation.
a) Panicked b) Shelter c) Survival d) Riddle
5. The homework was so simple that I finished it in ten minutes. "....." gives the opposite meaning of "simple".
a) Easy b) Difficult c) Slow d) Noisy
6. The compass helped the explorers find the correct to travel.
a) rope b) map c) direction d) branch
7. The children listened to a about a magical hero.
a) puzzle b) museum c) folktale d) noise
8. The water tastes fresh after using the
a) rope b) compass c) shelter d) filter straw
9. Explorers can easily lost in the jungle if they forget their map.
a) protect b) make c) carry d) get
10. The explorers walked circles trying to find the hidden treasure.
a) in b) at c) for d) on

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

torch – compass – facing – making – thinking

A group exploring the jungle got lost while searching for a hidden treasure. They panicked when a sudden fire started nearby. They decided to follow the (1)..... and map carefully to find their way back. The hero used his quick (2)..... and protected his team from dangerous animals. They built a tent and collected acidic fruit to eat. They used a (3)..... to see in the dark. They learned that (4)..... choices wisely could save their lives.

Verbs followed by "to + inf." / "v + ing"

When we use one verb after another verb, the second verb is usually in the gerund form "v + ing" or the "to + inf."

عندما نستخدم فعلاً بعد فعل آخر، يكون الفعل الثاني عادةً في صيغة "to + inf." أو صيغة "v + ing".

e.g. • They **plan** to travel next week. • He **enjoys** visiting ancient places.



Verbs followed by "to + inf." / "v + ing"

want	يريد	hope	يأمل	force	يجبر	use	يستخدم
promise	وعد / يعطى وعداً	refuse	يرفض	agree	يوافق	learn	يتعلم
need	يحتاج	decide	يقرر	allow	يعنى	allow	يود أن

e.g. • Ahmed **wants** to eat pizza for dinner. • Ali **needs** to help me with homework.
• We **need** to study for the test tomorrow. • They **hope** to visit the Pyramids next week.
• The boy **decides** to share his toys. • We **allow** to go to the park.



to + inf. (تعبير عن الغرض) لكي

e.g. • Mona went to England to improve her English. • I went to the market to buy fruits.

help + (to + inf.)/(inf.) يساعد

e.g. • My brother **helped** to wash the car. • Can you **help** find my lost pencil?

used to + inf. (للتعبير عن عادة في الماضي) اعتاد أن

e.g. • Nada **used** to ride a bike in the past.



Got it?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Mayar hopes good grades.

- الاجابة الصحيحة hope لأن الفعل hope يأتي بعده (الفعل في المصدر + to).

2 I need (to buy) a new computer.

- الاجابة الصحيحة (to buy) لأن الفعل need يأتي بعده (الفعل في المصدر + to).

2

Verbs followed by "v + ing"

Verb		Examples
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	My sister enjoys reading adventure stories.
finish	ينتهي	I finished doing my homework.
keep	يستمر في	The baby keeps crying when he's tired.
avoid	يتجنب	We should avoid eating too much sugar.

v + ing + حرف جر

e.g. • We talked about going to the zoo. • They left without saying goodbye.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Reem enjoys (to swim) on weekends.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (swimming) لأن الفعل enjoys يتبعه v + ing.

2 You need to avoid (watch) too much TV. (.....)

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (watching) لأن الفعل avoid يتبعه v + ing.

3 Verbs followed by "to + inf." or "v + ing" without difference in meaning:

أفعال يتبعها "to + inf." or "v + ing" بدون تغيير في المعنى

Verb	Examples
like/love	يحب Sara loves drawing/to draw animals.
hate	يكره Ahmed hates waking/to wake up early.

4 Verbs followed by "to + inf." or "v + ing" with different meanings:

أفعال يتبعها "to + inf." or "v + ing" مع تغيير في المعنى:

Verb	Meaning	Examples
stop	(v + ing) يتوقف عن/يمتنع عن فعل شيء ما (لا يفعله)	You should stop making noise.
يتوقف	(to + inf.) يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئاً (سيفعله)	Sara stopped to talk to her friend.
remember	(v + ing) يتذكر أنه فعل شيئاً من قبل (تم الفعل)	I remember meeting you last year.
يتذكر	(to + inf.) يتذكر أن يقوم بفعل معين (سيفعله)	Remember to lock the door.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 I like (play) football.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (to play/playing) لأن الفعل like يتبعه v + ing أو to + inf.

2 Remember (taking) the umbrella, it might rain.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي (to take) لأن الفعل remember يتبعه الفعل في المصدر بمعنى يتذكر أن يقوم بشيء معين (سيفعله).

Practice

LANGUAGE

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Please, keep until you reach the end of the exercise.
a) try b) trying c) to try d) to trying
2. She promised her homework before dinner yesterday.
a) to finish b) finish c) to finishing d) finishing
3. Do you enjoy stories every night?
a) read b) to read c) reads d) reading
4. My little brother wants a doctor when he grows up.
a) become b) to become c) becoming d) will become

 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

1. Nader used an empty bottle water. 
2. He agreed to the party. 
3. Mom stopped coffee because it made her feel sick. 
4. I love chocolate ice cream on a hot summer day.
5. I've finished (do) that task alone.
6. Please, remember me when you reach the company.

 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. I'm interested in music. (listening to)
.....
2. Ahmed hopes he'll buy a new cell phone. 
.....
3. Rami thinks it's a good idea to spend the weekend together. 
.....
4. You must practice English more and more to improve your level. 
.....
5. You mustn't mix with bad friends. 
.....

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The teacher forced the students their phones away quietly.
a) to put b) putting c) put d) puts
2. They finally decided on a relaxing trip to the beach.
a) gone b) going c) to go d) go
3. Have you finished your math homework?
a) solve b) to solve c) solved d) solving
4. My sister enjoys photos of birds in the local park.
a) taking b) to take c) take d) takes

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you need (ask) your teacher for help with this problem?
2. The rain kept (fall) all night without stopping once.
3. We always avoid (cross) the street without looking both ways.
4. I hope (see) the new planetarium show with my class.
5. Basim stopped (get) a drink of water because he was thirsty.
6. I'm interested in (collect) stamps.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Karim really likes to play football with his cousins. (enjoys)
.....
2. Make sure to bring your library book back today. (Remember)
.....
3. Laila did not go to the noisy party. (refused)
.....
4. I'm still reading the book. (finished)
.....
5. Nader said he'd help me. (promised)
.....

حل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.



TEST YOURSELF

Lesson 103

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- This is one of the oldest objects found in Egypt.
a) change b) artifact c) challenge d) mistake
- The teacher asked us to write a creative story. The word "creative" is a/an ".....".
a) adjective b) noun c) verb d) adverb
- Nada found a/an key that opened a hidden door.
a) unlucky b) ordinary c) hard d) magical
- The villagers were during the storm and ran to the shelter.
a) panicked b) calm c) magical d) unlucky

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

made – solving – encouraged – hints – historical

A treasure hunt can be a very enjoyable activity for children. Last year, our teacher (1) us to take part in one at the school playground. The game included (2) puzzles and riddles as fun challenges. We loved discovering new clues that showed us where something was hidden. The game needed quick thinking and teamwork. I decided to think about the carefully. Some riddles were about sunken treasures, while others asked about (4) artifacts.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- I thanked Ahmed. He helped me. (for)
.....
- I'm sure I met that man before. (remember)
.....
- You shouldn't eat too much sweets. (stop)
.....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I love to (watching) comedy movies on weekends.
- To stay healthy, you should avoid (eat) too much candy.
- The teacher promised (organizing) a fun science fair next month.

5 Complete the following dialog:

Manal and Walaa are talking about a treasure hunt game.

Manal : What are we searching for?

Walaa : (1).....

Manal : (2).....?

Walaa : We should start near the big old tree.

Manal : (3).....?

Walaa : This clue says, "Look for something that is red rectangular مستطيل."

Manal : Is it the red box?

Walaa : (4)..... . Look inside it.

Manal : (5).....

Walaa : I think this map will help us.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"An adventure in the jungle"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. She turned off the oven before she left. (remembered)

.....

2. I enjoy eating fresh fruit after lunch. (I'd like)

.....

3. The boy never eats fast food. (avoids)

.....

4. Youssef did not like sharing his notes with the class. (Youssef refused)

.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!



المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

defeat (ed) (v)	يَهْزِمُ	rival (n)	خَصْم / منافس
defend (ed) (v)	يدافع عن	strategies (n)	إستراتيجيات
enemy (n)	عدو	tribe (n)	قبيلة / عشيرة
loyalty (n)	ولاء / إخلاص / وفاء	wisdom (n)	حكمة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

act (ed) (v)	يتصرف	leader (n)	قائد / زعيم
action (n)	تصرف / فعل	leadership (n)	قيادة
army (n)	جيش	performance (n)	أداء / عرض / تمثيل
beauty (n)	جمال	poem (n)	قصيدة
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	storyteller (n)	راوي قصة
faithful (adj)	وفى / مخلص / أمين	supportive (adj)	داعم / مؤيد / مؤيد
fighter (n)	مقاتل	traveler (n)	مسافر
folk (adj)	تراث شعبي	unite (d) (v)	يُوحد / يتحد
hardship (n)	صعوبة / مشقة	wealth (n)	ثراء / غنى
inspire (d) (v)	يلهم		

Language Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات و介词

against	ضد	known as	مُعرف كـ
compete with	يتنافس مع	known for	مُعرف بـ
remind ... of/about	يذكر بـ	take place	يحدث
give hope	يعطي / يبعث الأمل	tell a story	يروى / يحكى قصة

Read and complete with a word from the list:

enemies – for – trip – supportive – tribe

- Hagar helps all her friends when they need her, she is very
- Dr. Magdy Yacoub is known his remarkable work in heart surgery.
- Each has its own special traditions and language.
- He faced his without fear.

Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Do you know any real legends or folk heroes from your country?
- 2 Why do people continue telling stories about heroes after hundreds of years?

 Read the following text. How important are "Folk legends"? Why? **SB page 44**

The Legend of Abu Zayd al-Hilali

Abu Zayd al-Hilali is one of the most famous Arab folk heroes. His story has been told in poems, songs, and performances for centuries. Born into the Hilali tribe, Abu Zayd was known for his strength, wisdom, and bravery.

When his tribe faced enemies, Abu Zayd led them with bravery. He fought to defend his people and used clever strategies to defeat stronger armies. His adventures included long journeys across deserts, battles against rival tribes, and wise leadership during times of hardship.

What makes Abu Zayd's legend special is not only his strength, but also his ability to unite people. He encouraged loyalty, protected the weak, and inspired others to act bravely.

Even today, storytellers known as "al-Hakawati" continue telling his adventures in cafes and cultural festivals. The folktale of Abu Zayd teaches us that a hero is not only a fighter but also a leader who gives hope.

Folk legends like this remind us of values such as courage, loyalty, and wisdom. They show how one person's actions can inspire generations.

Post-reading questions:

- 1 Why is Abu Zayd al-Hilali remembered as a hero?

- 2 How did he protect and lead his people?

- 3 What values does his story teach us?



(1) أسطورة

أبطال

(3) شجاعة

شيلة

معارك

مصاعب/مخاطر

(7) إخلاص

SB

Notes on Reading

Definitions	التعريفات		
tribe	قبيلة/ عشيرة	a group of families living together with shared traditions	(1) مخلص
rival	خصم/ منافس	a person or group that competes with another	(2) معركة
loyal	وفى/ مخلص	being faithful ⁽¹⁾ and supportive to others	(3) ذكاء
strategy	إستراتيجية	clever plan to win a battle ⁽²⁾	(4) حكم/ قرار
wisdom	حكمة	great intelligence ⁽³⁾ and good judgment ⁽⁴⁾	

1 was/were + born into

ولد فى (اسم/ نوع العائلة) ...

Abu Zayd al-Hilali was **born into** the Hilali tribe.

2 the + adj.

الاسم الجمع لهذه الصفة

Abu Zayd al-Hilali wanted to protect **the weak** الضعفاء.

3 although + جملة / despite + اسم / v + ing

بالرغم من (للتناقض)

Although he was excited at first, he missed freedom.

Despite their differences, the companions agreed on one thing.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 it was raining, the football match continued.

a) Despite

b) Although

c) Because

d) So

2 When someone is, he is faithful and supportive to others.

a) weak

b) strong

c) brave

d) loyal

3 My grandmother was born a large family in a small village.

a) to

b) at

c) on

d) into

4 The community helps by providing food and shelter.

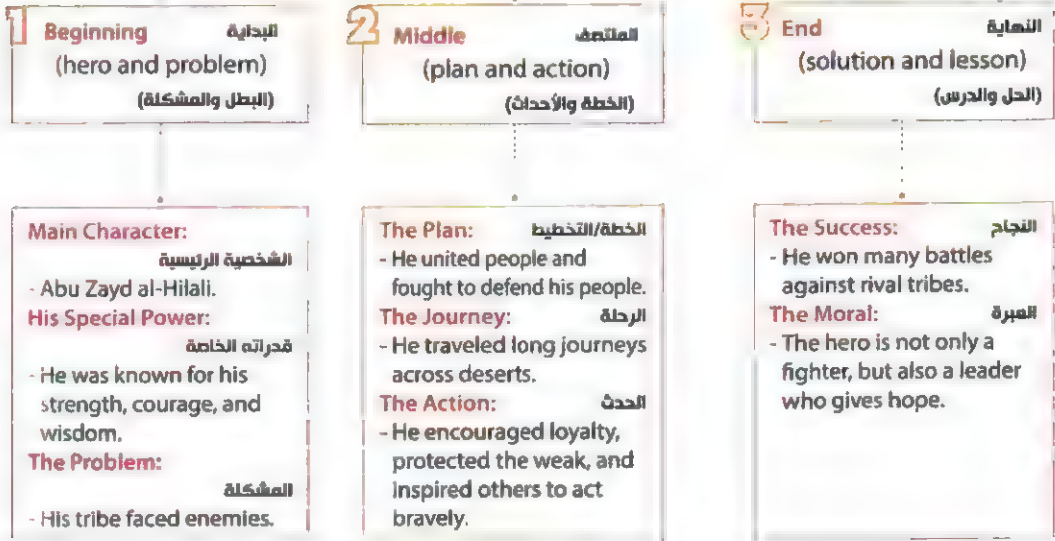
a) weak

b) weaker

c) the weak

d) weakest

How to write about your own folktale



اقرأ هذا النموذج العجيب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

“Abu Zayd al-Hilali”

One of the most famous Arab folk heroes is Abu Zayd al-Hilali. He was known for his strength, courage, and wisdom. His tribe faced many enemies. Abu Zayd al-Hilali decided to unite his people and he fought to defend his tribe. He traveled a long journey across the desert. He encouraged loyalty, protected the weak, and inspired others to act bravely. He won many battles against rival tribes. Abu Zayd al-Hilali's adventures and stories are told until this day in songs and poems. He teaches us that a hero is not only a fighter, but also a leader who gives hope to his people.

LESSON

3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Soldiers their country bravely when the enemy attacks.
 a) act b) defeat c) work d) defend
2. A is the person or group that competes with another.
 a) worker b) tribe c) rival d) strategy
3. Some live in forests, deserts, or mountains far from big cities.
 a) leaders b) tribes c) kings d) players
4. The soldiers planned a strong attack to defeat the enemy. The verb "defeat" is the antonym of ".....".
 a) lose b) beat c) worry d) show
5. Teaching young children requires a lot of patience. To get the antonym of "patience" we add the suffix ".....".
 a) ir b) il c) im d) un
6. Every in the festival included colorful displays معروضات.
 a) wisdom b) beauty c) importance d) performance
7. Soldiers showed by defending their country against the enemy.
 a) bravery b) army c) adventure d) behavior
8. This city is known its beautiful parks.
 a) at b) with c) in d) for
9. The championship is place in the stadium next month.
 a) making b) competing c) taking d) following
10. Leaders must have good when making decisions.
 a) movement b) judgment c) hardship d) army

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

leadership – fear – hardship – poems – defeated

Antarah, known for courage and strength, acted to protect his tribe. He (1) powerful enemies. Antarah was known for his intelligence and clever strategies. Storytellers continue reciting (2) about his adventures to inspire young people to act bravely. Antarah's loyalty and (3) made him a model hero. Folk legends about Antarah remind people of the importance of uniting the tribe during times of (4)

3

Chapter Three: Wonders of the Deep

Chapter (3) in points:

أرونكس، إرنست، وكونسيل



- 1 Aronnax looked through the Nautilus windows and saw colorful coral reefs, many kinds of fish, and old shipwrecks.

نظر أرونكس من خلال نوافذ النوتيليس ورأى شعاباً مرجانية ملونة، والعديد من أنواع الأسماك وحطام السفن القديمة.

- 2 Nemo took his guests on diving trips with special suits so they could walk on the sea floor.

أخذ نيمو ضيوفه في رحلات غطس ببدل مخصصة ليتمكنوا من المشي على قاع البحر.

- 3 One journey led them through an underwater forest where they hunted plants and samples.

قادتهم إحدى الرحلات لغابة تحت الماء حيث اصطادوا وجمعوا العينات.

- 4 Another journey took them to the remains of a sunken city where Nemo hinted at forgotten civilizations.

قادتهم رحلة أخرى لبقايا مدينة غارقة حيث علق نيمو عن الحضارات المنسية.

- 5 Aronnax carefully recorded everything he saw to learn more about sea life.

سجل أرونكس بدقة كل شيء رآه ليتعلم عن حياة البحر.

- 6 Conseil stayed helpful and supported Aronnax during their studies.

ظل كونسيل مساعداً وداعماً لأرونكس خلال دراسته.

- 7 Ned Land became impatient because he missed the freedom of being on land.

أصبح نيد لاند غير صبور لأنه اشتاق لحريته فوق الأرض.

- 8 The Nautilus kept traveling deeper into the ocean, and the men felt curious but also worried about Captain Nemo's secret past.

ظلت غواصة النوتيليس تسافر في عمق المحيط، وشعر الرجال بالفضول ولكن بالقلق أيضاً عن سر ماضي القبطان نيمو.

VOCABULARY

Lesson 4

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

brilliant (adj)	بارع/متألق/مشرق	sea bed (n)	قاع البحر
mastery (n)	إتقان/إجادة/تمكّن	shipwreck (n)	خطام سفينة
motive (n)	دافع/حافز	swallow (ed) (v)	يبتلع/يبلع
remains (n)	بقايا/آثار		

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

accuracy (n)	دقة	invite (d) (v)	يدعو
accurate (adj)	دقيق	observation (n)	مراقبة/رصد/ملاحظة
calmness (n)	هدوء	openly (adv)	بصراحة/علناً
confusion (n)	ارتباك/حيرة	relationship (n)	علاقة
coral reefs (n)	شعاب مرجانية	rest (ed) (v/n)	يستريح/راحة
curiosity (n)	فضول	safety (n)	أمان/سلامة
excite (d) (v)	يثير/يُحفّس	sample (n)	عينة
exploration (n)	استكشاف	shore (n)	شاطئ
familiar (adj)	مألوف/معتاد	suit (n)	بدلة
impatience (n)	نفاذ صبر	support (ed) (v)	يساعد/يدعم

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

grow impatient	يصبح غير صبور	on a diving voyage	في رحلة غوص
hint at	يلمح إلى/يشير إلى/يودح بـ	provide ... with	يؤد/يُعَد ... بـ
keep a secret	يحفظ/يكتُم/يخفي سراً	take an opportunity	يفتتح/يُنْتَهِز/يستغل فرصة
long for	يشْتَاق/يتوق إلى	walk over	يمشي فوق

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What animals or plants do you think live under the sea?
- 2 What dangers might explorers face under the water?

SB page 46

Chapter Three: Wonders of the Deep

The days that followed showed Aronnax the wonders of the underwater world. He looked through the big windows and saw glowing with color, fish of every shape, and resting silently on the ocean floor.

What did Aronnax see through the windows of the Nautilus?

Nemo invited his guests on diving voyages, providing them with special suits that allowed them to walk over the sea bed.

One such journey took them through an underwater forest of strange plants, where they hunted and collected samples. Another led them to the of a sunken city, where Nemo hinted at forgotten swallowed by the waves.

Where did one of the journeys take the travelers?

Professor Aronnax recorded everything carefully, making use of the chance to study marine life in ways no scientist had ever done before. Conseil supported him, naming each creature But Ned Land grew impatient. Although he was excited at first, he missed freedom. To him, the beauty of the sea could not replace the freedom of land.

Why did Ned Land grow impatient, even though the sea was beautiful?

Despite their differences, the agreed on one thing: Captain Nemo was both brilliant and mysterious. His mastery of science was clear, yet his silence about his past and filled them with curiosity and worry.

The Nautilus kept moving, deeper and deeper into the blue mystery of the ocean and far from any familiar shore.

What did all three men think about Captain Nemo?

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. What did Nemo invite his guests on?

ما الذي دعا نيمو ضيوفه إليه؟

- Nemo invited his guests on diving voyages, providing them with special suits.

2. What did the special diving suits allow the guests to do?

ما الذي سمحت به بدلات الغوص الخاصة للضيوف؟

- They allowed them to walk on the sea bed.

3. Where did they go on the diving trips?

أين ذهبوا في رحلات الغوص؟

- They went to an underwater forest and the remains of a sunken city.

4. Who recorded everything carefully during the journey?

من سجل كل شيء بعناية خلال الرحلة؟

- Professor Aronnax recorded everything carefully.

5. How did Conseil help Professor Aronnax?

كيف ساعد كونسيل البروفيسور أرونأكس؟

- He helped by naming each sea creature accurately.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think Ned Land grew impatient even though the ocean was beautiful?

لماذا تعتقد أن نيد لاند أصبح غير صبور رغم جمال المحيط؟

- Because he missed being free and breathing fresh air.

2. What does Captain Nemo's silence about his past tell us about his character?

ماذا يخبرنا صمت القبطان نيمو عن ماضيه عن شخصيته؟

- It shows he is secretive and may have a painful history.

3. Why might exploring a sunken city be exciting for a scientist like Aronnax?

لماذا قد يكون استكشاف مدينة غارقة مثيرة لعالم مثل أرونأكس؟

- Because it could have secrets about old civilizations.

4. Do you think it's fair for Nemo to keep his guests on the Nautilus against their will? Why or why not?

هل تعتقد أن من العدل أن يبقى نيمو ضيوفه على نوتيلوس ضد رغبتهم؟ ولماذا نعم أو لا؟

- No, because everyone deserves freedom.

5. How does the ocean in this chapter seem both beautiful and lonely?

كيف يبدو المحيط في هذا الفصل جميلاً ووحيداً في الوقت نفسه؟

- It's full of color and life, but it's also far from land.

Chapter 3 Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The companions saw glowing with color through the great observation windows.
a) fish b) coral reefs c) shipwrecks d) sharks
- Ned Land became impatient because he longed for
a) the blue mystery of the ocean b) freedom and fresh air
c) freedom beneath the ocean d) the treasures of the sea
- Conseil named each creature
a) excitedly b) accurately c) luckily d) safely
- Captain Nemo hinted at forgotten civilizations swallowed by the
a) clouds b) storms c) waves d) mountains
- The Nautilus moved forward into deeper mysteries, carrying them far from
a) land b) war c) safety d) their home

2 Answer the following questions:

- What was the purpose of Captain Nemo's actions during the voyage, and how did that affect the crew?
- What was the purpose of the diving voyages with Captain Nemo?
- Why did Professor Aronnax find the chance to study marine life so exciting, and how did he take this opportunity?

3 Read and write True (T) or False (F):

- Aronnax saw coral reefs, colorful fish, and old shipwrecks through the great windows. ()
- Nemo invited his guests on underwater walks using special suits. ()
- Ned Land enjoyed every moment under the sea and never wished to return to land. ()
- Professor Aronnax recorded marine life carefully, excited by the chance to study new things. ()
- Captain Nemo openly shared his past and motives with the companions. ()

4 Answer the following questions (Critical thinking questions):

- How do you think Conseil's calmness and accuracy helped during their underwater exploration, compared to Ned Land's impatience?
- What do you think Captain Nemo's silence about his past tells about his character and his relationship with the crew?
- How did the companions see Nemo's character?

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- recorded everything carefully.
 - Ned Land
 - Nemo
 - Conseil
 - Professor Aronnax
- One journey took the captives through an underwater of strange plant.
 - forest
 - garden
 - park
 - house
- The other journey led them to
 - the land
 - the remains of a sunken city
 - a palace underwater
 - an underwater museum
- missed his freedom and wanted to go back to land.
 - Conseil
 - Professor Aronnax
 - Nemo
 - Ned Land
- The companions one thing that Nemo was brilliant and mysterious.
 - respected
 - thought
 - agreed on
 - hated
- There were forgotten under the ocean.
 - continents
 - deserts
 - civilizations
 - forests
- was a master of science, but kept silent about his past.
 - Nemo
 - Professor Aronnax
 - Conseil
 - Ned Land

2 Answer the following questions:

- What did Professor Aronnax see through the big windows?
.....
- Where did they go on the first journey?
.....
- What happened to the sunken city?
.....
- How did Conseil help Professor Aronnax on the journey?
.....
- Why do you think Captain Nemo was silent about his past?
.....
- If you had the chance, would you be interested in studying marine life or plan an escape like Ned Land? Why?
.....
- In your opinion, was Ned Land right to want to escape from the ship? Why?
.....

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 9 (B & A)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The team trained hard all season to their rival in the final match.
a) act b) unite c) defeat d) earn
- The two countries made peace after years of being
a) storytellers b) armies c) tribes d) enemies
- Some live in forests or deserts.
a) enemies b) actions c) tribes d) poems
- The actors will perform a play at the school theater tonight. The suffix "-ance" in "performance" gives
a) an adjective b) a noun
c) the person who performs d) the action of performing

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Juha is a famous Arab folk hero known for his cleverness and intelligence. He taught lessons to his people through funny stories and wise advice. Juha solved problems in his village and helped his tribe unite during difficult times. Storytellers perform poems about Juha's adventures to inspire children to act wisely and bravely. His clever strategies often helped defeat rival tribes or protect people from danger. Children enjoy listening to Juha's stories because they are exciting and teach important lessons. Folk legends about Juha show that a hero does not always fight, but also uses intelligence, and wisdom to help others. His tales continue to inspire generations across Arab lands.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the passage is that Juha
a) is a folk hero b) loved animals c) liked to travel d) built houses
- Juha helped his tribe by
a) solving problems b) building towers
c) giving parties d) singing songs
- The underlined pronoun "his" refers to
a) the tribe b) storytellers c) Juha d) children

B) Answer the following questions:

- How did Juha teach lessons to his people?
- What do folk legends about Juha tell us about heroes who aren't very strong?
- Why do you think storytellers perform poems about Juha's adventures?

The Story

3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The guests wore that allowed them to walk over the sea bed.
a) special suits b) helmets c) breathing tanks d) big glasses
2. There were resting silently on the ocean floor.
a) coral reefs b) civilizations c) shipwrecks d) museums
3. grew impatient and wanted to escape after he was excited.
a) Conseil b) Ned Land c) Professor Aronnax d) Nemo
4. The companions were about Nemo's past and motives.
a) happy and excited b) curious and worried
c) sad and angry d) calm and motivated

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What did the suits allow the guests to do?
6. If you were stuck on محجز the Nautilus, would you be like Ned Land or Conseil? Why?

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I'm sure I met that man before. (I remember)
.....
2. Don't watch too much TV; it's bad for your eyes. (must stop)
.....
3. Hadi was sorry because he arrived late. (apologized for)
.....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The coach forced the team (train) harder.
2. I enjoy (play) tennis with my friends.
3. I allowed Tamer (use) my mobile.



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. My sister doesn't like to stay in noisy places. (prefer)
.....
2. I'm sorry; I forgot my workbook. (bring)
.....
3. It's my pleasure to watch show programs. (I enjoy)
.....
4. My brother is worried. He thinks he won't pass the exam. (about)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 30% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening		الكلمات على شكل كلمات
describe (d) (v)	يصف	presentation (n) عرض تقديمي
heavy rain (n)	أمطار غزيرة	rainforest (n) غابة مطيرة
historian (n)	مؤرخ	respect (ed) (v/n) يحترم/احترام
nature (n)	الطبيعة	wild (adj) بري/متوحش
podcast (n)	بودكاست/برنامج بث صوتي	sailing(n) الإبحار

Language Expressions and Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at the age of	في عمر/سن	build a shelter	يبني مأوى
become famous	يصبح مشهوراً	find my way	أحدد/أجد طريقى
bring back	يسترجم	stay safe	يبقى آمناً

Read and complete with a word from the list:

back – stay – build – rainforest

- 1 It is important to a shelter to stay safe from rain and wind.
- 2 Many plants and animals live in the
- 3 The old song made me happy. It brought good memories.

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
respect	يحترم	admire	يعجب بـ	disrespect	لا يحترم
wild	بري/متوحش	fierce	شرس	tame/farm	أليف/في المزارع

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We should respect our teachers and parents. The synonym of "respect" is ".....".
 a) bring b) describe c) disrespect d) admire
- 2 Lions and tigers are wild animals, but hens and rabbits are ones.
 a) fierce b) farm c) dangerous d) accurate

Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- Which place in the world would you like to explore? Why?

 Read the following presentation:

SB page 48

If I were an Explorer

Introduction : Hello everyone. If I were an explorer, I would travel to the Amazon rainforest.

Body : - I would like to discover new plants and animals that people have never seen before.
- I would face many dangers, such as wild animals, heavy rain, and getting lost.
- To survive, I would use a compass to find my way and build a shelter to stay safe at night.
- I would also try to talk to local people and learn about their traditions.

Conclusion : Being an explorer would teach me courage and patience. I would bring back stories to inspire others to respect nature and protect the rainforest.

Post-reading question:

SB

- What dangers would the explorer face during the journey?

Pre-reading question:

- Have you ever heard of a famous explorer before? Who was it?

Lesson 6

SB page 50

A short story

One of the greatest real explorers in history was Ibn Battuta, born in Morocco in the 14th century. At the age of 21, he decided to leave his home and travel. His first goal was to visit Mecca, but his journey continued for almost 30 years!

Ibn Battuta traveled across Africa, Asia, and even parts of Europe. He enjoyed meeting kings, learning about cultures, and recording what he saw. Sometimes, the trips were dangerous: crossing deserts, sailing through storms, and avoiding attacks. But he refused to stop traveling because he loved discovering new places.

In his book, *Rihla* (The journey), he described cities, traditions, and people from more than 40 countries. Historians today still use his writing to understand the past.

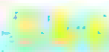
Ibn Battuta became famous because he showed that knowledge and curiosity can be as powerful as bravery. His story inspires students and travelers everywhere to keep exploring and to keep learning.

Post-reading question:

SB

- Why does Ibn Battuta's story inspire students and travelers today?

LESSONS



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I prepared a about endangered animals to show my classmates today.
a) rainforest b) presentation c) nature d) historian
- Farmers were worried about their crops after the rain.
a) huge b) safe c) wild d) heavy
- Their relationship was built on respect. "Respect" is the opposite of ".....".
a) appreciation b) admiration c) disrespect d) honor
- A good always checks facts before writing any historical research.
a) rival b) enemy c) historian d) player
- I listened to an interesting about science yesterday.
a) shelter b) book c) festival d) podcast
- He used wood and leaves to a shelter in the wild.
a) build b) stay c) respect d) sit
- Visiting the old school always helps bring happy childhood memories.
a) along b) back c) on d) off
- The explorers saw a large, wild animal. "Wild" has the same meaning as ".....".
a) tame b) fierce c) ancient d) modern
- Scientists study to understand animals and plants better.
a) history b) nature c) culture d) technology
- My sister started learning the piano the age of seven.
a) at b) in c) on d) for

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

find – stay – wild – exploring – historians

Welcome to Explorer's Podcast. At the age of twelve, I started to dream about
 (1) nature. My dream finally came true تحقق one day. On that day,
 there was heavy rain and we faced many (2) animals as we traveled
 through the rainforest. Our team had to (3) a way through thick trees
 and muddy paths. Learning how to build a shelter was essential to stay safe.
 When we were safe in our tent, we sat around a fire and listened to (4)
 describing ancient civilization. It really was a trip to remember!



Retelling the story of a legend



Who is the hero of the story?

The hero is Abu Zayd Al-Hilali.

من هو بطل القصة؟

البطل هو أبو زيد الهلالي.



Where did the story take place?

The story took place in the desert.

أين حدثت القصة؟

حدثت القصة في الصحراء.



What problem did the hero face?

He had to defeat a strong army.

ما المشكلة التي واجهها البطل؟

كان عليه هزيمة جيش قوي.



What did Abu Zayd learn from the adventure?

He learned to be brave and clever.

ماذا تعلم أبو زيد من المغامرة؟

تعلم أن يكون شجاعاً وذكياً.



How did the people feel after he won?

They were happy and proud.

كيف شعر الناس بعد أن فاز؟

شعروا بالسعادة والفخر.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Sara and Omar are talking about Abu Zayd al-Hilali.

Sara : Do you know a folk hero?

Omar : (1) People like Abu Zayd's story.

Sara : (2) ?

Omar : Because he shows courage and loyalty.

Sara : Did he fight only for himself?

Omar : (3) He fought to protect his people.

Sara : (4) ?

Omar : He traveled across deserts and faced challenges.

Sara : Where can we learn about his stories?

Omar : (5) I always read these poems.



How to write a short story كيفية كتابة قصة قصيرة

A short story is a small piece of fiction that tells about one main character and one main problem. It is meant to be read in one sitting.

القصة القصيرة هي قطعة صغيرة من الخيال تروي عن شخصية رئيسية واحدة ومشكلة رئيسية واحدة. من المفترض أن تُقرأ في جلسة واحدة.

Writing Tip

A short story includes:

- BeginningIntroduce the character and setting.
- MiddleShow the problem or conflict
- EndSolve the problem or give a lesson.

1 Beginning: البداية:

- I want to write about a special day.
- It was a sunny day.
- We decided to go somewhere for fun.

2 Place: المكان:

- We went to the park/beach/zoo.
- The place was big and beautiful.
- There were trees, flowers, or animals.

A short story about a special day you spent with your friends
 قصة قصيرة عن يوم خاص قضاها مع أصدقائك

3 Activities: الأنشطة:

- We had a picnic with sandwiches, fruits, and juice.
- We collected flowers, watched birds/ swam.

4 End: النهاية:

- It was a day I will never forget.
- Spending time with friends is a great way to make memories!

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"A short story about a special day you spent with your friends"

Last Saturday was a very special day. I spent it with my best friends, Sara and Omar. We went to the park because the weather was sunny and warm. First, we played football and games like hide and seek. Then, we had a picnic under a big tree. We ate sandwiches, fruits, and drank juice while talking and laughing. After lunch, we collected flowers and watched birds flying in the sky. Everyone was happy and enjoying the time together. Before we went home, we took many pictures to bring back memories. I felt very excited and will never forget this day with my friends.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Mr. Mesbah asked Ahmed to his favorite animal in detail.
a) respect b) describe c) stay d) build
- Teachers teach children to nature and take care of the environment.
a) respect b) ignore c) destroy d) find
- Good friends always support each other during difficult times. To get the adjective of "support" add the suffix ".....".
a) -ive b) -or c) -able d) -ity
- Following the rules at school helps students safe every day.
a) draw b) eat c) run d) stay

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

countries – trips – historians – cultures – storms

Ibn Battuta traveled across Africa, Asia, and even parts of Europe. He enjoyed meeting kings, learning about (1), and recording what he saw. Sometimes, the (2) were dangerous: crossing deserts, sailing through storms, and avoiding attacks. But he refused to stop traveling because he loved discovering new places. In his book, *Rihla (The journey)*, he described cities, traditions, and people from more than 40 (3) A lot of (4) today still use his writing to understand the past.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Did you do your exercise? (doing)
.....
- We mustn't pollute the environment. (avoid)
.....
- Don't make Dalia do the homework again; there are no mistakes. (force)
.....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- We decided (work) on our group project after school.
- Do you remember (lose) your first tooth as a child?
- The honest student refused (copy) answers from his friend's paper.

5 Complete the following dialog:

Khalid is telling **Amina** about **Abu Zayd al-Hilali**, a famous Arab folk hero.

Amina: Who is Abu Zayd al-Hilali?

Khalid: (1)

Amina: (2)

Khalid: He was born into the Hilali tribe.

Amina: What was special about him?

Khalid: (3)

Amina: Strong and wise! (4)

Khalid: He helped his tribe by leading them.

Amina: Who tells his story today?

Khalid: (5) Al-Hakawati is like a storyteller.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A short story about a day you spent"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My parents want (buy) a house near the sea.
2. The baby kept (laugh) every time the dog made a funny sound.
3. Do we need (wear) special shoes for the lab experiment?
4. I enjoy (lie) on the beach.

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆

Challenging Questions

50 : 64% Practice more

Challenging Questions

85 : 100% Well done!

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
buried	مدفون	noise	ضوضاء
motivate	يحفز	separate	يفصل
horrified	مدعور	hopeless	فاقد الأمل

2 Comprehension strategies:

Extract Information

How to extract information from the text:

كيفية استخراج معلومات من النص:

Explanation:

- Some questions ask you to find facts or details directly from the passage.

بعض الأسئلة تطلب منك البحث عن تفاصيل أو معلومات محددة مذكورة نصًا في القطعة.

Steps:

1. Read the question and underline keywords. اقرأ السؤال وضع خطًا تحت الكلمات الأساسية.

2. Scan the passage for those words or similar ones.

ابحث بسرعة في القطعة عن تلك الكلمات أو مرادفاتها.

3. Read around that part to find the exact detail.

اقرأ حولها لتجد المعلومة الدقيقة.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Last weekend, Salma and her family visited Alexandria. They went to the beach, took many pictures, and ate fish in a small restaurant by the sea. They left home at seven in the morning and came back at nine in the evening.

- How long did Salma and her family stay in Alexandria?

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Real treasure hunts were often connected to explorers and pirates.

☐ كانت عمليات البحث عن الكنز الحقيقية غالبًا مرتبطة بالمستكشفين والقرصنة.

☐ كانت عمليات البحث عن الكنز الحقيقية غالبًا مرتبطة بالمستكشفين واللصوص.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- استخدم أبو زيد الهلالي استراتيجيات ذكية لهزيمة الجيوش الأقوى.

☐ Abu Zayd Al-Hilali used smart strategies to defeat the stronger armies.

☐ Abu Zayd Al-Hilali used smart strategies to join the stronger armies.

Skills

Language

Vocabulary

artifact	قطعة أثرية/فنية
pirate	قرصان
riddles	فوازير/ألغاز
clue	مفتاح حل اللغز
explorer	مستكشف/راكحالة
treasure hunt	لعبة البحث عن الكنز
hidden	مخفي/مخفي
valuable	قيّم/ثمين
jungle	غابة/أدغال
magical	سحري
panic	دعر/رعب
shelter	مأوى/مسنكن
sour/acidic	لادع/حامض
courage	شجاعة
survive (ed)	ينجو/يُبقِ حياً
torch	كشاف/مصباح يدوي
defeat (ed)	يُهزِم
defend (ed)	يدافع عن
rival	خصم/منافس
tribe	قبيلة/عشيرة
marine	بحري
motive	دافع/حافز
shipwreck	حطام سفينة
swallow (ed)	يبتلع/يبلع
presentation	عرض تقديمي
rainforest	غابة مطيرة
sailing	الإبحار
podcast	بودكاست/برنامج صوتي
historian	مؤرخ

Verbs followed by "to + inf / v + ing":

1. Verbs followed by "to + inf."

(want – hope – force – use – promise – refuse – agree – learn – need – decide – mean – would like)

• **g.** We need **to prepare** for our trip tomorrow.

2. Verbs followed by "v + ing"

(enjoy – finish – keep – avoid)
• **g.** I **finished tidying** my room.

3. Verbs followed by "to + inf." or "v + ing" without difference in meaning

(like/love / hate)

• **g.** Ahmed **hates driving/to drive** during rush hours.

4. Verbs followed by "to + inf." or "v + ing" with different meanings

• **g.** - I **remember setting** the alarm before sleeping last night.
- **Remember to lock** the door.

A. Speaking

1. - Who is the hero of the story?
- The hero is Abu Zayd Al-Hilali.
2. Where did the story take place?
- The story took place in the desert.
3. What problem did the hero face?
- He had to defeat a strong army.
4. Who were the enemies in the story?
- The enemies were the rival armies.
5. How did the people feel after he won?
- They were happy and proud.

B. Writing

"A folktale you like"

One folktale I really like is "Aladdin and the Magic Lamp." It tells the story of a poor young man named Aladdin who finds a magical lamp. When he rubs the lamp, a powerful genie appears and promises him to achieve his wishes. With the genie's help, Aladdin becomes rich and marries the beautiful Princess Jasmine. However, an evil magician tries to steal the lamp to use its power for himself. In the end, Aladdin's bravery and cleverness help him defeat the magician and keep his happy life. I like this story because it teaches that true worth comes from courage and kindness, not from magic or wealth.



Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A puzzle with tricky questions is called a/an
a) clue b) artifact c) riddle d) solution
- Columbus was a famous who discovered new lands.
a) engineer b) explorer c) teacher d) doctor
- The museum showed old from Ancient Egypt.
a) seas b) oceans c) artifacts d) juice
- They followed every on the map to reach the prize.
a) lesson b) pirate c) clue d) story



Language

2 Use the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- She enjoys (reads) stories before bed.
- Mazen promised (calling) me after the exam.
- My team want (win) the competition this year.
- My mom finished (does) the dishes in the kitchen.
- He refused (wait) for us.
- Ali kept (asks) questions about his new lessons.



Writing

3 Write a short story of 100–110 words about "An adventure you liked," including:

- Where you were.
- What dangers you faced.
- What lesson you learned.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The students worked together during the to find every hidden clue.
a) meeting b) artifact
c) treasure hunt d) performance
- My keys are lost. "Lost" is a synonym of ".....".
a) found b) built c) missing d) had
- Heroes are admired for their, courage, and the ability to defend the weak.
a) loyalty b) safety c) difficulty d) reality
- The teacher admired the of the students during the exam.
a) curiosity b) calmness c) sickness d) necessity

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

clues – prize – series – tales – build

Yesterday, we joined a treasure hunt game that included a ||| of puzzles. Each puzzle required solving riddles and search for ||| hidden in the garden. Players needed quick thinking to finish on time. I enjoyed discovering valuable objects and using teamwork with friends. The game helped us to ||| skills in observation and logic. Everyone wanted to find the final |||, but the fun of playing was more important.

3 Read the following text (top) and answer the questions.

Hatim al-Tai was a famous Arab folk hero who lived long ago in the Arabian Desert. He was known for his great kindness and generosity. People said that Hatim never turned away a guest, no matter how poor or tired they were. He always shared his food, shelter, and even his last blanket with others. Once, during a cold winter, he gave away all his sheep to feed hungry travelers. He was known across deserts and cities, and even kings admired him. Many stories were told about his brave and generous acts. Hatim believed that helping others was the greatest honor. Because of his good heart, his name is still remembered today in books, poems, and tales throughout the Arab world. He teaches us that true strength comes not from power, but from kindness and giving.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the passage is Hatim al-Tai was a
 - a) king in Arabia
 - b) generous folk hero
 - c) famous poet
 - d) silly traveler
- Hatim al-Tai helped travelers by
 - a) giving them food and shelter
 - b) teaching them to read and write
 - c) drawing maps of the desert
 - d) selling them camels
- The underlined word "strength" can mean
 - a) power
 - b) health
 - c) fear
 - d) wealth

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What words or phrases in the passage tell you that Hatim was very generous?
5. What did Hatim al-Tai believe was "the greatest honor"?
6. If Hatim met someone lost in the desert, what do you think he would do?



The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The special suits Captain Nemo gave his guests allowed them to
a) swim faster **b)** breathe underwater without tanks
c) walk on the sea bed **d)** talk to sea animals
- Despite the beauty of the ocean, Ned Land missed
a) his ship **b)** fresh food
c) his family **d)** freedom and fresh air
- helped by naming each creature accurately.
a) Ned Land **b)** Nemo
c) Professor Aronnax **d)** Conseil
- were glowing with color in the wonders of underwater.
a) Fish **b)** Coral reefs **c)** Shipwrecks **d)** Whales

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why did Ned Land feel unhappy during the underwater journeys?
6. Do you think Captain Nemo was truly showing his captives the mysteries of the sea or he wanted to keep them prisoners?



Writing

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Let me use your pen, please.

(Allow)

2. Watching comic movies is fun.

3. The explorer hopes he will discover new ancient places.

(Discover)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We all agreed at the museum entrance at 10 a.m.

2. Students can use apps words from Arabic to English.

3. I haven't finished the report yet.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Lina is asking Hassan about Abu Zayd al-Hilali.

Lina : What made Abu Zayd a leader?

Hassan : (1)

Lina : Brave! Did he unite people?

Hassan : (2) He encouraged loyalty and teamwork.

Lina : (3) ?

Hassan : We can learn that a hero is also a wise leader.

Lina : (4) ?

Hassan : Yes, he sometimes faced difficult enemies.

Lina : Who still tells his story today?

Hassan : (5)

8 Write a text of HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A folk hero you admire"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Complete the following dialog:

Ayman and Baher are talking about their favorite sports.

Ayman : What's your favorite sport?

Baher : (1)..... It's the most popular sport in Egypt.

Ayman : Do you like swimming?

Baher : (2).....

Ayman : (3).....?

Baher : I really like Lebron James. He is the best basketball player.

Ayman : Do you prefer team sports or individual sports?

Baher : (4)..... I enjoy working with others.

Ayman : (5).....?

Baher : I usually play twice a week to stay healthy.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. That's the restaurant (where) serves the best pizza in town.
2. I (don't) use to eat fish.
3. I (use) to stay up late on weekends.
4. She decided (study) abroad next year instead of staying in her hometown.

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

champion – reflect – knight – customize – harmony

1. A brave warrior محارب who served a king or queen was known as a
2. The Olympic gold medalist was welcomed as a true after winning the race.
3. After the difficult meeting, the manager needed time to on the decisions made.
4. The team coach wants to create between the players.



1 Listen to the following text, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- In Japan, people usually to show respect.
a) wave b) bow c) smile d) nod
- The Day of the Dead is celebrated in
a) Mexico b) Japan c) France d) India
- Learning about other cultures helps us
a) forget our history b) change our traditions
c) remember our memories d) understand the world better

B) Answer the following questions:

- What can traditions include?
- How do traditions help people?

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah was born in a small village in Egypt, in 1992. From a young age, he showed great interest in football. Salah spent hours practicing with a ball in the streets of his village.

By the time he joined El Mokawloon, he had already trained for many years with great dedication and patience. His hard work finally paid off when he signed with FC Basel in Switzerland—it was the start of his international journey.

Salah later played for Chelsea, Roma, and Liverpool, where he achieved incredible success. He scored record-breaking goals, won the Champions League, and was named one of the best footballers in the world.

Beyond football, Salah became a role model for millions. Egyptians call him “the humble star,” because he never forgot where he came from.

Mohamed Salah’s story teaches us that success comes from hard work, faith, and kindness. He had faced many challenges, but he never gave up—and that’s why he remains a true Egyptian hero.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Before Salah joined FC Basel, he had played for
a) Rome b) Chelsea
c) El Mokawloon d) Liverpool
- The main idea of the text is
a) luck and fame b) strength and money
c) hard work and kindness d) training doesn’t matter

B) Answer the following questions:

3. Where was Mohamed Salah born?

4. How did Salah spend most of his free time?

5. What record did Salah break at Liverpool?

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. Nabil isn't using the mobile phone any more. (used to)

2. His favorite hobby is to write poetry. (enjoy)

3. The man who stole the money had brown hair. (whose)

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A/An is a person who travels to new or unfamiliar places to learn about them, discover new things, or gather information.
a) passenger b) discoverer c) inventor d) explorer
2. The hotel staff were praised for their excellent toward all the guests.
a) honesty b) hospitality c) creativity d) activity
3. The treasure was in a cave where no one could find it.
a) open b) visible c) known d) hidden
4. During the match, the two played with great skill and respect.
a) teammates b) coaches c) opponents d) fans
5. The graduation was held in the school hall with proud families watching.
a) meeting b) ceremony c) party d) trial
6. In ancient times, warriors rode into battle on a pulled by horses.
a) chariot b) car c) bicycle d) carriage
7. The students looked at their teacher with great for her kindness and wisdom.
a) anger b) admiration c) boredom d) surprise
8. She enjoys early in the morning before work.
a) to jog b) jogging c) jogs d) jog

9. I didn't to study hard.

a) use

b) used

c) uses

d) using

10. The woman helped me yesterday works at the hospital.

a) which

b) whose

c) who

d) where

The Story

5 A) Answer the following questions:

1. Who is the main character in the story?

2. What is the name of Captain Nemo's submarine?

3. What kind of animals do the crew see under the sea?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The story was written by

a) Jules Verne

b) Mark Twain

c) Charles Dickens

d) Robert Louis Stevenson

5. Captain is the mysterious leader of the submarine.

a) John

b) Ahab

c) Smith

d) Nemo

6. The submarine in the story is called the

a) Seagull

b) Nautilus

c) Dolphin

d) Ocean Star

6 Write from ONE HUNDRED (100) to ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"How you celebrate your birthday!"

Unit

10

ANIMAL ADAPTATIONS



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

Identify the main ideas in Informational texts about desert and Arctic animals.
Identify specific details in Informational texts about desert and Arctic animals.

Listening

Recognize the gist of an interview with a wildlife expert.
Guess the meaning of unknown words based on contextual clues.
Recognize the supporting details of an interview with a wildlife expert.

Speaking

Participate in a role-play as a wildlife expert.
Present information on animal adaptations using reported speech.

Language

Transform direct questions into reported speech in written exercises.

Writing

Write a fact file about animals.

STUDY

Part 1

▶ LESSON 1: Desert Animals

▶ LESSON 2: Wildlife Expert

VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

adaptation (n)	تكيف/تأقلم	predator (n)	حيوان مفترس
conservation (n)	حماية/محافظة	prey (n)	فريسة
harsh (adj)	قاسٍ/شديد	temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة
incredible (adj)	لا يُصدِّق/مذهل	scarce (adj)	نادر/شحيح

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

amount (n)	كمية	locate (d) (v)	يحدِّد موقعاً/يعيِّن مكاناً
condition (n)	حالة/ظرف/شرط	masters (n)	أسياد/سادة
contain (ed) (v)	يحتوى على	nail (n)	ظفر (الإصبع)
extreme (adj)	شديد/قاسٍ	prevent (ed) (v)	يمنع
extremely (adv)	للفأية/إلى حدٍّ كبير	resources (n)	موارد
eyelash (n)	رمش (العين)	sandstorm (n)	عاصفة رملية
fat (n)	دهن	severe (adj)	شديد/قاسٍ
fennec fox (n)	ثعلب الفنك	shell (n)	صدفة/قوقعة
freezing cold (n)	برد قارس/شديد	store (d) (v)	يخزن
fur (n)	فرو	thick (adj)	سميك/كثيف
habitat (n)	موطن/بيئة طبيعية	tortoise (n)	سلحفاة (اليابسة)
hump (n)	سنام (الجمال)	tough (adj)	قاسٍ/شديد

Useful expressions and phrases

adapt to	يتكيف/يتأقلم مع	lose heat	يفقد حرارة/سخونة
blend into	يندمج مع/يفترج بـ	slow down	يُقلِّل/يُبطئ
during the day	أثناء النهار	survive in	يعيش/يصمد فى
keep balance	يحافظ على التوازن	protect ... against/from	يحمى ... ضد/من

(n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition
(v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

Read and complete with a word from the list:

lose – prey – to – for – severe

- 1 The lion hunts its in the jungle.
- 2 The storm was and destroyed many buildings.
- 3 We heat from our bodies when it is very cold.
- 4 Camels adapt the hot desert by storing water.

VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

behavior (n)	سلوك/تصرف	fascinated (adj)	مفتون/معجب
disease (n)	مرض	flexible (adj)	مرن/قابل للتكيف
disturbing (adj)	مقلق/مزعج	migration (n)	هجرة

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر في	movement (n)	حركة
Arctic (n/adj)	القطب الشمالي/قطبي شمالي	observe (d) (v)	يراقب
climate change (n)	تغير المناخ	pattern (n)	نمط/نوع
countryside (n)	الريف	penguin (n)	طائر البطريق
current (adj)	حالي/راهن	polar bear (n)	دب قطبي
discovery (n)	اكتشاف	problem-solver (n)	حلّال المشكلات
extraordinary (adj)	خارق/رائع	surprising (adj)	مفاجئ/مدهش
hunt (ed) (v)	يصادد	tracking devices (n)	أجهزة تتبع
method (n)	طريقة	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

collect data	يجمع البيانات	focus on	يركز على
fascinated by	مفتون/معجب بـ	interested in	مهتم بـ

Read and complete with a word from the list:

in – on – flexible – countryside – disturbing

- 1 Some animals are very and can move smoothly in narrow places.
- 2 The loud noise at night was very
- 3 Please, focus your homework, not your phone.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
hear	يسمع heard	heard
sink	يغوص sank	sunk

Words, synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها، ومضادها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
disturbing	مقلق/مزعج	annoying/interrupting	مزعج/مقاطع للكلام	peaceful	مسالم
excellent	ممتاز/متفوق	brilliant	بارع/رائع	stupid	غبى
fascinated	مفتون/مندهبش	attracted	منجذب	bored	مضجر/زهقان
harsh	قاس/شديد	severe/tough	قاس/شديد	mild	معتدل/خفيف
hot	حار	warm	دافئ	cold/ cool	بارد
huge	ضخم	large	ضخم	small/tiny	صغير
prevent	يمنع	stop	يتوقف عن	allow	يسمح
thick	سميك/كثيف	dense	كثيف	thin	رفيع

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	Function	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
adapt (v)	يتأقلم/يتكيف	-ation	تحول إلى اسم		adaptation (n)	تكيف/تأقلم
conserve (v)	يحافظ				conservation (n)	محافظة
behave (v)	يتصرف	-ior			behavior (n)	سلوك/تصرف
extreme (adj)	شديد/قاس	-ly	تحول إلى حال		extremely (adv)	للفأية/إلى حد كبير

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Winter winds can be very harsh in cold countries. The synonym of "harsh" is ".....".
a) dry b) wet c) mild d) severe
- The old ship quickly after hitting a huge rock.
a) heard b) sank c) adapted d) behaved
- You did a/an job helping your team win the game.
a) annoying b) peaceful c) excellent d) terrible

Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What do you know about desert animals?
- 2 How do they survive in hot, dry places?

 Read the following. Guess the meaning of the words in bold.

SB page 57

Masters of Adaptation

Life in the desert is extremely challenging. Too much heat during the day and freezing cold at night create **harsh** conditions that would kill most animals. However, some amazing **creatures**⁽¹⁾ have developed incredible **adaptations** to survive in these tough environments.

The fennec fox is perfectly **adapted to**⁽²⁾ desert life. Its large ears help it lose heat and hear prey moving underground. This small fox has **thick fur**⁽³⁾ on its feet to protect against hot sand and excellent hearing to locate insects and small animals. During the hot day, it stays cool in underground holes.

Desert tortoises⁽⁴⁾ are masters of **water conservation**. They can store water in their bodies for months and get water from the plants they eat. Their hard shells protect them from **predators** and extreme **temperatures**⁽⁵⁾. When food becomes scarce, they can slow down their use of energy and survive without eating.

Camels are famous for their survival skills. They can drink huge amounts of water quickly and store it. Their **humps**⁽⁶⁾ contain fat which provides energy during long journeys. Their wide feet prevent them from sinking into sand, and their long **eyelashes**⁽⁷⁾ protect their eyes from **sandstorms**⁽⁸⁾.



- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| (1) مخلوقات | (2) يتكيف مع |
| (3) فراء كثيف | (4) السلاحف الصحراوية |
| (5) درجات الحرارة | (6) سنام الجمل |
| (7) رموش العين | (8) عواصف رملية |

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 What makes desert life difficult for animals?
- 2 How do fennec foxes stay cool during the day?
- 3 What helps desert tortoises survive without food?
- 4 How can camels' eyelashes help them in the desert?

Listening Text



Pre-listening question:

- What topics do you think wildlife experts discuss when talking about animals and their homes?

Listen to the podcast, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d. **SB page 60**

Recently, I interviewed Dr. Maha Ezzat, a researcher who studies animal behavior in extreme environments. I began by asking what had made her interested in this field. She explained that she had always been fascinated⁽¹⁾ by the ways animals solve survival problems. She added that when she was studying biology, she had learned that animals are incredible problem-solvers and that they often develop solutions that humans are still trying to understand.



Next, I asked if she had ever researched Arctic animals. Dr. Maha told me that her current research was about how Arctic animals were adapting to climate change. She mentioned that some species were changing their migration⁽²⁾ patterns and feeding habits much faster than scientists had expected. For example, she said that some seals⁽³⁾ were moving to new areas where the ice lasted longer.



Then, I asked how she and her team collected their data. She explained that they used several methods⁽⁴⁾, including attaching small tracking devices to animals to follow their movements. She also said that they used hidden cameras to observe⁽⁵⁾ natural behavior without disturbing⁽⁶⁾ the animals.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| (1) باحث | (2) منبهر/مفتون |
| (3) لا يصدق | (4) الحيوانات القطبية |
| (5) تغير المناخ | (6) أضف |
| (7) العجزة | (8) كلاب البحر |
| (9) طرف | (10) بلاطة |
- مفلف/مزعج

Finally, I asked what the most surprising thing she had discovered was. Dr. Maha replied that animals were much more flexible than people had thought. She said they could change their behavior in just one generation when they needed to survive.

Post-listening questions:

SB

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Dr. Maha studies animal
 - bodies
 - behavior
 - diseases
 - medicine
- Dr. Maha's current research focuses on animals.
 - desert
 - sea
 - forest
 - Arctic
- She became interested in this work because
 - animals are good problem-solvers
 - she likes traveling
 - she was born in the countryside
 - it is very dangerous

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات		
adaptations تكيف/تأقلم	changes that help living things survive in their environment ⁽¹⁾	(1) البيئة
conservation حماية/محافظة	protecting nature and natural resources ⁽²⁾	(2) مصادر طبيعية
disturbing مقلق/مزعج/مفزع	annoying or interrupting	(3) غير عادي
fascinated مفتون/معجب	amazing or extraordinary ⁽³⁾	(4) حركة
flexible مرن/قابل للتكيف	able to change easily	
harsh قاس/شديد	rough or severe (like very hot, cold, or tough conditions)	
migration هجرة	the movement ⁽⁴⁾ from one place to another	
predator مفترس/حيوان مفترس	animals that hunt and eat other animals	

1 **desert** صحراء / **dessert** التحلية بعد الطعام

- The **desert** is very hot.
- I like eating chocolate for **dessert**.

2 **lose** يفقد - يخسر / **loose** واسع

- Don't **lose** your keys!
- My pants are **loose**.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 "....." means to be able to change easily.
 a) Large b) Harsh c) Flexible d) Wide
- 2 I need to wear something on the trip to the mountains.
 a) lose b) loose c) loss d) lost
- 3 The fennec fox lives in the hot
 a) dessert b) desert c) ocean d) method
- 4 "....." means protecting nature and natural resources.
 a) Adaptation b) Migration
 c) Environment d) Conservation

LESSON

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- It seems that a tiny insect can carry heavy things.
 a) annoying b) incredible c) freezing d) large
- The crocodile is a dangerous that lives in the river.
 a) predator b) elephant c) prey d) sheep
- She found it hard to adapt to the new school at first. The suffix "-ation" makes the word "adapt" a/an
 a) noun b) verb c) adjective d) adverb
- The desert sun makes life extremely harsh during day. The the word "harsh" is the antonym of ".....".
 a) hard b) severe c) tough d) mild
- People used to animals for food and fur.
 a) save b) provide c) prevent d) hunt
- The map helped us the nearest water source.
 a) develop b) locate c) create d) provide
- The insect's color helps it blend the leaves of the tree.
 a) to b) on c) for d) into
- Elderly people often need help to their balance while walking.
 a) lose b) stay c) keep d) drop
- The lion is watching its from behind the tall grass.
 a) prey b) conservation c) eyelash d) heat
- The inside the fridge is always cold and sometimes freezing.
 a) temperature b) balance c) climate d) heat

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

to – for – during – habitat – develop

Desert animals must adapt to survive. They special behavior, body parts, and habits over time. For example, many animals are active at night and rest (2) the day. This helps them avoid the worst heat. We asked scientists whether all desert animals could adapt (3) even hotter temperatures in the future. They said some might, but others need our help through conservation. Protecting their (4) will provide them with the resources they need to live.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Being helps you adapt when plans suddenly change.
a) flexible b) disturbing c) annoying d) surprising
2. The children were fascinated by the story of the lost treasure. "Fascinated" can be replaced by "....."
a) bored b) annoyed c) attracted d) exciting
3. The dog behaved well during the vet's check-up. The suffix "-ior" is added to the verb "behave" to form a/an
a) adjective b) noun c) verb d) adverb
4. Scientists observe animal to learn about their habits.
a) behavior b) color c) size d) food
5. What is the temperature in your city today?
a) amazing b) interested c) current d) flexible
6. Modern classrooms use many digital for learning.
a) movements b) secrets c) machines d) devices
7. This robot was designed to data about ocean temperatures.
a) collect b) focus c) change d) take
8. Many students are interested studying animals and nature.
a) by b) at c) in d) about
9. The doctor should the patient carefully.
a) observe b) affect c) hunt d) research
10. A lot of animals prefer in winter to find food.
a) movement b) climate c) migration d) wildlife

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

devices – on – fascinated – at – habitats

Technology helps us learn about the secrets of the natural world. We are (1)..... by animal behavior. Experts use modern (2)..... to discover more and more about different animals. They do their best to focus (3)..... how these animals live and the dangers they face. These tools gather necessary movement data. The information helps us learn more about their (4).....

Unit 10 Reported Questions

A reported question is when you tell someone what another person asked, but you are not quoting their exact words.

السؤال المنقول هو عندما تخبر شخصاً بما سأل عنه شخص آخر، ولكنك لا تقتبس كلماته بالضبط.

Direct	Indirect
e.g. "Hala said, "Do you like ice cream?"	→ Hala asked if I liked ice cream.
Nabil said, "When is the test?"	→ Nabil asked when the test was.

لتحويل السؤال من السؤال المباشر إلى الكلام غير المباشر نتبع القاعدة الآتية:

فعل ماضٍ + فاعل + if/whether أداة استفهام + المخاطب + asked + المتكلم

والتيك خطوات تحويل السؤال كما يلي:

e.g. Ali said to the coach, "Can I swim long distances tomorrow?"

١. نبدأ بالمتكلم.

Ali

٢. نكتب فعل القول () فقط إذا كان يوجد مخاطب/مفعول، وإذا لم يوجد مخاطب نكتب:

يسأل/asked يريد أن يعرف/inquired wanted to know/يتساءل/wondered

Ali **asked** the coach

٣. نحذف علامات التنصيص ونربط بنفس أداة الاستفهام إذا كان السؤال بكلمة استفهام ، أما إذا كان السؤال بفعل مساعد نستخدم (if/whether).

Ali **asked** the coach **if/whether**

٤. نكتب الفاعل مع ملاحظة تحويل بعض الضمائر كالتالي:

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
I	he/she	me	him/her	my	his/her
You	I/we	you	me/us	your	my/our
We	they	us	them	our	their

Ali asked the coach if/whether **he** ...

٥. يتم تحويل الأزمنة إلى الماضي، كالتالي:

Present simple:	مضارع بسيط	Past simple:	ماضي بسيط
He asked , "Do you like fish?"		He asked me if I liked fish.	
Present continuous:	مضارع مستمر	Past continuous:	ماضي مستمر
Marwa asked, "Is Ahmed talking to Sara?"		Marwa asked whether Ahmed was talking to Sara.	
Present perfect:	ماضي تام	Past perfect:	ماضي تام
"Have the girls ironed the skirts?", said Mom.		Mom asked if the girls had ironed the skirts.	

Past simple:

ماضي بسيط

- Dad asked, "When **did you go** to school?"

can – will – may – shall – must

- "Can you **swim**?" he asked.

(am/is/are) going to:

- "Where are you **going to travel** tomorrow?" she said.

Past perfect:

ماضي تام

- Dad asked when I **had gone** to school.

Past simple:

ماضي بسيط

- Dad asked when I **went** to school.

could – would – might – should – had to

- He asked me if I **could swim**.

(was/were) going to:

- She asked **where I was going to travel** the next day.

- Ali asked the coach if/whether he **could** swim long distances.

٦. يتم تحويل بعض الروابط الزمنية وأسماء الإشارة كالتالي:

Direct		Direct	
tomorrow	the following/next day	last ...	the previous ...
yesterday	the day before	ago	before
tonight	that night	this	that
now	then	these	those
today	that day	here	there

٧. نحذف علامة الاستفهام ونستبدلها بنقطة:

- Ali **asked** the coach if/whether he **could** swim long distances **the following day**.

ادرس الأمثلة الآتية لعزید من التدريب.

Yes/No Question السؤال بهل	• Mona asked me, " <u>Do you speak</u> English?"	- Mona asked me if I spoke English.
	• "Are you going out?" Emma asked him.	- Emma asked him if he was going out.
	• He asked me, " <u>Will you</u> come soon?"	- He asked me if I would come soon.
Wh- Question السؤال بأداة استفهام	• Adel said , "When <u>will you</u> return?"	- Adel asked when I would return.
	• Soha said , "What <u>are you</u> doing now ?"	- Soha asked what I was doing then .
	• "How much do you earn ?" asked Huda.	- Huda asked me how much I earned .



إذا وجد في السؤال (do, does, did) يتم حذفها ونغير الزمن كما سبق.

"How **do** Arctic foxes **survive** in their habitats?" (The student asked ...)

The student asked how Arctic foxes **survived** in their habitats.

"Do penguins **live** south?" (She wanted to know ...)

She wanted to know if/whether penguins **migrated** south.



- لا تتغير الأزمنة في السؤال المنقول في الحالات الآتية:

١. إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة ثابتة:

The teacher **says**, "All metals **expand** when they are heated?"

The teacher **said** if metals **expand** when they are heated.

٢. إذا كان فعل القول في المضارع:

She **asks**, "Does she **live** in a flat in Cairo?"

She **asks** if she **lives** in a flat in Cairo.

٣- إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة وذلك في وجود (now / just now / moment ago) خارج الأقواس:

He **asked** just now, "Have you **already** **seen** the movie?"

He **asked** just now if I **have** **already** **seen** the movie.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Menna if I liked watching comedy movies.

- الإجابة الصحيحة لأن كلمة تتحول إلى في السؤال المنقول.

2 Ahmed asked Hossam where he (live).

- الإجابة الصحيحة (lived) لأن الفعل المضارع يتحول للماضي في السؤال المنقول.

3 Reem asked her teacher if he (can) swim well.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (can) لأن تتحول للماضي في السؤال المنقول.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She asked me if I to the party that evening.

SB

- a) would go b) will go c) went d) go

2. Ahmed asked Hana if she a new job.

SB

- a) finds b) find c) had found d) finding

3. They wondered their homework.

SB

- a) if they will finish b) whether they had finished
c) if they have finished d) whether they finish

4. The teacher asked him what the answer

SB

- a) was b) is c) does d) were

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She asks her friend where she (live).

SB

2. Basma wondered if I (am) coming to the festival.

SB

3. Hatem wanted to know if Hisham (can) help him with the project.

SB

4. I asked him when the report (be) done.

SB

5. He asked me what I (think) of his presentation.

SB

6. My teacher (said) me what time I got up.

SB

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Wael said, "How many books did you buy?"

(Wael asked me)

.....

2. "What are you doing now?" said Ahmed.

(Ahmed inquired)

.....

3. My brother said, "Have you prepared for lunch?"

(whether)

.....

4. Kamel said to me, "Are you busy?"

(asked)

.....

5. "What time will you reach the office?"

(Sherif wondered)

.....

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Hatem asked me I would join the school trip the following week.
a) that b) whether c) what d) then
- Laila asked her brother if he her with her math homework.
a) can help b) could help c) helps d) were helping
- The coach asked the team how they after the long match.
a) were feeling b) feel c) have felt d) feeling
- My friend asked me where I my new shoes the previous week.
a) buys b) had bought c) have bought d) was buying

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Ahmed asked if they (know) the answer.
- Mom asked what time the bus (leave).
- Amal asked me if I (see) her phone the day before.
- They wondered where I (go) the previous week.
- She wondered what I (am doing) then.
- The librarian asked the children (that) they needed help finding books.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- "How do Arctic foxes survive in their habitats?" (The student asked) SB
.....
- "Do penguins migrate south?" (Our teacher asked) SB
.....
- "How do camels store water?" (He asked ...) SB
.....
- "Can polar bears swim long distances?" (That worried ...) SB
.....
- I said to my father, "Are there African tigers in the zoo?" (I asked) SB
.....

حل المزيد من التدريبات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





SKILLS

Speaking



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



Amazing Animal Adaptations!

تكيفات حيوانية مذهلة!



Online



What do animals do to survive in their habitats?

ماذا تفعل الحيوانات للبقاء على قيد الحياة في مواطنها؟

Animals find food, drink water, hide from enemies, and stay safe in their homes. تجد الحيوانات طعامًا، وتشرب ماءً، وتختبئ من الأعداء، وتحافظ على سلامتها في منازلها.



What's your favorite desert animal?

ما هو حيوانك المفضل في الصحراء؟

My favorite desert animal is the camel.

حيواني المفضل في الصحراء هو الجمل.



How does it survive in its environment?

كيف يتنجو في بيئته؟

It can live many days without water and carry food in its hump.

إنه يعيش أيامًا كثيرة دون ماء، ويحمل طعامه في سنامه.



What special body part or behavior helps it live there?

ما العضو الخاص أو السلوك الذي يساعده على العيش هناك؟

Its hump stores fat, and its thick eyelashes keep sand out of its eyes.

يحتفظ سنامه بالدهن، ورموشه الكثيفة تمنع الرمال من دخولها عينيه.



Speaking Exercise

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Sara is telling Ali how the fennec fox is perfectly adapted to desert life.

Ali : What's your favorite desert animal?

Sara : (1)

Ali : How does it survive in its environment?

Sara : (2)

Ali : (3)

Sara : Its large ears help it lose heat and hear prey moving underground.

Ali : (4)

Sara : It hides in underground holes to keep cool and safe.

Ali : What does it eat in the desert?

Sara : (5)

TEST YOURSELF

Unit 10 (10)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This special type of lizard developed a great skill that helped it hide from enemies.
a) fear b) adaptation c) habitat d) heat
2. Without, many animals could disappear forever.
a) conservation b) humps c) movement d) temperature
3. The doctor said the spreads quickly if people don't wash their hands.
a) concert b) device c) method d) disease
4. His behavior was disturbing to his classmates. "Disturbing" is the antonym of "
of"
a) annoying b) interrupting c) angry d) peaceful

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

fur – prey – large – tiny – hunts

The fennec fox lives in the hot desert, where conditions are very harsh. It has (1) ears that help it stay cool by losing heat. Its thick (2) protects it from the sun during the day and the freezing cold at night. The fox (3) insects and small animals for food. People wonder how such a small animal survives with so little water. Scientists discovered it gets all the water it needs from its (4)

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets:

1. She said to me, "Are you ready for the exam?"
..... (wondered)
2. Nabil said, "When will you come back from Aswan?"
..... (wondered)
3. Eman said to me, "Did you enjoy your time in Alexandria?"
..... (wondered)

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

1. My sister asked who had given me gift.
2. Taher asked if (can/I) help him then.
3. Laila wondered how much that book (costs).

5 Complete the following dialog:

Laila is asking Omar about camels.

Laila : Why don't camels drink water every day?

Omar : (1).....

Laila : In their bodies! Do they store water in their humps?

Omar : (2)..... Their humps store fat, not water.

Laila : (3).....?

Omar : Their body changes fat into energy and water.

Laila : (4).....?

Omar : Their thick fur protects them in summer.

Laila : How do they walk on sand?

Omar : (5).....

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"An animal that lives in the desert"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

جواب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. "Why are you late?" the coach asked the player. (why he)

2. Hala said, "Why didn't you go to school yesterday, Hatem?" (asked)

3. The teacher said, "What makes oil boil?" (asked)

4. "Will it rain today?" the student asked the weather reporter. (would)

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

< 50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

absorb (ed) (v)	يمتص/يستوعب	paw (n)	مخالب الحيوان
camouflage (n)	التخفي/التخفي	remarkable (adj)	رائع/ملحوظ
demonstrate (d) (v)	يوضح/يعرض	vegetation (n)	نباتات/غطاء نباتي
mile (n)	ميل (وحدة قياس مسافة)	warmth (n)	الدفء

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

Arctic fox (n)	الثعلب القطبي	icy (adj)	جليدي
claw (n)	مخالب/ظفر الحيوان	male (n)	ذكر/مذكر
emperor penguin (n)	بطريق الإمبراطور	marathon (n)	ماراثون/سباق طويل المسافة
fin (n)	زعنفة	seal (n)	ثُفْمَة/كلب البحر
feathers (n)	ريش	snowshoes (n)	أحذية الثلج
hatch (ed) (v)	يفقس (بيضًا)	sunlight (n)	ضوء الشمس
hunter (n)	صياد	total (adj)	كلي/كامل

Language Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات ولغة

drop to	ينخفض/يهبط إلى	keep hidden	يبقى مختبئًا
from miles away	من على مسافة بعيدة	mix with	يختلط/يختلج بـ/يتفاعل مع
get through	يجتاز/يتجاوز	take turns	يتناوب/يتبادل الأدوار

Read and complete with a word from the list:

demonstrate – keep – take – drop

- 1 When we play chess, my brother and I turns using the same board.
- 2 The teacher will how to solve the math problem.
- 3 Animals their babies hidden to protect them from danger.

Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What do you think animals need to survive in very cold places?
- 2 Can you name an animal that lives in the snow or ice? How does it stay warm?

 Read the following text and guess the meaning of the words in bold.

SB page 63

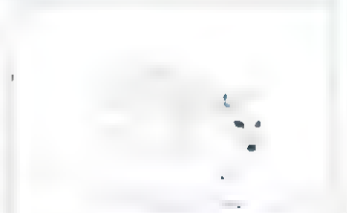
Surviving the Frozen North

The Arctic⁽¹⁾ is one of Earth's most extreme environments. With temperatures dropping to -40°C and months of total darkness. However, many remarkable animals can survive in these icy wilds.

Polar bears are the best at surviving in the Arctic. Their thick, white fur provides excellent warmth and perfect camouflage against snow. Under their fur, black skin absorbs heat from the sun. Large paws² work like snowshoes to walk on thin ice. These powerful hunters can smell seals from miles away.

Arctic foxes³ demonstrate amazing seasonal adaptations⁴. In winter, their fur turns completely white and becomes much thicker for warmth. During summer, it changes to brown or gray to mix with rocks and vegetation.

Male emperor penguins⁵ stand on ice for months, protecting their eggs before hatching in freezing winds. They gather to take turns moving to the warm center. Their thick feathers⁶ create natural warmth for them.



القطب الشمالي	رائم/ملحوظ
(3) تملمس	(4) مخالب
(5) التكيفات	(6) الثعالب القطبية
(7) البطاريق	(8) ريش
الحقن	

Post-reading questions:

- 1 How does the Arctic fox stay warm in winter?
- 2 What do emperor penguins do to keep warm in freezing weather?

How to write about animals adaptation

كيفية الكتابة عن التكيفات الحيوانية

1 Definition: التعريف:

- Adaptations are changes that help living things survive in their environment.
- Adaptations help them find food, stay safe, and survive.

2 Desert Animals: حيوانات الصحراء:

- Camel: stores water in its body, has long eyelashes, thick lips.
- Fennec fox: has large ears to lose heat and light fur to stay cool.



3 Polar Animals: الحيوانات القطبية:

- Polar bear: has thick fur, fat to stay warm, and white color to hide in snow.
- Penguin: has strong flippers to swim and thick layer of fat.

4 Forest Animals: حيوانات الغابة:

- Monkey: climbs trees easily and has a long tail for balance.
- Chameleon: changes color to hide from enemies.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المصنوع عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

“Animals Adaptation”

Animals adapt to live in different environments. Each animal has special features that help it survive. In the desert, camels can live without water for many days. Fennec foxes have large ears to lose heat and soft fur to protect them from the hot sand. In cold places, polar bears have thick fur and a layer of fat to stay warm. Penguins have strong flippers to swim fast in icy water. In forests, monkeys use their long tails to move between trees, and chameleons change their color to hide from enemies. These adaptations help animals live safely everywhere.

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The Arctic fox uses white fur as perfect in winter snow.
a) paw b) camouflage c) flag d) rock
- Farmers wait patiently for the eggs to in the nest.
a) hatch b) absorb c) freeze d) break
- Polar bears have black skin to heat from the sunlight.
a) mix b) drop c) absorb d) move
- The farmers planted new crops to replace the damaged
a) darkness b) camouflage c) warmth d) vegetation
- In the Arctic, temperatures can -40°C during the long winter nights.
a) fight off b) drop to c) get through d) take turns
- A lion is a natural hunter in the wild. The "-er" in "hunter" functions as a/an
a) suffix b) prefix c) antonym d) synonym
- Arctic foxes their fur color to match the snow or summer rocks.
a) hatch b) demonstrate c) turn d) absorb
- Some animals use their to dig holes in the ground.
a) claws b) eyes c) ears d) tails
- Her performance in the play was truly remarkable. "....." has the same meaning of "remarkable".
a) Ordinary b) Warm c) Amazing d) Boring
- Soldiers wear clothes with green and brown patterns as in the forest.
a) camouflage b) fur c) hair d) decoration

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

drop – darkness – camouflage – stay – mix

The Arctic fox lives in one of the coldest places on Earth. In winter, its fur turns white to provide perfect (1) in the snow. Its thick fur and small ears help it (2) warm even when temperatures (3) to -40°C. The fox walks easily on snow using its paws, which work like natural snowshoes. Scientists once studied how it survived the long (4) However, they ask themselves how the fox finds food during cold winter nights.

4

Chapter Four: Battles and Dangers

Chapter (4) in points:



- 1 Life on the Nautilus was dangerous, and one day a giant squid attacked the submarine.

كانت الحياة على متن النوتيليس خطيرة، وفي أحد الأيام هاجم الفواصة حبار عملاق.

- 2 Nemo and his crew fought the squid with axes and harpoons.

حارب نيمو وطاقمه الحبار بالفتوس والحراب.

- 3 Ned Land bravely killed the squid, and the crew escaped the danger.

قتل نيد لاند الحبار بشجاعة وهرب الطاقم من الخطر.

- 4 The Nautilus got stuck under thick ice at the South Pole.

علقت النوتيليس تحت ثلج عميق في القطب الجنوبي.

- 5 The crew was in danger because the oxygen was running low, but they finally broke a path to the surface.

كان الطاقم في خطر، لأن الأكسجين بدأ ينفذ، ولكنهم تمكنوا في النهاية من قطع طريق للسطح.

- 6 When warships appeared, Captain Nemo attacked them without mercy.

عندما ظهرت سفن حربية، هاجمهم القبطان ليمو بلا رحمة.

- 7 Aronnax learned that Nemo was brave and a strong leader, but also indifferent about human life.

علم أرونالكس أن نيمو شجاع وقائد قوى ولكنه لا يبالى بحياة الإنسان.

- 8 Ned Land felt trapped, and the ocean seemed different to each of them—wonder, battle, or prison—causing tension among the men.

شعر نيد لاند بأنه محتجز وبدا المحيط مختلفًا لكل منهم - تحفة، ساحة قتال، أو سجن - مسببًا توتر بين الرجال.

VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

axe (n)	فأس	indifference (n)	لا مبالاة
desperate (adj)	يائس/ميتوس منه	passenger (n)	راكب/مسافر
giant (n/adj)	عملاق	squid (n)	حبار
harpoon (n)	رمح صيد الحيتان	trapped (adj)	محبوس/محتجز/عالق

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

battlefield (n)	ساحة المعركة	prison (n)	سجن
breakdown (n)	عطل/تعطل	react (ed) (v)	يرد/يستجيب/يتفاعل
depth (n)	عمق	remain (ed) (v)	يُتبقى/يظل
effort (n)	مُجهود/جهد	risk (n)	خطر
fear (ed) (v/n)	يخاف/خوف	struggle (d) (v/n)	يكافح/يناضل/كفاح
fearless (adj)	شجاع/جرىء	successfully (adv)	بنجاح
key factor (n)	عامل أساسي	the South Pole (n)	القطب الجنوبي
mercy (n)	رحمة/شفقة	tension (n)	توتر/قلق
octopus (n)	أخطبوط	threat (n)	تهديد

Language Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

break a path to the surface	يفتح طريقاً إلى السطح	loss of life	خسارة في الأرواح
escape the danger	يُهرب من الخطر	on deck	على متن السفينة
fight off	يقاوم/يتغلب على/يطرد	run low	يُضعف/يُنضائل
force its way free	يحرر نفسه بالقوة	tension grew	ازداد التوتر

Pre-reading question:

- What do you think "battles" and "dangers" might mean in a sea story?

 Read the following text. Who killed the giant squid?

SB page 65

Chapter Four: Battles and Dangers

Life on the Nautilus was not without risk⁽¹⁾. Once, the submarine was attacked by a giant squid⁽²⁾. In a desperate **بائس** struggle on deck⁽³⁾, Nemo and his crew fought bravely with axes and harpoons. Ned Land, fearless as always, killed the monster. Only by great effort did they escape the danger.

What animal attacked the Nautilus, and who killed it?

Another time, the submarine became trapped⁽⁴⁾ beneath thick ice at the South Pole. With oxygen running low, the crew worked hard to break a path **ممر** to the surface. At the last moment, the Nautilus forced its way free, and the men breathed fresh air again.

Why was the crew in danger under the ice?

When warships **سفن حربية** appeared on the surface, Nemo attacked them without mercy⁽⁵⁾, sending them to the depths. Through such dangers, the passengers⁽⁶⁾ learned more about Nemo's character. He showed calm courage and remarkable leadership **قيادة رائعة**, yet also a cold indifference⁽⁷⁾ to human life.

How did Nemo act when he saw the warships?

Aronnax began to admire Nemo but at the same time fear⁽⁸⁾ him. The ocean, though beautiful, was also full of threats⁽⁹⁾ and dangers. For Aronnax it was a school of wonder; for Nemo it was a battlefield⁽¹⁰⁾; for Ned Land it remained a prison. The tension among them grew as the voyage continued.

What does the ocean mean to each character?

- (1) خطر
- (2) حبار
- (3) سطح المركب
- (4) محبوس/محتجز
- (5) رحمة
- (6) ركاب/مسافرون
- (7) تجاهل/لامبالاة
- (8) خوف
- (9) تهديدات
- (10) ساحة المعركة

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. What animal attacked the Nautilus?

ما الحيوان الذي هاجم النوتيلوس؟

- A giant squid attacked the Nautilus.

2. Who killed it?

من قتل الحبار العملاق؟

- Ned Land killed it.

3. Where did the Nautilus get trapped under ice?

أين علف النوتيلوس تحت الجليد؟

- The Nautilus got trapped under ice at the South Pole.

4. Why was the crew in danger under the ice?

لماذا كان الطاقم في خطر تحت الجليد؟

- Because the oxygen was running low.

5. What did Nemo do when he saw warships?

ماذا فعل نيمو عندما رأى سفنًا حربية؟

- He attacked the warships and sank them.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think Ned Land saw the ocean as a prison?

لماذا تعتقد أن نيد لاند رأى المحيط كسجن؟

- Because he felt trapped on the Nautilus, unable to return to the land and his freedom.

2. How did Nemo show both courage and cruelty?

كيف أظهر نيمو الشجاعة والقسوة معًا؟

- He was brave in battles, but didn't care about the enemy sailors' lives.

3. Why might Aronnax feel both admiration and fear toward Nemo?

لماذا قد يشعر أرونكس بالإعجاب والخوف من نيمو؟

- Because Nemo is smart and brave, but also cold and violent.

4. What does the ocean mean to each character?

ماذا يعنى المحيط لكل شخصية؟

- To Aronnax, it's a school; to Nemo, a battlefield; to Ned, a prison.

5. Do you think Nemo is a hero or a villain? Why?

هل تعتقد أن نيمو بطل أم شرير؟ ولماذا؟

- I think he is a hero because he helps his crew. And he can be a villain because he hurts others without mercy.

Chapter 4 Exercises



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. What was the main risk faced by Captain Nemo and his crew?
a) A dangerous sea monster b) Cold weather
c) A submarine breakdown d) Warships
2. What did the submarine do to escape the danger?
a) It dived deeper. b) It fought the monster.
c) It surfaced slowly. d) It broke a path to the surface.
3. How did Captain Nemo react to **يستجيب لـ** the situation?
a) He panicked. b) He showed calmness and leadership.
c) He escaped with his crew. d) He ignored the danger.
4. What does Ned Land's character show in this situation?
a) Fearless and strength b) Calm and leadership
c) Anger and impatience d) Confusion and fear
5. What was the most dangerous creature mentioned in the text?
a) A giant squid b) A shark c) A giant whale d) A giant octopus

2 Read and write True (T) or False (F):

1. Captain Nemo and his crew fought bravely against a giant squid. ()
2. The submarine was trapped under the ocean surface for days. ()
3. Captain Nemo showed fear and panic during the attack. ()
4. The crew used axes and harpoons to fight off the monster. ()
5. The submarine successfully escaped the danger without any loss of life. ()

3 Answer the following questions:

1. What was Captain Nemo's role in facing the dangers on the submarine?
.....
2. How did the crew manage to survive the attacks from the giant squid?
.....
3. How would you describe the relationship **العلاقة** between Captain Nemo and his crew?
.....
4. What can we learn from Captain Nemo's leadership in dangerous situations?
.....

4 Answer the following questions: Critical thinking questions:

1. If you were a crew member, how would you have reacted to the dangers described in the text?
2. Why do you think Captain Nemo was able to stay calm during such difficult situations?
3. Do you think Captain Nemo's calmness was a key factor in their survival? Why or why not?
4. If Captain Nemo had panicked, how might the crew's chances of survival have changed?

LESSON

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The submarine was by a giant squid.
a) attacked b) attracted c) survived d) struggled
- killed the monster without fear.
a) Aronnax b) Ned Land c) Nemo d) Conseil
- The crew broke a path to the surface because
a) the submarine became trapped b) the squid broke the submarine
c) the oxygen was running low d) Ned Land wanted to escape
- Nemo attacked the warships without
a) mercy b) thinking c) fight d) calm
- Nemo showed a cold to human life.
a) indifference b) admiration c) support d) hate
- The ocean was beautiful, but full of
a) harpoon b) giant c) threats d) passengers
- still felt like a prisoner on the ship.
a) Conseil b) Ned Land c) Aronnax d) Nemo

2 Answer the following questions:

- What did the crew do when the giant squid attacked the ship?
.....
- Where did the Nautilus become trapped?
.....
- What can we tell about Nemo's character when he fought warships?
.....
- How did Professor Aronnax feel Captain Nemo?
.....
- Why do you think Captain Nemo fought warships without mercy?
.....
- How would you feel if a warship attacked you if you were on the Nautilus?
.....
- If you were Professor Aronnax, would you still be determined to continue the journey? Why?
.....

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The Arctic fox uses its white fur to stay hidden in the snow through natural
 a) warmth b) darkness c) camouflage d) vegetation
- I found my pencil beneath the chair. The antonym of "beneath" is ".....".
 a) near b) under c) among d) above
- He doesn't like to people he doesn't know well.
 a) mix with b) drop to c) take turns d) rise to
- The President الرئيس has the power to make important decisions. "Power" can be an adjective by adding the suffix ".....".
 a) -ity b) -ful c) -er d) -or

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Polar bears live in the Arctic, where it is very cold and icy all year round. They have thick white fur and a layer of fat under their skin to stay warm. Their large, wide paws help them walk on snow and swim in icy water. Polar bears are excellent swimmers and can swim for many miles. They mostly eat seals, which they catch near holes in the ice. Because of climate change, the sea ice is melting earlier each year. This makes it harder for polar bears to find food. Scientists say polar bears could be in danger if the ice keeps disappearing. Mother polar bears take care of their cubs أشبال/صغار in snow holes during winter. Cubs stay with their mothers for about two years to learn how to hunt and survive.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- This passage is mostly about how polar bears
 a) play b) survive c) fight d) eat
- Polar bear cubs stay in during winter.
 a) trees b) caves c) snow holes d) ice water
- The underlined word "their" refers to the
 a) cubs b) seals c) mothers d) swimmers

B) Answer the following questions:

- What helps polar bears stay warm in freezing temperatures?
- Why is it becoming harder for polar bears to find food?
- What might happen to polar bears if the ice continues to melt?

The Story

3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Life on the Nautilus was full of
 a) risk b) attack c) fun d) monsters
2. The submarine became beneath thick ice at the South Pole.
 a) free b) released c) trapped d) hidden
3. To Nemo, the ocean was a
 a) battlefield b) school c) prison d) spaceship
4. Nemo and his crew used to kill the giant squid.
 a) knives b) sticks c) axes d) guns

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What did Ned Land do when the giant squid attacked the ship?
6. In your opinion, how did Conseil feel when they faced dangers in the ocean?

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. She said to me, "When is your birthday?" (asked)

2. "Does Nader speak Spanish?" (Dalia wondered)

3. My uncle said, "Are we meeting your friends here?" (wanted to know)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Jana asked me if I had seen her cat (yesterday).
2. Ali wondered who (is/that man).
3. My teacher asked whether we (finish) our project the day before.



مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Magdy said to Adel "Is your sister a good nurse ?" (asked)

2. Hala said "Why are you worried today?" (wondered)

3. "Why did you arrive late?" said Adel. (had arrived)

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

<50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Good job

85 : 100% Well done!



VOCABULARY

Lessons 5 & 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

adaptation strategies (n)	استراتيجيات التكيف	hibernation (n)	بيات شتوي
changing color (n)	تغير اللون	migration (n)	هجرة
growing thick fur (n)	نمو فراء كثيفة	storing fat (n)	تخزين الدهون

Animals حيوانات

Arctic wolf (n)	ذئب القطب الشمالي	desert kangaroo rat (n)	جرذ الكنغر الصحراوي
buffalo (n)	جاموس	Komodo dragon (n)	تنين كومودو
chameleon (n)	حرباء	leopard (n)	نمر ملقط/فهد
deer (n)	غزال		

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

average (n/adj)	متوسط/معدل	meat eater (n)	أكل لحوم
category (n)	فئة/تصنيف	muscle (n)	عضلة
cliff (n)	منحدر صخري	origin (n)	أصل/منشأ
detect (ed) (v)	يكشف عن/يتعرف على	plus (conj)	بالإضافة إلى
diet (n)	نظام غذائي	protection (n)	حماية
endangered (adj)	مهدد بالانقراض/بالخطر	reflect (ed) (v)	يعكس
features (n)	سمات/خصائص	reptile (n)	زاحف
fluffy (adj)	ناعم/منفوش	exhibit (n)	معرض
hollow (adj)	مجوف/ فارغ	snowy owl (n)	بومة ثلجية
keen hearing (n)	حاسة سمع قوية	status (n)	وضع/حالة
length (n)	طول	survivor (n)	ناجٍ
mammal (n)	حيوان ثديي	weight (n)	وزن

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

at heights	على ارتفاع	far away	على مسافة بعيدة
blend in with	يختلط/يندمج مع/يتناسب مع	keep air for	يحتفظ بالهواء لـ
covered in	مغطى بـ	make sense	مقبول/منطقي
fall through	يسقط خلال	up to	يصل إلى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
catch	يصاد/يمسك caught	caught
fall	يقع fell	fallen
keep	يحافظ على kept	kept

Read and complete with a word from the list:

endangered – migration – in – detect – to

- 1 Dogs can smells that humans cannot notice at all.
- 2 Many people work hard to protect animals around the world.
- 3 The ground was covered snow.
- 4 Did you know that helps animals find food and safer living conditions?

تطبيق الأمواء

جائزة 100% راجع إجاباتك من خلال تنزيل وطباعة نسختك من الإجابات الكاملة لكتاب الأمواء من داخل التطبيق

ارن التطبيق أو ادخل على موقع الأمواء
www.aiadwas.com



Reading Text

Pre-reading question:

- What do you already know about polar bears and how they live in cold places?

 Read the following conversation and identify the phrases in bold. **SB page 67**

Amazing Adaptations of Polar Bears

Hadeer Look at this polar bear exhibit! It's amazing how big they are.

Mona Yeah, and did you know their fur isn't actually white? Each hair is hollow⁽¹⁾ and reflects light.

Hadeer Really? That's so cool! I wonder⁽²⁾ why they adapted that way.

Mona Well, it helps them hide in snow and ice when they're hunting seals. Plus, the hollow hairs keep air for extra warmth⁽³⁾.

Hadeer That makes sense. What about their paws? They look huge.

Mona Those big paws⁽⁴⁾ help them walk on thin ice without falling through. It's like wearing snowshoes.

Hadeer Nature is incredible! I read that they can smell seals from really far away too.

Mona Exactly! Their sense of smell is about seven times stronger than a dog's. They can detect⁽⁵⁾ seals under three feet of snow.

Hadeer I had no idea! Polar bears are such amazing survivors⁽⁶⁾.



(1) مجوف

(2) يتساءل

(3) الدفء

(4) مخالب

(5) يكشف

(6) للنجاة

Post-reading questions:

SB

1 Why isn't a polar bear's fur really white, and how does it help them?

2 How do the polar bear's huge paws help them?

LESSONS

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The snow leopard is a/an animal because people hunt it.
 a) fluffy b) rocky c) water d) endangered
- Bears prepare for winter by fat, so they can live without eating for months.
 a) catching b) imagining c) storing d) weighing
- To means to discover or identify the existence وجود of something.
 a) think b) imagine c) ignore d) detect
- Many animals survive winter by using special adaptation like growing thick fur.
 a) muscles b) cliffs c) films d) strategies
- The hollow hairs of polar bears help them air for extra warmth in cold weather.
 a) keep b) make c) catch d) reflect
- The chameleon has the ability to adapt by color to hide from enemies.
 a) migration b) changing c) hibernation d) storing
- The polar bear's white fur helps it in with the snowy environment while hunting.
 a) fall b) catch c) blend d) make
- Some animals go into deep sleep called during cold months.
 a) migration b) hibernation c) description d) correction
- The Arctic fox has the ability to thick fur during winter to stay warm.
 a) grow b) migrate c) store d) change
- I have a pillow that helps me sleep very well at night.
 a) hard b) hollow c) rocky d) fluffy

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hollow – blend – keen – average – detect

Arctic animals use smart adaptation strategies to stay alive. The Arctic wolf has growing thick fur and hearing to find food far away. Its white coat helps it in with the snow while hunting. Scientists say the snowy owl can movement under snow using its sharp eyes. a school trip, a boy asked his teacher why polar bears have (4) hairs. She said hollow hairs help them keep air for extra warmth.

Expressions for talking about amazing adaptations

تعبيرات للحديث عن التكيفات المذهلة

Showing surprise

(إظهار الدهشة)

- Really? حقاً؟
- That's amazing! هذا مذهل!
- I had no ideal لم يكن لدى فكرة!
- I didn't know that! لم أكن أعرف ذلك!
- That's so cool! هذا رائع جداً!
- That makes sense. هذا منطقي.
- Nature is incredible! الطبيعة مذهلة!
- Exactly! بالضبط!
- Wow! واو!

Explaining adaptations

(شرح التكيفات)

- It helps them ... إنه يساعدهم على ...
- This allows them to ... هذا يسمح لهم بـ ...
- The reason is ... السبب هو ...
- That's because ... ذلك لأن ...
- It's like ... (for comparisons) إنه مثل ... (للمقارنة)

Asking for explanations

(طلب التفسيرات)

- Why do they ...? لماذا يفعلون ...؟
- How do they ...? كيف يفعلون ...؟
- I wonder why ... أتساءل لماذا ...؟
- What's the purpose of ...? ما الغرض من ...؟

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Salma and Suaad are talking about chameleons and why they change colors.

Salma : Look, Suaad! Do you know that chameleons can change their colors?

Suaad : Wow! That's so cool! Why do they do that?

Salma : (1).....

Suaad : (2)..... It's like wearing clothes the same color as the wall.

Salma : Nature is incredible! (3).....?

Suaad : That happens because their skin can reflect light.

Salma : Really? I had no idea! (4).....?

Suaad : Yes, that helps them stay safe in the wild.

Salma : (5).....! Animals are so smart.

Suaad : They sure are! I love learning about them.



How to write a fact file

كيفية كتابة ملف الحقائق

A fact file is a short report that gives important information about a topic-like an animal, a place, a person, or a machine-in a clear and organized way.

- ملف الحقائق هو تقرير قصير يقدم معلومات مهمة حول موضوع ما - مثل حيوان أو مكان أو شخص أو آلة - بطريقة واضحة ومنظمة.

Writing a Fact File

- Start with a title.
- Use sections: physical description, habitat, etc.
- Write short notes.
- Include interesting facts.
- Keep the language simple.
- Add a picture.

Snow Leopard Fact File

Physical Description:

(size, color, features)

الوصف المادي:

Snow leopards are large cats with thick, gray fur covered in dark spots.

They have long tails and powerful legs.

Habitat:

(place, climate)

البيئة/الموطن:

They live in mountain regions of Central Asia, at heights up to 18,000 feet.

Adaptations:

(For temperature, food, protection)

التكيفات:

Their wide paws work like snowshoes.

Thick fur keeps them warm.

Long tails help them balance on rocky cliffs.

Diet:

النظام الغذائي:

They hunt wild sheep, goats, and smaller animals.

Conservation Status:

حالة الحفظ:

Endangered - only about 4,000 left in the wild.

How to use a fact file to write a paragraph

كيفية استخدام ملف الحقائق في كتابة فقرة

"Snow Leopards"

Snow leopards are large, beautiful cats with thick gray fur covered in dark spots. They have long, furry tails and strong legs that help them move easily on mountains. These amazing animals live in the high mountain regions of Central Asia, sometimes as high as 18,000 feet. The weather there is very cold, but snow leopards are well adapted. Their thick fur keeps them warm, and their wide paws act like snowshoes, helping them walk on snow. Their long tails help them keep balance on rocky cliffs. Snow leopards eat wild sheep, goats, and small animals. Sadly, they are endangered, and only about 4,000 are left in the wild. People are working hard to protect them.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. An elephant is a large land that feeds its babies with milk.
a) reptile b) mammal c) bird d) insect
2. The Arctic wolf has hearing to find small animals moving under the snow.
a) keen b) physical c) average d) low
3. The chameleon's skin can color to match leaves, sand, or branches.
a) charge b) store c) reflect d) change
4. It doesn't make to spend all your money on one thing.
a) noise b) sense c) food d) trouble

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

stored – nation – hibernation – meat – reptile

Some animals live in very hard places, like deserts or high mountains. The desert kangaroo rat never drinks water. It gets water from seeds! It uses (1) fat in its body to survive long dry periods. In cold areas, bears use (2) to save energy all winter. At the zoo, a girl asked the keeper if the Komodo dragon was a (3) eater. He said it was, and that this powerful (4) can weigh up to 70 kilograms.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The shop assistant said to me, "What do you want to buy?" (asked)
.....
2. Tamer said, "Will you visit me tomorrow?" (if I would)
.....
3. "Have you received the new suit?" said Basim. (inquired)
.....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My sister asked me if I (like) chocolate ice cream.
2. Hatem wondered what time the movie (start) that evening.
3. My friend asked whether I (see) his red ball two days before.

5 Complete the following dialog:

Hadeer and Mona are talking about polar bears.

Hadeer : Look at the polar bear! It is so big.

Mona : (1)....., and did you know their fur is not really white?

Hadeer : (2).....? I wonder why they adapted that way.

Mona : That is because each hair is hollow.

Hadeer : (3).....! Does it help them hide?

Mona : Yes, it does. It helps them hide in snow when they hunt.

Hadeer : (4).....?

Mona : Because big paws help them walk on ice without falling.

Hadeer : Wow! Can they smell seals far away?

Mona : (5)..... . They can find seals under the snow.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Adaptation strategies"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sara asked if her brother (can/ swim) in the sea last summer.
2. The tourist asked how far it (be) to the Pyramids then.
3. My dad asked me if I (finish) my lunch before going to the club.
4. The coach asked the players if they (feel) tired after the match.

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

Good Study

50 : 64% Practice more

Good Study

85 : 100% Well done!

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
unbelievable	لا يصدق	keep secret	يبقى سرًا
raptor	طائر جارح	release	يطلق
adaptable	قابل للتكيف	capital	عاصمة

2 Comprehension strategies:

• How to make inferences:

كيفية الاستنتاج من القطعة:

Explanation:

Inference means understanding something that the writer doesn't say directly.

الاستنتاج يعني فهم شيء لم يذكره الكاتب صراحة ولكن يمكنك معرفته من السياق.

Steps:

1. Read the question carefully.

اقرأ السؤال بعناية.

2. Look for clues in the text.

ابحث عن أدلة في النص.

3. Use your background knowledge and logic.

استخدم معرفتك العامة ومنطقك.

FOR EXAMPLE:

It was a cold, rainy morning. Ali looked out the window and sighed. "No school today," he said as he saw the flooded street. He picked up his phone to call his friends and ask them to stay home.

- We can infer that Ali's school

a) was closed because of rain

b) started late

c) was near his house

d) was very big

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Too much heat during the day and freezing cold weather at night create harsh conditions.

☐

- الحرارة الشديدة أثناء النهار والبرد القارس في الليل تخلف ظروفًا قاسية.

☐

- المطر الغزير أثناء النهار والرياح القوية في الليل تخلف ظروفًا قاسية.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- تعتبر الدببة القطبية الأفضل في البقاء على قيد الحياة في القطب الشمالي.

☐

Polar bears are the best at surviving in the Arctic.

☐

Polar bears are the best at living in the desert.

Vocabulary

absorb (ed)	يمتص/ يستوعب
adaptation	تكيف/ تَأَقْلُم
Arctic fox	الثعلب القطبي
camouflage	التقوية/ التخفي
changing color	تغيير اللون
conservation	حماية/ محافظة
demonstrate (d)	يوضح/ يعرف
feathers	ريش الطيور
fennec fox	ثعلب الفتة/ الصحراء
growing thick fur	نمو فراء كثيفة
harsh	قاسٍ/ شديد
migration	هجرة
mile	ميل (وحدة قياس مسافة)
paw	مخالب الحيوان
remarkable	رائع/ ملحوظ
sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
scarce	نادر/ شحيح
snowshoes	أحذية الثلج
storing fat	تخزين الدهون
temperature	درجة الحرارة
vegetation	نباتات/ غطاء نباتي
warmth	الدفء

Language

Reported Questions

A reported question is when you tell someone what another person asked, but you are not quoting their exact words.

Mona asked me, "Do you speak English?"

- Mona asked me if I spoke English.

Soha said, "What are you doing now?"

- Soha asked what I was doing then.

Adel said, "When will you return?"

- Adel asked when I would return.

Direct	Indirect
tomorrow	last ...
yesterday	ago
tonight	this
now	these
today	here
	there

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
I	me	him	her
You	you	me	us
We	us	them	our

A. Speaking

Expressions for talking about amazing adaptations

Showing surprise (إظهار الدهشة):

Really?

That's amazing!

I had no idea!

Wow, I didn't know that!

That's so cool! - That makes sense.

Explaining adaptations (شرح التكيفات):

It helps them ...

This allows them to ...

That's because ...

Asking for explanations (طلب التفسيرات):

Why do they ...? How do they ...?

I wonder why ...

B. Writing

Animals Adaptation

Animals adapt to their environment to stay alive. Each animal has special features that help it survive. For example, camels can live in the hot desert because they store water in their bodies. Polar bears have thick fur and fat to keep them warm in the cold Arctic. Some birds fly south in winter to find food. Chameleons can change their color to hide from enemies. Fish have gills to breathe underwater. These adaptations help animals find food, stay safe, and protect themselves from danger. Without adaptation, many animals could not survive in their habitats.



Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Lions are that hunt other animals for food.
a) predators b) farmers c) plants d) travelers
- Eating healthy food helps keep our strong.
a) muscles b) houses c) work d) environment
- Polar bears to the cold by growing thick fur.
a) adapt b) dance c) cry d) melt
- The forest is so that little sunlight reaches the ground.
a) empty b) dark c) thick d) light
- A chameleon uses to hide from danger.
a) running b) camouflage c) music d) laughing



Language

2 Use the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- She asked me where I (go) the night before.
- The teacher asked us if we (understand) the lesson.
- He (say) his friend if he could lend him some money.
- I asked him where he (spend) his weekend.
- They wondered when he (reply) to their messages.



Writing

3 Complete the Fact File below using information from the passage.

FACT FILE: KOMODO DRAGON

- Name :
- Category :
- Habitat / Origin :
- Average Length :
- Weight :
- Diet :



Reading

1 Choose the word or phrase that best fits the context.

- During the test, you must focus reading each question carefully.
a) at b) on c) about d) down
- We bought tickets to attend a piano at the city hall.
a) concert b) device c) movement d) discovery
- My brother is fascinated by space and planets. The antonym of "fascinated" is ".....".
a) severe b) harsh c) bored d) interesting
- The camel can fat in its hump.
a) develop b) locate c) store d) create

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

hibernate – focuses – discoveries – to – in

In the countryside, wildlife experts watch animals like foxes and deer. They are fascinated by how these creatures adapt (1) the different seasons. One researcher asked whether animals (2) because of cold or food. They collect data using cameras and sensors أجهزة استشعار. Their current research (3) on how human activity affects wildlife. Some results are annoying—like plastic in animal stomachs. But their work leads to amazing (4)

3 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Penguins are birds that cannot fly. They live in cold places like Antarctica. Penguins have thick feathers that keep them warm in freezing water. They huddle يتجمع together in groups to share warmth. Their wings are shaped like fins to help them swim fast. Penguins eat fish, squid, and other small sea animals. They are very good at living in cold water and ice. Penguins take care of each other in groups. These adaptations help them survive in extreme cold. People study penguins to learn how animals adapt to cold environments. Penguins are social, strong, and smart. Their adaptations show how animals can live safely in harsh conditions like Antarctica. Penguins are amazing examples of survival in cold places.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The wings of a penguin are shaped like fins to help them
a) fly high in the sky b) swim fast in the water
c) build nests in the snow d) catch small insects
2. What do penguins eat?
a) Grass and seeds. b) Berries and leaves.
c) Fish, squid, and small sea animals. d) Small land mammals.
3. The underlined word "harsh" has the same meaning as
a) difficult b) huge
c) small d) easy

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What is the main idea of the passage?
.....

5. How do penguins survive in freezing places?
.....

6. From the passage, how do you know that the penguin is a social bird?
.....



The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ned Land killed the giant squid using a
a) harpoon b) gun c) knife d) net
2. The Nautilus got stuck under ice at the South Pole.
a) fast b) thin c) thick d) easy
3. The ocean was a to Aronnax.
a) school of wonder b) prison
c) battlefield d) a huge submarine
4. Nemo showed courage and remarkable
a) confusion b) leadership c) weakness d) friendship

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why was the crew in great danger when the Nautilus was under the ice?
.....

6. How would you react if a giant squid attacked the ship you're on?
.....



Writing

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Dalia said to me, "What did you bring from Aswan?" asked

.....

2. Sagda said to Rami, "Have you done the task alone?" asked

.....

3. Fadi said, "Which shirt do you like most?" asked

.....

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Samar asked me where I (live).

2. Tamer wondered if Zeina (can) swim.

3. They (surprised) me when I had arrived.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ali is explaining that adaptations help animals survive.

Mai : How do adaptations help animals?

Ali : (1)

Mai : Can you give an example?

Ali : (2) Polar bears have thick fur to stay warm in the cold.

Mai : Wow! What about the camel?

Ali : (3)

Mai : Fat in its hump! (4) ?

Ali : Yes, all animals have adaptations.

Mai : (5) ?

Ali : A chameleon can change its color to hide from danger.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"An animal you think has the best adaptation"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 11

STORIES ON THE MOVE



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- Identify the main idea in a narrative text.
- Correctly identify the main challenge, the turning point in the story, and the final realization of the narrator.

Listening

- Correctly identify specific facts (e.g., activity, location, feeling) mentioned in a short travel narrative audio.

Speaking

- Share a personal travel experience.

- Describe the setting, a turning point/challenge, and the final outcome.

- Use appropriate past narrative tenses.

Language

- Correctly use the appropriate past tense (Simple, or Perfect) to establish a clear timeline.

Writing

- Write a cohesive travel narrative that describes a personal trip.
- Use varied past tenses (simple, perfect) to sequence events logically.

VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

brehtaking (adj)	يخطف الأنفاس/ مذهل	pack (ed) (v)	يُحزم/يجمع (الأغراض)
challenging (adj)	صعب/مُتحدِّ	scenery (n)	منظر طبيعي
hike (d) (v/n)	يذهب للنزهة مشى/نزهة مشى على الأقدام	slippery (adj)	زلق/سهل الانزلاق
lifelong (adj)	مدى الحياة	unforgettable (adj)	لا ينسى

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

completely (adv)	تماماً/كلياً	path (n)	ممر/طريق ضيق
crystal-clear (adj)	صافٍ كالكريستال	positive (adj)	إيجابي
dark clouds (n)	غيوم داكنة/سحب داكنة	rare (adj)	نادر
embarrassed (adj)	محرج	slide (d) (v/n)	ينزلق/انزلاق
experience (n)	تجربة (حياتية)	slip (ped) (v)	ينزلق
flight (n)	رحلة جوية	smooth (adj)	ناعم/أملس
heavy rain (n)	مطر غزير/أمطار شديدة	suddenly (adv)	فجأة/على نحو مفاجئ
hill (n)	تل/هضبة	trail (n)	مسار/درب
impressive (adj)	مبهز/رائع	travel tale (n)	حكاية عن السفر
lightweight (adj)	خفيف الوزن	unexpected (adj)	غير متوقع
original (adj)	أصلي	waterfall (n)	شلال

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

catch in a situation	يجد نفسه في موقف	prepare for	يستعد/يُحضّر لـ
gather overhead	تتجمع في السماء	run off with	يهرب/يُفر بـ
go camping	يذهب للتخييم	scare ... away	يخيف ... فيبتعد
go hiking	يذهب في نزهة مشيًا على الأقدام	set up the tent	ينصب الخيمة
make friends	يكون صداقات	take a trail	يتخذ مساراً
on a camping trip	في رحلة تخييم	take shelter	يلجأ إلى مأوى
pour down	يهطل (المطر) بغزارة	turn into	يتحول إلى

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية: (n) = noun (adj) = adjective (prep) = preposition (v) = verb (adv) = adverb (conj) = conjunction

Read and complete with a word from the list:

embarrassed – scenery – hike – go

- 1 She felt very when she forgot her money.
- 2 We will camping in the mountains this weekend.
- 3 The countryside has wonderful

VOCABULARY

Lesson 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

column (n)	عمود	safari (n)	رحلة سفاري (صيد/استكشاف)
destination (n)	مكان/وجهة الوصول	snorkeling (n)	الفوص بأنبوب التنفس
hospitality (n)	كرم الضيافة	tomb (n)	قبر/مقبرة/ضريح

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

book (ed) (v)	يحجز	reserve (d) (v)	يحجز
bury (y-ied) (v)	يدفن	seaside (n)	شاطئ البحر
flood (ed) (v/n)	يفيض/فيضان	stop (n)	موقف (مواصلات)
fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ	structure (n)	بناء/تركيب
passport (n)	جواز سفر	temple (n)	معبد
peace (n)	سلام	tour guide (n)	مرشد سياحي
reschedule (d) (v)	يعيد تحديد الموعد	treatment (n)	علاج/معاملة

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

do a task	يؤدي مهمة	lead to	يؤدي إلى
go snorkeling	يذهب للفوص	take so long	يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً
call a taxi	يطلب سيارة أجرة	in the distance	على بعد
miss a flight	يفوته موعد الطائرة	make a trip	يقوم برحلة
turn out	يتبين/يتضح	on a felucca	في قارب فلوكة

Read and complete with a word from the list:

call – off – to – destination

- 1 The most popular tourist is usually the beach.
- 2 Please, a taxi for me; I'm late for school.
- 3 Cutting down too many trees may lead serious environmental problems.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple		Past participle
set up	يؤسس	set up		set up
steal	يسرق	stole		stolen

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
brehtaking	يخطف الأنفاس/مذهل	amazing	مذهل	usual/ordinary	معتاد
challenging	صعب/مُتَحَدِّ	difficult/hard	صعب	easy	سهل
remote	باعد/بعيد	far	بعيد	near	قريب
smooth	ناعم/أملس	flat	مسطح	rough	خشن

Prefixes and Suffixes

البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefix/Suffix	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
comfort (n/v)	راحة/يريح	-able	تحول إلى صفة	comfortable (adj)	مريح
expected (adj)	متوقع	un-	تعطى العكس	unexpected (adj)	غير متوقع
possible (adj)	ممکن	im-		impossible (adj)	مستحيل
schedule (v)	يحدد موعدًا	re-	تعطى معنى الإعادة	reschedule (v)	يُعيد تحديد الموعد
treat (v)	يعالج/يعامل	-ment	تحول إلى اسم	treatment (n)	علاج/معاملة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The doctor will treat his patient with care. We add the suffix "....." to form the noun of "treat".
a) -or b) -er c) -ly d) -ment
- They live in a remote village. The antonym of "remote" is ".....".
a) far b) near
c) hard d) easy
- Someone my bike from outside the school.
a) set up b) stole
c) reserved d) explained

- 1 Have you ever been on a camping trip? Where did you go?
- 2 What kind of problems can happen when people go hiking or camping?

 Read the following text. Where did the writer's family take shelter? **SB page 73**

Last summer, my family planned a simple camping trip⁽¹¹⁾ to Wadi El-Rayan in Fayoum, Egypt. We had booked a comfortable place and packed all the necessary things. However, our journey turned into an unforgettable⁽¹²⁾ adventure that we still talk about today.

On the second day, we decided to take a challenging hiking trail to see a remote **waterfall**⁽³⁾. The **breathtaking**⁽⁴⁾ scenery along the path was absolutely amazing - golden desert hills, crystal-clear lakes, and rare plants and birds everywhere. We felt completely relaxed.

Suddenly, dark clouds **gathered**⁽⁵⁾ overhead, and heavy rain started **pouring down**⁽⁶⁾. We had ignored the weather and weren't prepared for such **conditions**⁽⁷⁾. Our lightweight jackets became very wet within minutes. The path became **slippery**⁽⁸⁾ and dangerous, so we took shelter under some large rocks.

While waiting for the storm to pass, we met another family who had been caught in the same situation. They shared their extra food and warm blankets⁽⁹⁾ with us. We spent hours talking, laughing, and sharing travel stories. When the rain finally stopped, we had made new lifelong⁽¹⁰⁾ friends. That unexpected experience turned our ordinary camping trip into an unusual one.

Post-reading questions:

Read the text again and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

- 1** The family's original plan was
a) a long flight **b)** a simple camping trip
c) visiting friends
- 2** made their trip unforgettable.
a) The beautiful weather **b)** The unexpected storm
c) Visiting new places
- 3** When the weather changed, they
a) went home early **b)** took shelter
c) continued hiking

- (1) رحلة التخييم (2) لا ينسى (3) شلال (4) مذهب (5) تجمعت (6) ينهمر (7) ظروف (8) زلف/سجل الانزلاف (9) بطاطين (10) طول الحياة

Listening Text



Pre-listening question:

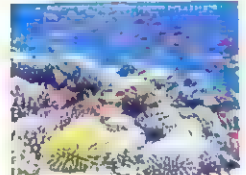
- Why do people move to different places?

Listen to the following stories, and match the words to their meanings.

SB page 76

Story 1 — Adventure in Dahab

Last winter, Sophie, a tourist from France, visited Dahab on the Red Sea. She had dreamed of visiting Egypt before she finally made the trip. Before arriving in Dahab, she had read about its beauty and the **hospitality** of its people. She loved the relaxing atmosphere of the small town and spent her mornings walking along the seaside. After exploring the beaches, she went **snorkeling** at the Blue Hole, where she saw colorful fish and coral reefs. On another day, she joined a desert safari and enjoyed **Bedouin tea** under the stars. After the trip, Sophie said that Dahab had been the perfect mix of **adventure** and peace, and she hoped to return soon.



Story 2 — Exploring Luxor and Aswan

John, an American traveler, spent a week exploring **southern Egypt**. He had long wanted to visit the country before he finally made the trip. Before arriving in Luxor, he had read about its ancient temples and tombs. In Luxor, he visited the **Valley of the Kings** and walked inside tombs that had been decorated with colorful paintings thousands of years earlier. He also admired the great **Karnak Temple** with its tall columns. After John had visited Luxor, he sailed on a felucca boat along the Nile River to Aswan. There, he enjoyed the calm waters and visited the famous **Philae Temple**, which had been moved to a new island to protect it from flooding. After the trip, John said that southern Egypt had been even more amazing than he had imagined, and he hoped to return one day.

(1) كرم الصياغة

(2) الفوص باتيوب

(3) شاي بدوي

(4) مغامرة

(5) حلوب مصر

(6) وادي الملوك

(7) معبد الكرنك

(8) معبد فيلة

Post-listening questions:

- 1 How did Sophie describe Dahab?
- 2 What impressed John most in Luxor?

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات

breathtaking يخطف الأنفاس/مذهل	very beautiful, impressive ⁽¹⁾ , or surprising	(1) رائع/مذهل
challenging صعب/مُتَّحِدٌ	difficult in a way that tests your abilities and skills	
columns أعمدة	large stone structures in temples or buildings	
hospitality كرم الضيافة	warm and friendly treatment ⁽²⁾ to guests and visitors	(2) معاملة
safari رحلة سفاري	a trip into the desert to explore and enjoy nature	
slippery زلق/قابل للانزلاق	smooth ⁽³⁾ and hard to stand on because you might slide	(3) ناعم
snorkeling الغوص بأنبوب تنفس	swimming near the surface of the sea using a mask to see underwater	
tombs قبور/مقابر	places where the dead ⁽⁴⁾ are buried, often underground	(4) الأموات
unforgettable لا ينسى	impossible to forget	

1 Word forms

(Noun) الاسم	(Adjective) الصفة	(Verb) الفعل
comfort راحة	comfortable مريح	comfort يُريح/يُواسي
challenge تحدي	challenging صعب	challenge يتحدى
preparation إعداد	prepared معد	prepare يحضر/يعد
connection اتصال	connected مُتَّصِل	connect يتصل/يربط

2 explore (مكتشف (مكانًا موجودًا من قبل) / discover (مكتشف (مكتشفًا معروفًا بغرض الدراسة) / invent (مكتشف (شيئًا لأول مرة)

- Astronauts **explore** outer space.
- Columbus **discovered** America.
- The telephone was **invented** by Alexander Graham Bell.

3 go + v + ing (يذهب لممارسة نشاط)

- go camping يذهب للغوص / go hiking يذهب في نزهة مشي / go snorkeling يذهب للتخييم

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Last summer, we went in the Red Sea.
a) swim b) at swimming c) to swimming d) swimming
- Thomas Edison the electric lamp.
a) discovered b) invented c) explored d) built
- Climbing Mount Sinai was a real, but we did it!
a) challenge b) challenging c) challenged d) challenger

LESSON

7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We always extra snacks when we go on a long hike in the hills.
a) turn b) slide c) pack d) laugh
- The floor was very after someone dropped water, so we walked carefully.
a) relaxing b) slippery c) safe d) crowded
- Reading books has been a/an habit that helps her learn something new every day.
a) embarrassed b) excited c) lifelong d) slippery
- Meeting the writer of this book was a/an moment he'll talk about for years.
a) smooth b) clean c) challenging d) unforgettable
- The village was so remote that it took hours to reach by car. It wasn't
a) near b) far c) away d) distant
- The team performed better than anyone had expected. We form the antonym of "expected" by adding the prefix ".....".
a) pre- b) dis- c) un- d) re-
- The frog started to into the water when it saw the mouse.
a) fly b) feel c) slide d) pour
- You should take when it's too hot.
a) shelter b) table c) trip d) team
- This bag is very, so I can carry it easily.
a) connected b) impossible c) lightweight d) original
- We need to prepare the camping trip by packing food, water, and warm clothes.
a) to b) for c) on d) in

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: **S8** (modified)

challenging – together – breathtaking – unexpected – slipped

Last summer, my family went on a camping trip in the forest. The place was (1), with tall green trees. Setting up the tent was a bit (2), but we were excited. While enjoying our picnic, something (3) happened. A hungry monkey suddenly appeared and tried to steal fruit from our basket. I jumped to scare it away, but I (4) and fell, which made everyone laugh. The monkey ran off with an apple, and I felt very embarrassed.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Cairo was our final after traveling through several cities in Egypt.
 a) dream b) destination c) peace d) passport
2. We went near the Red Sea and saw colorful fish and coral reefs.
 a) reserving b) stealing c) building d) snorkeling
3. We were stuck in traffic and almost our flight to Paris.
 a) caught b) missed c) took d) booked
4. "....." are places where the dead are buried, often underground.
 a) Playgrounds b) Tombs c) Mountains d) Hills
5. Good includes offering food, smiles, and a comfortable place to rest.
 a) column b) safari c) seaside d) hospitality
6. You must bring your when you travel outside the country.
 a) passport b) report c) mark d) mask
7. Can we reschedule the interview for another time?
 The prefix "re-" in "reschedule" means
 a) never b) less c) again d) not
8. I will two tickets for the concert online tonight.
 a) bring b) reserve c) draw d) shout
9. People usually their pets in the garden when they die.
 a) catch b) impress c) bury d) steal
10. Relaxing a felucca boat is a classic Cairo experience.
 a) on b) in c) at d) of

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tour – booked – felucca – path – impressed

Karim wanted to forget his worries. He (1) a safari in the desert near Giza. He rode on a (2) boat at sunset the night before. He had already buried his old fears deep inside, like treasures in a tomb. The stars above seemed closer than ever. His (3) guide told stories about the past that (4) him. The journey wasn't just about places. It was about letting go. And in that silence, he found a new beginning.

Past Tenses الأزمنة الماضية

Past Simple & Past Perfect

1. The Past Simple Tense

We use the past tense to express:

يستخدم الماضي البسيط ليعبر عن:

1. Actions that started and ended in the past.

أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

e.g. We **watched** TV last night.

2. The main events of a story in chronological order.

الأحداث الرئيسية في القصة بالترتيب الزمني.

e.g. He **got up**, **opened** the door, and **left**.

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject + فاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

- الأفعال المنتظمة (regular) يضاف (ed أو d أو ied).

e.g. The small boy **climbed** the tree yesterday.My grandparents **lived** in the countryside years ago.

- التصريف الثاني للأفعال غير المنتظمة (irregular) يحفظ كما هو.

e.g. I **ran** to school yesterday because I **was** late.

Negative النفي

Subject + فاعل + didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

e.g. My mom **didn't** **cook** yesterday because she was sick.

Subject + فاعل + wasn't/weren't + صفة/اسم/حرف جر

e.g. Ali **wasn't** at school last week.The girls **weren't** happy yesterday.

Interrogative السؤال

(Q. Word) + did + subject + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

e.g. **Did** you see the last movie? When **did** your mom **cook** your last meal?

(Q. Word) + was/were + subject + صفة/اسم/حرف جر ...?

e.g. Why **were** you **sad** last evening?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday أمس /last (وقت الماضي/المدة + ago منذ /in سنة ماضية + first/أولا

then /when بعد ذلك /after that ثم

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Last week, my grandpa me a present.

SB

a) give b) gives c) gave d) given

2. They go to the beach last Friday because of the heavy rain.

a) wasn't b) hadn't c) didn't d) weren't

3. you see the new movie when you came out last week?

a) Did b) Do c) Have d) Had

4. The children happy when they lost the competition yesterday.

a) wasn't b) weren't c) didn't d) don't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Last summer, I (plan) a perfect beach vacation in Hawaii.

SB

2. I (miss) my flight and had to reschedule everything.

SB

3. They (not/go) to the museum because it was closed last Sunday.

4. Did you (saw) the new movie last week?

5. Salma (forget) to bring her camera on the trip last Friday.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Ali plays football every afternoon. (yesterday)

.....

2. Do you watch cartoons on the weekend? (last weekend)

.....

3. Why was your sister sad? (feel)

.....

4. Does your brother play video games? (last night)

.....

5. I visited my uncle last Friday. (When...?)

.....

6. I visited London three years ago. (in)

.....

It is used to go back even further in time, describing an event that happened before the main events of the story. It provides the order of actions in the past.

يستخدم الماضي التام للعودة إلى وقت أقدم في الماضي، لوصف فعل حدث قبل الأحداث الرئيسية في القصة. فهو يوضح ترتيب الأفعال في الماضي. (الحدث الأول ماضٍ تام أما الحدث الثاني فهو ماضٍ بسيط)

e.g. After Salma **had finished** packing, she **called** a taxi.

Form

التكوين

A) Affirmative: الإثبات

... التصريف الثالث للفعل (P.P.) + **had** + الفاعل Subject

e.g. Nancy **had written** her first poem by the time she was twelve.

B) Negative: النفي

... التصريف الثالث للفعل (P.P.) + **hadn't** + الفاعل Subject

e.g. They **hadn't met** each other before the party.

Question

السؤال

A) Yes/No question: السؤال بـ «هل»

?التصريف الثالث للفعل (P.P.) + **Had** + subject الفاعل

e.g. A: **Had** you ever visited the museum before?

B: Yes, I had.

B: No, I hadn't.

B) Wh- question: السؤال بأداة استفهام

?التصريف الثالث للفعل (P.P.) + **had** + subject الفاعل + أداة استفهام Q. Word

e.g. A: What **had** they done before I arrived?

B: They **had finished** their homework.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

بحلول وقت ما by the time / قبل لأن / because / بمجرد أن as soon as / بعد after

أبداً / never / بالفعل already / بحلول ذلك الوقت by then / بحلول that



Complete the sentence with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- My father had (visit) the museum by five p.m. yesterday.

- الإجابة الصحيحة هي **visited** لوجود **had** التي يتبعها التصريف الثالث للفعل.

استخدام هذه الروابط مع الماضي التام والماضي البسيط:

Subject فاعل + past simple ماضي بسيط
حدث ثانٍ



subject فاعل + past perfect ماضي تام
حدث أول

•g. Maged was hungry **because** he **hadn't eaten** lunch.

2



subject فاعل + past perfect ماضي تام
حدث أول

subject فاعل + past simple ماضي بسيط
حدث ثانٍ

•g. **After** my mum **had heard** the news, she **phoned** me.

Subject فاعل + past simple ماضي بسيط
حدث ثانٍ



subject فاعل + past perfect ماضي تام
حدث أول

•g. My sister **helped** my mother in the kitchen **after** she **had cleaned** her room.

3



subject فاعل + past simple ماضي بسيط
حدث ثانٍ

subject فاعل + past perfect ماضي تام
حدث أول

•g. **Before** the train **arrived**, we **had waited** for an hour.

Subject فاعل + past perfect ماضي تام
حدث أول



subject فاعل + past simple ماضي بسيط
حدث ثانٍ

•g. Mariam **had cooked** lunch **before** her husband **arrived**.

4

Subject فاعل + past simple (negative) ماضي بسيط منفي (حدث ثانٍ)



subject فاعل + past perfect ماضي تام
حدث أول

•g. I **didn't play** video games **until** I **had finished** my homework.



After + (v + ing), + subject + past simple

e.g. After reading the book, he wrote a summary.

After cooking the dinner, she set the table.

Before + (v + ing), subject + had + P.P.

e.g. Before eating lunch, I had finished my homework.

Before traveling to Paris, we had packed our bags.

لا بد أن يكون الفاعل في الجملتين (الحدثين) واحدًا لاستخدام هذه القاعدة.



We can use the past simple after 'after' when there are three past actions in the sentence.

من الممكن استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط بعد **after** في حالة وجود ثلاثة أحداث في الماضي في نفس الجملة، فيتم وضع أقدم حدث في زمن الماضي التام.

e.g. After/When I reached the office, I remembered that I had left my mobile at home.



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1 Nader hurt his leg after he (play) football.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (had played) لأن **after** يتبعها الماضي التام (had + PP).

2 By the time I (finish) printing, I had used all the paper in the box.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (finished) لأن (By the time) يتبعها ماضٍ البسيط.

3 After (draw) a nice picture, I painted it.

- الإجابة الصحيحة (drawing) لأن الجملة بعد (After) لا تحتوي على فاعل، فنضع الفعل في صيغة الـ gerund.

تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً

عمل كودك الشخصي المودود في الغلاف الداخلي في نهاية الكتاب واستخدام تطبيق الأضواء مجاناً.

أو ادخل على موقع الأضواء

www.aladwaa.com

Practice

LANGUAGE (2)

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding ▲ Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- ▶ 1. Bassem watched TV after he his homework. SB
 a) did b) does c) had done d) was doing
2. Before the train, we had booked our tickets. SB
 a) arrives b) arrived c) has arrived d) had arrived
3. I him before he came to our school. SB
 a) don't meet b) haven't met c) meet d) had met
4. By the time I reached the bus stop, the bus already left.
 a) has b) had c) was d) have

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- ▶ 1. I discovered that I (forget) my passport at home. SB
2. The tour guide (explain) that the museum had closed early. SB
3. After she (finished) packing, she called a taxi. SB
4. I (not/send) the report until I had revised it.
5. Before (read) the book, my father had watched a movie.
6. My grandfather (has lived) in Alexandria for twenty years before 2010.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- ▶ 1. They prepared dinner. Then, the guests arrived. (Before)

2. First, they cleaned the room. Then, they went to school. (As soon as)

3. After my father had had lunch, he had some rest. (Before)

4. My sister came first in the race. She trained very well. (because)

5. Before returning home, Rami had bought the family needs. (until)

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I found the book after I for two hours.
a) search b) searching c) searched d) had searched
- We had visited Rome before we to London.
a) travel b) traveled c) had traveled d) have traveled
- The train the station before we arrived there last night.
a) leaves b) left c) has left d) had left
- When I home, my brother had already finished his homework.
a) got b) had got c) get d) was getting

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- After we had (have) dinner, we went for a walk.
- By 8 p.m. last night, I (finish) all my homework and started watching TV.
- My sister (be) sad because she had failed the test.
- I (not/ go) to the club until I'd done my work.
- What (you do) before you went to Alexandria?
- After (visit) the museum, they went downtown to have lunch.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- She returned home after she had attended the meeting. (By the time)
.....
- I didn't do the homework until I had had lunch. (After)
.....
- I had returned home before my brothers prepared for the party. (As soon as)
.....
- Before Hatim left the company, he had typed the final report. (leaving)
.....
- Rami received the new clothes after he had tried them on. (until)
.....

لحل المزيد من التمارين، قم بإجابة ال Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.

SKILLS Speaking

An unexpected adventure رحلة مغامرات غير متوقعة



Have you ever had an unforgettable trip? What happened?
هل سبق أن قمت برحلة لا تُنسى؟ ماذا حدث؟

Yes, I did. I saw beautiful lakes and waterfalls in the desert.
نعم، لقد قمت بها، رأينا بحيرات جميلة وشلالات في الصحراء.

What was the most unforgettable trip you had ever had?
ماذا كانت أكثر رحلة لا تُنسى قمت بها؟

It was when we decided to visit Wadi El-Rayan. كانت عندما قررنا زيارة وادي الريان.

Have you ever faced a challenging situation while traveling?
هل واجهت موقفًا صعبًا أثناء السفر؟

Yes, once our car broke down in the desert. نعم، مرة تعطلت سيارتنا في الصحراء.

Did you meet new people during a trip?
هل قابلت أشخاصًا جددًا خلال رحلة؟

Yes, we met some friendly local families. نعم، قابلنا بعض العائلات المحلية الودودة.

How did it make you feel?
كيف جعلك ذلك تشعر؟

It made me feel happy and welcome. جعلني أشعر بالسعادة والترحاب.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding Applying ▲ Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating

Complete the following dialog:

Karim is telling Yara about his visit to the Pyramids with his dad.

Yara : Where did you go last holiday?

Karim: (1).....

Yara : Really? Were there many people?

Karim: (2)..... We got great photos.

Yara : (3).....?

Karim: No, we didn't go inside the Pyramid.

Yara : (4).....?

Karim: Yes, it was our first time.

Yara : Did you buy a souvenir?

Karim: (5)..... I got a tiny pyramid keychain سلسلة مفاتيح.

SKILLS



How to write about "An unexpected adventure you never forget"

كيفيه الكتابة عن مغامرة غير متوقعة لن تنساها أبدا



Where and when?

أين ومتى؟

I went to Wadi El-Rayan with my family last summer.



What happened?

ماذا حدث؟

Our car stopped in the desert. We had no phone signal.



Who helped? How?

من ساعد؟ كيف؟

A kind local man stopped and helped us. He gave us water and called a mechanic.

an adventure you never forget



What did you feel?

بماذا شعرت؟

At first, I was scared. Later, I felt happy and thankful.



What did you learn?

ماذا تعلمت؟

Always carry water and a map. Kind people are everywhere!

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"An adventure to Wadi El-Rayan"

Last summer, my family and I went to Wadi El-Rayan. The sun was shining and everything seemed perfect. But suddenly, our car stopped in the middle of the desert. We had no phone signal and felt worried. After a while, a kind man in a truck stopped to help us. He gave us cold water and called a mechanic. At first, I was scared, but his kindness made me feel safe. We waited under a tree and watched the desert birds. In the end, the car was fixed, and we continued our trip. This small problem became an unforgettable adventure. I learned that help can come from unexpected places and that kindness matters.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The dancer gave a breathtaking performance that everyone was amazed.
"....." is an antonym for "breathtaking".
a) Necessary b) Amazing c) Challenging d) Usual
- The train ride through the mountains offered amazing of the forests, rivers, and valleys.
a) storms b) deserts c) scenery d) trails
- The ancient temple had a tall stone supporting its roof.
a) passport b) column c) destination d) mask
- The guide explained how Egyptians built to honor their dead.
a) tombs b) places c) treatments d) floods

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

temple – trip – journey – nature – for

Ahmed dreamed of a better life far from the noise of the city. Last summer, he made a (1) to a peaceful mountain village. The air was fresh, and the people were friendly. He went (2) a walk every morning and felt more relaxed than ever. He visited an old (3) that impressed him deeply. He had never seen such a perfect mix of (4) and ancient structure before.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Before Sami traveled abroad he had prepared everything. (until)
.....
- First Hani finished his homework. Then, he played video games. (By the time)
.....
- We didn't get our tickets until we had reached the movie theater. (As soon as)
.....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The children (not/be) happy after they had lost the school match.
- Had your dad (buy) that car before or after 2020?
- By the time I reached the stadium, the match (start).

5 Complete the following dialog:

Nour is asking Tarek about his visit to Alexandria.

Nour : Have you ever been to the sea?

Tarek : (1).....

Nour : Where did you go?

Tarek : (2).....

Nour : (3).....?

Tarek : We swam and built a big sandcastle.

Nour : Did you see the lighthouse?

Tarek : (4)..... We saw it from far away.

Nour : (5).....?

Tarek : We ate grilled fish with lemon.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A trip you will never forget"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



.....

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I got up late and missed the train. (because)

2. The boys rode their bikes before eating lunch. (After)

3. After cleaning the house, my mom cooked dinner. (cooking)

4. Hamza did his homework, then he had his dinner. (after)

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★



50 : 64% Practice more



85 : 100% Well done!



VOCABULARY

Lesson 3

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

determined (adj)	معمم/عازم	memorable (adj)	لا يُنسى/بارز
exhausting (adj)	متعب/متجهد	solo (adj)	منفرد/وحيد
landmark (n)	معلم بارز/علامة مميزة	southward (adv/adj)	نحو الجنوب/جنوبي
landscape (n)	منظر طبيعي/تضاريس	struggle (d) (v)	يكافح/يناضل
Types of journeys أنواع الرحلات			
business trip (n)	رحلة عمل	family vacation (n)	إجازة عائلية
educational tour (n)	جولة تعليمية	solo adventure (n)	مغامرة فردية

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

attractions (n)	معالم/مزارات	narrator (n)	راوي/خاك/سارد
cliff (n)	منحدر صخري	personal images (n)	وجهة نظر
endless (adj)	لا نهائي/مستمر	prove (d) (v)	يثبت
governorate (n)	محافظة	ride (n)	رحلة/جولة
historic (adj)	تاريخي/ذو أهمية تاريخية	sandstone (n)	صخر/حجر رملي
inner (adj)	داخلي	sights (n)	مناظر/مشاهد/معالم سياحية
journal (n)	دفتر يوميات	stretch (ed) (v)	يمتد/يعد
lifetime (n)	طوال العمر/مدى الحياة	sunset (n)	غروب الشمس
motorcycle (n)	موتوسيكل/دراجة نارية	the Nile Valley (n)	وادي النيل

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

give up	يتقاع/عن/يستسلم	ride through	يعبر ... راكباً
on a ferry	على عبارة/معدية	set off	يبدأ رحلة
on time	في الوقت المحدد	write down	يكتب/يدون

Read and complete with a word from the list:

in – landmark – solo – sandstone – write

- Many old buildings are made of
- I want to try a bike ride across Cairo.
- He couldn't remember the address, so I had to it down for him.
- The Eiffel Tower is a famous in Paris.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past participle
ride	يركب rode	ridden
see	يرى saw	seen
write	يكتب wrote	written

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym (meaning)	مرادفها	Antonym (opposite)	عكسها
amazing	مدهش	interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
close	قريب	near	قريب	far	بعيد
exhausting	مستهك/مزهق	tiring	متعب	relaxing	مريح
set off	ينطلق/يبدأ	start	يبدأ	finish	ينتهي
solo	منفرد/وحيد	alone	منفرد	shared	مشترك
sorrow	حزن	sadness	حزن	happiness	فرح/سعادة

Prefixes and Suffixes

البادئة واللاحقة

Word	الكلمة	Prefixes/Suffixes	الوظيفة	The new word	الكلمة الجديدة
difficult (adj)	صعب	-y	يحول إلى اسم	difficulty (n)	صعوبة
narrate (v)	يروى	-or	يحول إلى اسم فاعل	narrator (n)	راوي/خاك
support (v)	يدعم/يؤيد	-ive	يحول إلى صفة	supportive (adj)	داعم/مؤيد/مشجع
end (n)	نهاية	-less		endless (adj)	لا نهائي/مستمر

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The long hike was exhausting, and I needed a rest. The synonym of "exhausting" is ".....".
 a) private b) torn c) special d) tiring
- The team played an amazing game. The antonym of "amazing" is ".....".
 a) interesting b) tiring c) boring d) exciting
- The teacher told us to a paragraph.
 a) draw b) take c) write d) ride

Reading Text

Lesson 3

Pre-reading question:

- What challenges might someone face when traveling alone across Egypt on a motorcycle?

 Read the following text. Guess the meanings of the words in bold. **SB Page 79**

Three months ago, I set off the journey of a lifetime - a solo **motorcycle**⁽¹⁾ ride across Egypt from Cairo to Luxor. Many people thought I was crazy to try such a long **trip**⁽²⁾ alone, but I was **determined** to prove them wrong.

The first week was absolutely **exhausting**⁽³⁾. I faced many problems, got lost several times, and **struggled** alone. In small towns along the Nile Valley, friendly people helped me fix my motorcycle, and suggested excellent street food places. Their kindness helped me not to **give up**⁽⁴⁾.

As I continued **southward**, the landscape changed, green fields, then **endless**⁽⁵⁾ desert stretched on both sides of the road. Each **governorate**⁽⁶⁾ offered special **attractions**⁽⁷⁾ - from historic **landmarks** in Minya to amazing temples near Qena. I wrote down everything in my travel journal, including both the wonderful **sights**⁽⁸⁾ and my personal images.

The most **memorable** moment happened near Luxor. While riding through a desert valley close to the mountains, I saw an incredible **sunset**⁽⁹⁾ that painted the sandstone cliffs in brilliant colors. In the end, I realized this journey had changed me forever. I had discovered **inner**⁽¹⁰⁾ strength I never knew I really had.

Post-reading questions:

SB

1 Why did people think the narrator was "crazy" for taking the trip alone?

2 How did the kindness of local people help the narrator during the journey?

3 How did the scenery change as the narrator traveled southward from Cairo to Luxor?



(1) دراجة نارية

(2) رحلة

(3) مرهقة

(4) يستسلم

(5) بلا نهاية

(6) محافظة

(7) عوامل جذب

(8) مناظر

(9) غروب الشمس

(10) داخلي

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The mountain looked amazing under the morning sunlight.
a) land b) field c) landscape d) journal
- Many travelers dream of a/an journey to discover themselves.
a) exhausting b) solo c) false d) tiring
- A small bird is standing near the window. The synonym of "near" is ".....".
a) weak b) strong c) far d) close
- Egypt has many famous tourist such as the Pyramids and the Nile River.
a) directions b) attractions c) actions d) instructions
- Abdullah wanted to across every governorate from north to south.
a) prove b) fix c) struggle d) ride
- The sky was filled with endless stars on that clear night. The suffix "-less" in "endless" makes it a/an
a) verb b) adverb c) noun d) adjective
- When did you set on your trip across Egypt?
a) up b) of c) off d) for
- The climbers were to reach the top before the sun went down.
a) believable b) memorable c) relaxing d) determined
- I will always keep this photo in my travel journal.
a) inner b) memorable c) determined d) solo
- After an exhausting day at work, she went straight to bed. The word "exhausting" is the antonym of ".....".
a) cheap b) hard c) difficult d) relaxing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

offered – memorable – determined – struggle – exhausting

Last spring, I set off on a solo adventure across Egypt. My motorcycle was old but strong, and my heart was (1) The first day was (2) I got lost near Giza and had to fix my motorcycle. But people were kind; they (3) me water and suggested good places to eat. By evening, I had reached a small village close to the Nile. I wrote down every detail of that (4) sunset in my journal.

5

Chapter Five: Secrets of Captain Nemo



Chapter (5) in points: الفصل الخامس في نقاط

1 As the Nautilus traveled, Aronnax became more determined to know the truth about Nemo's past.

بينما أبحرت السفينة، أصبح أرونالكس أكثر تصميمًا على معرفة الحقيقة بشأن ماضي نيمو.

2 Nemo was rich, educated, and sorrowful, but his past remained unknown.

كان نيمو غنيًا، ذا علم، وبائسًا، ولكن ماضيه ظل غير معروف.

3 He attacked warships without fear, claiming he fought against cruelty.

هاجم السفن الحربية بلا خوف مدعيًا أنه حارب ضد القسوة.

4 Aronnax found Nemo brave, but also mysterious because he hid the truth about his life.

وجد أرونالكس نيمو شجاعًا ولكنه كان غامضًا لأنه خبأ الحقيقة عن حياته.

5 Ned Land planned an escape, arguing they had no right to be kept as prisoners.

خطط نيد لاند للهروب، مجادلًا أنهم لا يحق لهم أن يبقوا سجناء.

6 Aronnax was hesitant because he wanted to learn, but also wanted freedom.

كان أرونالكس مترددًا لأنه أراد أن يتعلم ولكنه أراد الحرية أيضًا.

7 Conseil stayed calm and loyal to Aronnax, supporting him at all times.

ظل كونسيل هادئًا ومخلصًا لأرونالكس، داعمًا له في كل الأوقات.

8 When they passed through a graveyard of sunken ships, Aronnax felt that Nemo saw himself belonging to the world under the sea, and the companions became even more determined to return home.

عندما مرّوا على مقبرة سفن غارقة، شعر أرونالكس أن نيمو رأى نفسه ينتمي لعالم تحت البحر وأصبح المرافقون أكثر عزيمة للعودة إلى موطنهم.

VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

determination (n)	عزم/تصميم/إرادة	hesitation (n)	تردد
graveyard (n)	مقبرة/مدفن	prisoner (n)	سجين

Vocabulary on Reading and listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

argue (d) (v)	يجادل/يناقش	hesitate (d) (v)	يتردد
confirm (ed) (v)	يؤكد	injustice (n)	ظلم
cruelty (n)	قسوة	meanwhile (adv)	في نفس الوقت
deepen (ed) (v)	يعتق/يزداد عمقا	mysterious (adj)	غامض/مبهم
details (n)	تفاصيل	passionately (adv)	بشغف/بحماس
education (n)	تعليم	reveal (ed) (v)	يكشف/يظهر
fair (adj)	عادل	sorrow (n)	حزن
freedom (n)	حرية	supportive (adj)	داعم/مويد/مشجع
guide (d) (v)	يرشد/يؤجّه	torn (adj)	محتار/متردد

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

agree with	يوافق على/يتفق مع	plan escape	يخطط للهروب
have the right to	يحق له أن	stay forever	يبقى للأبد
no matter	لا يهم/بغض النظر	thoughts about	أفكار عن/أراؤه حول

تطبيق الأصوات

خطوات التطبيق مع الكتاب

1- امسح الترميز الموجود على الكتاب

2- نهاية الكتاب، وادخل على محتوى المادة

3- اتمتع من تطبيق الصوت

4- يمكنك من التطبيق

5- يمكنك من التطبيق

6- يمكنك من التطبيق

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 Why do you think Captain Nemo doesn't tell others about his past?
 - 2 Do you think it is fair for Captain Nemo to keep the crew as prisoners?
-  Read the following text. Who wanted to learn the truth about Captain Nemo?

SB Page 81

Chapter Five: Secrets of Captain Nemo

As the Nautilus traveled across the world's oceans, Aronnax became more determined to learn the **truth**⁽¹⁾ about Nemo. The captain was clearly a man of **wealth**⁽²⁾, education, and **sorrow**⁽³⁾, but he kept his past hidden.

(1) الحقيقة

(2) ثروة

(3) حزن

What did Aronnax want to know about Captain Nemo?

(4) تردد

(5) قسوة

Nemo's actions **تصرفات نيمو** sometimes confirmed that. He attacked warships without **hesitation**⁽⁴⁾, claiming to fight against **cruelty**⁽⁵⁾. Yet he never told the details of his personal story. To Aronnax, Nemo was both brave and mysterious.

(6) في هذه الأثناء

(7) اكتشاف علمي

(8) حرية

(9) مقبرة

What did Captain Nemo say was his reason for attacking warships?

(10) تحت

Meanwhile⁽⁶⁾, Ned Land planned escape. He argued **جادل** that no man had the right to keep them prisoners, no matter how wonderful the submarine. Aronnax hesitated, torn **مختار** between **scientific discovery**⁽⁷⁾ and **freedom**⁽⁸⁾. Conseil remained calm and loyal to **مخلص** his master.

Why did Ned Land want to escape from the Nautilus?

One evening, as Nemo guided the submarine through a **graveyard**⁽⁹⁾ of sunken ships, Aronnax realized the captain saw himself as part of the dead world **beneath**⁽¹⁰⁾ the waves. The mystery of Nemo deepened **زادت**, but so did the companions' determination **تصميم الرفاق** to find a way home.

What did Aronnax understand about Captain Nemo when they saw the sunken ships?

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. Who wanted to learn the truth about Captain Nemo?

من أراد أن يعرف الحقيقة عن الكابتن نيمو؟

- Aronnax wanted to learn the truth about Captain Nemo.

2. What did Captain Nemo attack without hesitation?

ماذا هاجم الكابتن نيمو دون تردد؟

- He attacked warships without hesitation.

3. Who planned to escape from the Nautilus? من خطط للهروب من الغواصة نوتيلوس؟

- Ned Land planned to escape.

4. Where did Nemo guide the submarine?

إلى أين قاد نيمو الغواصة؟

- He guided it through a graveyard of sunken ships.

5. How did Conseil behave during the journey? كيف تصرف كونسيل أثناء الرحلة؟

- Conseil remained calm and loyal to his master.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think Captain Nemo hides his past?

لماذا تعتقد أن الكابتن نيمو يخفي ماضيه؟

- Maybe he is sad or afraid of being judged for what happened to him.

2. Is it right for Nemo to attack warships? Why or why not?

هل من الصحيح أن يهاجم نيمو سفن الحرب؟ ولماذا نعم أو لا؟

- Some people think it's wrong because cruelty causes more harm.

3. Why was Aronnax torn between staying and leaving?

لماذا كان أرونأكس مترددًا بين البقاء والمغادرة؟

- Because he loved learning new science, but also missed his freedom.

4. What does the graveyard of ships tell us about Nemo's feelings?

ماذا تخبرنا مقبرة السفن عن مشاعر نيمو؟

- The graveyard of ships shows that Captain Nemo feels deep sorrow and sees himself as part of the dead world under the ocean.

5. Would you stay on the Nautilus to learn more, or try to escape like Ned? Why?

هل ستبقى على متن نوتيلوس لتتعلم أكثر، أم تحاول الهروب مثل نيد؟ ولماذا؟

- I would try to escape because freedom is more important than secrets.

Chapter 5 Exercises



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Captain Nemo spoke passionately against
a) wealth b) injustice c) education d) discovery
- Nemo attacked without hesitation.
a) warships b) submarines c) islands d) whales
- To Aronnax, Nemo seemed both brave and
a) boring b) loyal c) mysterious d) supportive
- Ned Land planned to
a) explore the sea b) escape c) stay forever d) join Nemo
- Conseil remained
a) torn b) angry c) sad d) determined

2 Read and write True (T) or False (F):

- Captain Nemo revealed all the details of his personal story. (.....)
- Nemo attacked warships without hesitation. (.....)
- Ned Land agreed with Aronnax to remain on the Nautilus forever. (.....)
- Conseil remained torn between discovery and freedom. (.....)
- Aronnax saw Nemo as part of the dead world beneath the waves. (.....)

3 Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think Captain Nemo keeps his past hidden?
.....
- How did Nemo's actions confirm people's thoughts about him?
.....
- What did Ned Land decide to do while living on the Nautilus?
.....
- How did Aronnax feel when he saw the graveyard of sunken ships?
.....
- What mystery about Nemo deepened as the story went on?
.....

4 Answer the following questions: Critical thinking questions:

- Why do you think Captain Nemo chose to fight against cruelty?
- Nemo attacked warships without hesitation. Do you think this makes him a hero or a dangerous man? Why?
- Aronnax was torn between discovery and freedom. If you were in his place, which would you choose, and why?

LESSON



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- was a man of wealth, education, and sorrow.
a) Ned Land b) Nemo c) Aronnax d) Conseil
- Nemo attacked warships to fight against
a) poverty b) cruelty c) wisdom d) sorrow
- Aronnax was torn between
a) loyalty and wisdom b) sorrow and education
c) discovery and freedom d) cruelty and battle
- One day, the submarine took them through a of sunken ships.
a) park b) forest c) graveyard d) garden
- saw himself as part of the dead world beneath the waves.
a) Captain Nemo b) Ned Land c) Aronnax d) Conseil
- The companions became to find a way home.
a) exciting b) bored c) annoyed d) determined
- Nemo's past remained to the crew.
a) known b) avoid c) hidden d) agreed

2 Answer the following questions:

- Why did Aronnax feel more determined to understand Nemo's personality?
.....
- What can we know about Captain Nemo from his actions?
.....
- How did Aronnax feel about Nemo?
.....
- What was Ned Land's argument about?
.....
- In your opinion, would you remain calm like Conseil or value freedom like Ned Land?
.....
- If you stayed on a submarine for long time, would you plan to escape or remain on it like Nemo?
.....
- Why do you think Aronnax started thinking of escaping the Nautilus?
.....

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The Clock Tower is an important in the center of the city.
a) landmark b) vehicle c) bridge d) signal
2. She decided to travel solo to learn more about herself. The word "solo" is a synonym to ".....".
a) group b) shared c) alone d) team
3. They formed a group to speak out against and unfair treatment.
a) joy b) education c) freedom d) injustice
4. They set off on a long trip across the country. The antonym of "set off" is ".....".
a) begin b) start c) finish d) include

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Mariam took a solo ride from Cairo to Aswan on her small motorcycle. She faced many difficulties—hot weather, flat tires, and getting lost. But she was determined to finish. She rode through the Nile Valley and saw beautiful sights: palm trees, ancient temples, and colorful markets. In Qena, she stayed in a small guesthouse close to a historic landmark. The owner suggested she visit a hidden valley with ancient carvings. Mariam went there and was amazed. Every evening, she sat outside and watched the sunset. She wrote down everything in her journal—her struggles, her joy, and her thoughts. By the end, she knew this trip was the adventure of a lifetime.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is Mariam overcomes challenges on a journey.
a) team b) class c) solo d) couple
2. The guesthouse owner suggested
a) eating more food b) visiting a hidden valley
c) buying a new map d) calling her family
3. The underlined word "ancient" has the same meaning as
a) very old b) modern c) very fast d) empty

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where did Mariam stay when she reached Qena?
5. What did Mariam see while riding through the Nile Valley?
6. Why do you think Mariam wrote in her journal every night?

The Story

3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Nemo ships without hesitation.
a) hid b) stole c) attacked d) robbed
2. The graveyard was full of sunken
a) artifacts b) museums c) ships d) libraries
3. Aronnax to leave the ship or continue the scientific discovery.
a) hesitated b) talked c) swam d) fought
4. Nemo was a man of
a) power and money b) anger and cruelty
c) wealth, education, and sorrow d) kindness and honesty

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why did Aronnax hesitate to leave the Nautilus?
6. Why do you think Nemo never talked about his personal story?

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Habiba visited her aunt after the rain had stopped. (until)
.....
2. I lost my key. Therefore, I couldn't get inside. (because)
.....
3. The match started. Then, we arrived at the stadium. (by the time)
.....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They (eat) dinner because they had already eaten at their aunt's.
2. The phone rang after I (go) to bed last night.
3. Kamel (go) to school because he had waken up late.



Challenging Question

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. My mother had cooked a big dinner before the guests arrived. (After)
.....
2. I never saw a kangaroo. Then, I went to Australia. (before)
.....
3. My brother didn't eat breakfast. He was very hungry at noon. (hadn't eaten)
.....

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★



50 : 64% Practice more



85 : 100% Well done!

A

VOCABULARY

Lessons 5 & 6

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

jealous (adj)	غَيُور/حَسُود	suggestion (n)	اقتراح
abroad (adv)	خارج البلاد	narrative (n)	سرد/رواية

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

amazed (adj)	مذهول	pharaohs (n)	الفراعنة
believe (d) (v)	يعتقد/يظن	recommend (ed) (v)	يوصي بـ
capture (d) (v)	يلتقط/يصور	shot (n)	لقطة/صورة
definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	Sphinx (n)	أبو الهول
experienced (adj)	ذو خبرة	the Eiffel Tower (n)	برج إيفل
helpful (adj)	مفيد/متعاون	the Great Wall of China (n)	سور الصين العظيم
manage (d) (v)	يتمكّن من/يدير	thrilled (adj)	مبهتهج/متحمس
monuments (n)	آثار	transportation (n)	مواصلات/وسائل النقل

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

ask for advice	يطلب النصيحة	on foot	سيراً على الأقدام
build a sandcastle	يبني قلعة رملية	on the floor	على الأرض
different from	مختلف عن	on the Nile	في النيل
for the first time	لأول مرة/للمرة الأولى	take a boat ride	يقوم برحلة بالقارب
on a camel	على جمل		

Read and complete with a word from the list:

experienced – from – about – recommend – go – take

- I this book because it is useful and easy to read.
- Ms. Hanaa is an teacher who helps her students well.
- This phone is different the one I had last year.
- We will a boat ride to see the sunset over the lake.

Reading Text

Lesson 5

Pre-reading question:

- Have you ever traveled somewhere that was completely different from what you expected? What was it like? How did you feel?

 In pairs, read the following dialog.

SB Page 83

Emma Hey Jake! How was your trip to Egypt?
I want to hear everything!

Jake Oh wow, it was absolutely **incredible**⁽¹⁾!
I had never seen so much history in
one place before.

Emma Really? What was the most exciting part?

Jake Well, on the third day, we were
exploring the Pyramids when we
suddenly saw the Great Sphinx right in
front of us. It was **breathtaking**⁽²⁾!

Emma No way! Were you amazed?

Jake Totally! Our guide explained how
ancient Egyptians⁽³⁾ built these
monuments⁽⁴⁾ thousands of years ago.
I couldn't believe they are still standing.

Emma That sounds amazing! Did you get any photos?

Jake I tried to, but there were so many tourists. Still, I managed to **capture**⁽⁵⁾
the Pyramids **glowing**⁽⁶⁾ in the sunset.

Emma That's such a cool **experience**⁽⁷⁾! What else did you do?

Jake We took a boat ride on the Nile and visited the Egyptian Museum in
Cairo. I had never seen so many ancient **treasures**⁽⁸⁾ in one place! The
whole trip opened my eyes to how proud Egyptians are of their culture.

Emma I'm so **jealous**⁽⁹⁾! I really need to plan an adventure like that.



- | | |
|----------------------|-----------|
| (1) لا يصدق | (2) مذهل |
| (3) القدماء المصريين | (4) آثار |
| (5) يلتقط/يصور | (6) متوهج |
| (7) خبرة | (8) كنوز |
| (9) أشعر بالغيرة | |

Post-reading questions:

SB

1 Why was Jake surprised by the Pyramids and the Sphinx?

2 How did Jake feel about his visit to Egypt?

LESSONS

5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- I tried to the perfect photo of the sunset over the Pyramids yesterday.
a) drag b) capture c) lose d) forget
- We chose a/an driver to take us safely through the desert roads.
a) amazed b) jealous c) thrilled d) experienced
- I was amazed by the magician's tricks. "Amazed" can't be replaced by ".....".
a) surprised b) unsurprised c) impressed d) shocked
- The children were thrilled when they saw the surprise gifts. "Thrilled" is a synonym of ".....".
a) exciting b) disappointed c) angry d) excited
- I took a perfect of the sunset behind the Great Pyramid yesterday.
a) sandcastle b) tower c) shot d) chat
- We took a tour to see the most famous in Luxor and Aswan.
a) camels b) pharaohs c) suggestions d) monuments
- Air is the fastest way to travel between countries.
a) translation b) transportation c) direction d) reservation
- Life in the village is very different life in big cities like Cairo.
a) in b) at c) from d) by
- We managed to a boat ride even though it started to rain lightly.
a) take b) manage c) capture d) ask
- My little brother loves to a sandcastle every time we go to the beach.
a) ride b) capture c) build d) do

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

on – by – experience – trip – amazed

Last summer, I traveled to France. I had never seen the Eiffel Tower before. When I arrived, I felt (1) The city was beautiful and clean. I walked (2) foot near the river and took photos. Before the (3), I had only read about Paris in books. Now, I understand why people love it. I bought a small keychain as a souvenir. I will never forget it. My journey was an amazing (4) It was my first real adventure.



SKILLS

Speaking

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من حل أسئلة المحادثة بشكل جيد.



Talking about a personal travel experience

الحديث عن تجربة سفر شخصية

1. Showing Interest إظهار الاهتمام	2. Describing Experiences وصف التجارب
- Really? حقاً؟ - No way! مستحيل! لا يمكن! - That sounds amazing! هذا يبدو رائعاً! - Tell me more! أخبرني بالمزيد! - What happened next? ماذا حدث بعد ذلك؟ - I want to hear everything! أريد أن أسمع كل شيء!	- It was absolutely ... كان حقاً ... - I had never ... لم أكن قط ... - The most exciting part was ... أكثر جزء مثير كان ... - We suddenly ... فجأة .../فُجئنا بأننا ... - All of a sudden ... فجأة .../في لحظة واحدة ...
3. Expressing Emotions التعبير عن المشاعر	4. Asking Follow-up Questions طرح أسئلة متابعة
- I was thrilled/terrified/amazed. كنت متحمساً/خائفاً جداً/مندهشاً. - It opened my eyes to ... فتحت عيني على ... - I'll never forget when ... لن أنسى أبداً عندما ...	- What was it like? كيف كان؟ - How did you feel? كيف شعرت؟ - Did you ...? هل فعلت/فعلت ...؟ - Were you ...? هل كنت/كنت ...؟ - What else did you do? ماذا فعلت/فعلت أيضاً؟

Speaking Exercise

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► Youssef went to the beach with his family last summer.

Layla : Where did you go last summer?

Youssef : (1)

Layla : (2)

Youssef : I built sandcastles and swam in the sea.

Layla : Did you see any fish?

Youssef : (3)

Layla : (4)

Youssef : The water was wonderful!

Layla : Would you like to go again?

Youssef : (5) I can't wait to go back!

SKILLS



How to write about a travel narrative

كيفية الكتابة عن قصة سفر

1. Introduction

المقدمة

- Last summer/winter/month, I traveled to

2. Setting the Scene

وصف المكان

- The weather was (sunny/hot/cool).
- I saw (Pyramids, temples, sea, mountains).

3. Main Events

الأحداث الرئيسية

- We visited
- I took photos of

4. Conclusion

الخاتمة

- It was the best trip ever!
- I will never forget this trip because

Writing Tip

Writing a travel narrative
A travel narrative is a short story about a trip or journey. It includes:

- **Introduction:**
Say when and where you traveled.
- **Setting the scene:**
Describe the place (what you saw, heard, felt).
- **Main Events:**
Write the activities and use past tense verbs.
- **Conclusion:**
 - Summarize your experience.
 - Say why the trip was special.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"An Unforgettable Trip"

Last summer, I traveled with my family to Sharm El-Sheikh. It was a wonderful holiday that I had always dreamed of. On the first day, we went snorkeling in the Red Sea. The colorful fish and coral reefs were really fantastic, and I felt amazed by the beauty under the water. The next day, we joined a desert safari. Riding camels and watching the sunset in the desert was magical. We met tourists from different countries. We shared travel stories and made new friends. This trip opened my eyes to the natural beauty of Egypt. I will never forget that experience.

TEST YOURSELF

Lessons (5 & 6)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Drinking water regularly is helpful for staying healthy. The suffix "-ful" in "helpful" turns it into a/an
 a) noun b) adjective c) adverb d) verb
- Basmala was when she won the drawing competition.
 a) thrilled b) jealous c) experienced d) helpful
- The photographer couldn't a good photo because too many tourists were at the front.
 a) ask b) capture c) believe d) manage
- I was a little when my cousin visited the Eiffel Tower and I didn't.
 a) sleepy b) jealous c) proud d) old

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

monuments – breathtaking – narrative – essay – suggestion

I wanted to go on a trip. But first, I decided to ask for advice from my teacher. She had visited Egypt many times. I followed her great (1) and was really glad that I did! At the museum, I had never seen such great (2) before. They were absolutely (3) I took notes in my small notebook. Later, I wrote a travel (4) for class. My teacher said it was very good. I felt thrilled.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- We left the stadium after the game had ended. (till)

- I wrote the letter. Then, I mailed it. (After)

- We went for a walk after the rain had stopped. (Before)

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I (have) had a nice time with my friends before I returned home.
- (she/ride) a camel before she visited the Pyramids?
- By the time he woke up, his father (already/leave) for work.

5 Complete the following dialog:

Omar went camping in the mountains and slept in a tent.

Sara : Where did you go last vacation?

Omar : (1)

Sara : Where did you sleep?

Omar : (2)

Sara : Were you scared?

Omar : (3) I felt safe with my dad and mom.

Sara : (4) ?

Omar : We ate hot dogs and pasta!

Sara : Would you camp again?

Omar : (5) It was the best night ever!

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A travel narrative to Luxor"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عليه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My neighbor (not/water) his garden yesterday because of the rain.
2. They (buy) their first house in Giza back in 2015.
3. After she (pack) her suitcase, she called a taxi to the airport.
4. Before 2020, I (never/eat) sushi in my life.

Assess Your Progress ★★☆☆

50 : 64% Practice more

85 : 100% Well done!

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجم للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

Word	Synonym	Word	Antonym
lasting	دائم	overweight	زيادة الوزن
sudden	مفاجئ	sane	سليم العقل
luckily	لحسن الحظ	take	يلخذ

2 Comprehension strategies:

How to understand reference pronouns:

كيفية معرفة المشار إليه في القطعة:

Explanation:

Reference words (like *he, she, it, they, this, those*) refer to something mentioned before.

كلمات الإشارة تشير إلى اسم أو فكرة ذكرت سابقاً في النص.

Steps:

1. Find the pronoun in the passage.
2. Read the sentence written before the pronoun.
3. Decide which word or person it refers to.

ابحث عن الضمير في القطعة.

اقرأ الجملة المكتوبة قبل الضمير.

حدد الكلمة أو الشخص الذي يشير إليه الضمير.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Hassan bought a new bicycle yesterday. It was red and very fast. He rode it around the park for two hours and felt very happy.

The underlined pronoun "it" refers to

a) Hassan

b) park

c) bicycle

d) hour

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Our lightweight jackets became very wet within minutes.

- أصبحت ستراتنا الخفيفة مبتلة جداً خلال دقائق.

- أصبحت ستراتنا الخفيفة غير مبتلة خلال دقائق.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- اللحظة الأكثر تمييزاً حدثت بالقرب من الأقصر.

☐ The most remarkable moment happened near Luxor.

☐ The most forgettable moment happened near Luxor.

Vocabulary

breathtaking	يخطف الأنفاس/ مذهل
challenging	صعب/ متحدى
hike (d)	يذهب للترفيه مشياً/ نزهة مشية
lifelong	مدي الحياة
pack (ed)	يُحزم/ يتجمع (الأغراض)
scenery	منظر طبيعي
slippery	قابل للانزلاق
unforgettable	لا ينسى
determined	محدد/ عازم
exhausting	متعب/ متجهد
landmark	معلم بارز/ علامة مميزة
landscape	منظر طبيعي/ تضاريس
business trip	رحلة عمل
family vacation	إجازة عائلية
educational tour	جولة تعليمية
solo adventure	مغامرة فردية
cliff	منحدر صخري
sandstone	صخر/ حجر رملي
motorcycle	موتوسيكل/ دراجة نارية
jealous	غيور/ حسود
suggestion	اقتراح
abroad	خارج البلاد
narrative	سرد/ رواية
impressive	مبهّر/ رائع
lightweight	خفيف الوزن

Skills

Language

1) The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

الأفعال المنتظمة (regular) تأخذ (ed) أو (d) في النهاية.

● 9. - The small boy climbed the tree

yesterday.

- My grandparents lived in the

countryside years ago.

- الأفعال غير المنتظمة (irregular) تحذف كما هي.

● 9. I ran to school yesterday because

I was late.

Keywords:

yesterday الماضي / الـمضى + العدة + last

ago / منذ 2010 to 2020 / سنة ماضية + in / منذ

ثم / ثم أولاً / first / then ... إلى

بعد ذلك after that

2) The Past Perfect Tense

زمن الماضي التام

Subject التصريف الثالث للفاعل P.P. + had (d) + فعل

● 9. I had just gone to bed when the

phone rang.

Keywords:

● 9. - After he had eaten, he left the

house.

- My sister had finished her

homework before she went to bed.

A. Speaking

An unexpected adventure

1. Have you ever had an unforgettable trip? What happened?

Yes, I have. We saw beautiful lakes and waterfalls in the desert.

2. What was the most unforgettable trip you had ever had?

It was when we decided to visit Wadi El-Rayyan.

3. Have you ever faced a challenging situation while traveling?

Yes, once our car broke down in the desert.

B. Writing

A trip to Dahab

Last summer, I went to Dahab with my family. It was a wonderful trip. The weather was sunny and warm. We stayed in a small hotel near the sea. Every morning, we went swimming and watched the colorful fish. I took many photos of the beach and the mountains. We also rode camels and ate delicious seafood. In the evening, we walked by the sea and watched the sunset. It was the best trip ever, and I will never forget my time in Dahab.

A Vocabulary

1 Fill in the blanks with the correct word from the box:

unforgettable – breathtaking – bound – slippery – struggled – solo – landmarks

1. The view from the top of the mountain was absolutely
2. The trip to Paris was because I saw the Eiffel Tower for the first time.
3. Be careful when walking on the wet floor; it's very
4. She decided to take a journey across the desert on her camel.
5. The tourists visited famous like the Pyramids and the Great Wall of China.
6. They to reach the top of the mountain.

B Language

2 Rewrite the following sentences with the word(s) in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. We arrived at the station. The train had already left. (After)
.....
2. He finished his homework and then he watched TV. (Before)
.....
3. First, she ate her breakfast, then she went to the park. (Before)
.....
4. He visited Rome before he knew the best places to eat. (After)
.....

C Writing

3 Write a paragraph of 100–110 words about: "Your last visit to the zoo"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A**Reading****1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The puzzle game was too for young children, so we chose an easier one.
a) crystal-clear b) remote c) challenging d) simple
2. Yesterday, we a tent near the Nile for our overnight camping trip.
a) set up b) broke down c) ran away d) gave up
3. It's important to treat everyone with respect and kindness. We add the suffix "....." to "treat" to make it a noun.
a) -able b) -ment c) -tion d) -ity
4. My brother will with anyone who says Egypt isn't beautiful.
a) reveal b) argue c) claim d) deepen

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

caught – for – Valley – monuments – to

After years of hard work, Laila finally saved enough money to travel. She made a list of places she wanted to see, including the Pyramids and the (1) of the Kings. She (2) a bus to Giza early one morning. She had already asked a tour guide to explain everything about the (3) The hospitality of the locals touched her heart. Then, she went snorkeling near the Red Sea. That journey led her (4) a new chapter in her life—full of hope and happiness.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last month, my class visited the Grand Egyptian Museum in Giza. We arrived by bus at 9 a.m. Inside, I saw golden masks, statues, and even real mummies! I was amazed by King Tut's treasure—it looked so shiny and old. Our teacher was very helpful and explained the history of each artifact. I had never been inside the museum before, so everything felt new. I managed to take notes for my travel narrative assignment. Before the visit, I didn't know how rich our history was. Now, I feel proud and curious to learn more. I recommend this museum to everyone who loves history and ancient stories.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the passage is about
 - taking a bus
 - visiting the Grand Egyptian Museum
 - writing notes
 - seeing mummies
- The writer saw treasure.
 - Ramses'
 - King Tut's
 - Cleopatra's
 - Nefertiti's
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to
 - the statues
 - King Tut's treasure
 - the mummies
 - the museum

B) Answer the following questions:

- 4. What time did the class arrive at the museum?**

1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34. 35. 36. 37. 38. 39. 40. 41. 42. 43. 44. 45. 46. 47. 48. 49. 50. 51. 52. 53. 54. 55. 56. 57. 58. 59. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64. 65. 66. 67. 68. 69. 70. 71. 72. 73. 74. 75. 76. 77. 78. 79. 80. 81. 82. 83. 84. 85. 86. 87. 88. 89. 90. 91. 92. 93. 94. 95. 96. 97. 98. 99. 100. 101. 102. 103. 104. 105. 106. 107. 108. 109. 110. 111. 112. 113. 114. 115. 116. 117. 118. 119. 120. 121. 122. 123. 124. 125. 126. 127. 128. 129. 130. 131. 132. 133. 134. 135. 136. 137. 138. 139. 140. 141. 142. 143. 144. 145. 146. 147. 148. 149. 150. 151. 152. 153. 154. 155. 156. 157. 158. 159. 160. 161. 162. 163. 164. 165. 166. 167. 168. 169. 170. 171. 172. 173. 174. 175. 176. 177. 178. 179. 180. 181. 182. 183. 184. 185. 186. 187. 188. 189. 190. 191. 192. 193. 194. 195. 196. 197. 198. 199. 200. 201. 202. 203. 204. 205. 206. 207. 208. 209. 210. 211. 212. 213. 214. 215. 216. 217. 218. 219. 220. 221. 222. 223. 224. 225. 226. 227. 228. 229. 230. 231. 232. 233. 234. 235. 236. 237. 238. 239. 240. 241. 242. 243. 244. 245. 246. 247. 248. 249. 250. 251. 252. 253. 254. 255. 256. 257. 258. 259. 260. 261. 262. 263. 264. 265. 266. 267. 268. 269. 270. 271. 272. 273. 274. 275. 276. 277. 278. 279. 280. 281. 282. 283. 284. 285. 286. 287. 288. 289. 290. 291. 292. 293. 294. 295. 296. 297. 298. 299. 300. 301. 302. 303. 304. 305. 306. 307. 308. 309. 310. 311. 312. 313. 314. 315. 316. 317. 318. 319. 320. 321. 322. 323. 324. 325. 326. 327. 328. 329. 330. 331. 332. 333. 334. 335. 336. 337. 338. 339. 340. 341. 342. 343. 344. 345. 346. 347. 348. 349. 350. 351. 352. 353. 354. 355. 356. 357. 358. 359. 360. 361. 362. 363. 364. 365. 366. 367. 368. 369. 370. 371. 372. 373. 374. 375. 376. 377. 378. 379. 380. 381. 382. 383. 384. 385. 386. 387. 388. 389. 390. 391. 392. 393. 394. 395. 396. 397. 398. 399. 400. 401. 402. 403. 404. 405. 406. 407. 408. 409. 410. 411. 412. 413. 414. 415. 416. 417. 418. 419. 420. 421. 422. 423. 424. 425. 426. 427. 428. 429. 430. 431. 432. 433. 434. 435. 436. 437. 438. 439. 440. 441. 442. 443. 444. 445. 446. 447. 448. 449. 450. 451. 452. 453. 454. 455. 456. 457. 458. 459. 460. 461. 462. 463. 464. 465. 466. 467. 468. 469. 470. 471. 472. 473. 474. 475. 476. 477. 478. 479. 480. 481. 482. 483. 484. 485. 486. 487. 488. 489. 490. 491. 492. 493. 494. 495. 496. 497. 498. 499. 500. 501. 502. 503. 504. 505. 506. 507. 508. 509. 510. 511. 512. 513. 514. 515. 516. 517. 518. 519. 520. 521. 522. 523. 524. 525. 526. 527. 528. 529. 530. 531. 532. 533. 534. 535. 536. 537. 538. 539. 540. 541. 542. 543. 544. 545. 546. 547. 548. 549. 550. 551. 552. 553. 554. 555. 556. 557. 558. 559. 560. 561. 562. 563. 564. 565. 566. 567. 568. 569. 570. 571. 572. 573. 574. 575. 576. 577. 578. 579. 580. 581. 582. 583. 584. 585. 586. 587. 588. 589. 590. 591. 592. 593. 594. 595. 596. 597. 598. 599. 600. 601. 602. 603. 604. 605. 606. 607. 608. 609. 610. 611. 612. 613. 614. 615. 616. 617. 618. 619. 620. 621. 622. 623. 624. 625. 626. 627. 628. 629. 630. 631. 632. 633. 634. 635. 636. 637. 638. 639. 640. 641. 642. 643. 644. 645. 646. 647. 648. 649. 650. 651. 652. 653. 654. 655. 656. 657. 658. 659. 660. 661. 662. 663. 664. 665. 666. 667. 668. 669. 670. 671. 672. 673. 674. 675. 676. 677. 678. 679. 680. 681. 682. 683. 684. 685. 686. 687. 688. 689. 690. 691. 692. 693. 694. 695. 696. 697. 698. 699. 700. 701. 702. 703. 704. 705. 706. 707. 708. 709. 710. 711. 712. 713. 714. 715. 716. 717. 718. 719. 720. 721. 722. 723. 724. 725. 726. 727. 728. 729. 730. 731. 732. 733. 734. 735. 736. 737. 738. 739. 740. 741. 742. 743. 744. 745. 746. 747. 748. 749. 750. 751. 752. 753. 754. 755. 756. 757. 758. 759. 760. 761. 762. 763. 764. 765. 766. 767. 768. 769. 770. 771. 772. 773. 774. 775. 776. 777. 778. 779. 780. 781. 782. 783. 784. 785. 786. 787. 788. 789. 790. 791. 792. 793. 794. 795. 796. 797. 798. 799. 800. 801. 802. 803. 804. 805. 806. 807. 808. 809. 810. 811. 812. 813. 814. 815. 816. 817. 818. 819. 820. 821. 822. 823. 824. 825. 826. 827. 828. 829. 830. 831. 832. 833. 834. 835. 836. 837. 838. 839. 840.

- 5. What did the teacher do during the museum visit?**

[illegible]

- 6. Why do you think the writer now feels proud?**

[illegible]**B**

The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Nemo seemed like a man who carried both knowledge and
a) joy b) fear c) sorrow d) noise
2. Aronnax felt more confused because Captain Nemo always
a) shared his secrets b) hid his past
c) laughed loudly d) stayed on land
3. Ned Land believed that the submarine was wonderful, but he shouldn't be a
a) prisoner b) captain c) professor d) teacher
4. remained calm and loyal to his master.
a) Nemo b) Conseil c) Aronnax d) Ned Land

B) Answer the following questions:

- 5. What was Captain Nemo's reason for attacking warships?**

- 6. Why do you think Ned Land valued his freedom so much?**

C

Writing

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets:

1. He left the house. Then, it started to rain. (before)

2. We reached school. Then, the first lesson started. (had reached)

3. The teacher explained the lesson. Then, the bell rang. (until)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. that book before you watched its movie version?

2. After she the dishes, she sat down to rest.

3. He the answer because he hadn't listened carefully.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Mai is asking Ali about his visit to big cities.

Mai : Did you visit any big cities?

Ali : (1).....

Mai : (2).....?

Ali : I saw the Pyramids and the Sphinx there.

Mai : Are they big?

Ali : (3)..... I couldn't believe how big they were.

Mai : Did you take pictures?

Ali : (4)..... My dad took many photos of me.

Mai : (5).....?

Ali : I felt amazed and very happy.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Your trip to Luxor and Aswan last year"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 12

LEADERSHIP AND TEAMWORK



LEARNING OUTCOMES

Reading

- List the key traits of an effective Egyptian leader.
- Answer comprehension questions based on the information in the text.
- Identify synonyms for at least four key words related to leadership and teamwork.

Listening

- Identify the gist of stories about leadership and teamwork.
- Recognize specific details of stories about leadership and teamwork.
- Use vocabulary related to leadership and teamwork in a meaningful context.

Speaking

- Discuss leadership styles in a debate format.
- Use at least two well-reasoned arguments to support their viewpoint on what makes an effective leader.

Language

- Accurately transform direct orders and commands into reported speech.
- Use the structure [told/ordered/advised] + [person] + [not] + to + [verb].

Writing

- Write a short text about your personal leadership goal.

STUDY

Part 1

LESSON 1: Egyptian Leaders in History

LESSON 2: Teamwork Stories

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

| | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------|
| beyond (prep/adv) | وراء/فيما وراء | immense (adj) | ضخم/هائل |
| emphasize (d) (v) | يؤكد/يبرز | important (adj) | مهم/هام |
| glory (n) | مجد | inspire (d) (v) | يلهم |
| heritage (n) | تراث | prosperity (n) | رفاهية/رخاء |

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

| | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| achievement (n) | إنجاز | fight (n/v) | قتال/يقاتل |
| ancient Egypt (n) | مصر القديمة | military (adj) | عسكري/حربي |
| building projects (n) | مشاريع البناء | power (n) | سلطة/قوة/طاقة |
| campaign (n) | حملة | qualities (n) | صفات/سمات |
| cooperation (n) | تعاون | rule (d) (v) | يحكم |
| decision-making (n) | صنع القرار | successful (adj) | ناجح |
| farther (adj/adv) | أبعد | trade relationships (n) | علاقات تجارية |
| female (n/adj) | أنثى/مؤنث | trading route (n) | طريق تجارى |

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات والعبارات

| | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|------------------|------------------|
| bring peace/prosperity | يحقّق السلام/الرخاء | in your opinion | في رأيك |
| concentrate on | يركّز على | through practice | من خلال الممارسة |

Read and complete with a word from the list:

on – bring – glory – campaign – immense

- The students started a to clean the school.
- Hana dreamed of after winning the race.
- Ahmed showed courage during the difficult situation.
- Good education can help prosperity to a community.

VOCABULARY

Unit 2

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

| | | | |
|----------------|------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| budget (n) | ميزانية | marketing (n) | تسويق |
| water pump (n) | مضخة ماء | product (n) | منتج |
| hybrid (n) | هجين/مختلط | renewable (adj) | متجدد |
| judge (n) | قاض/حكم | solar-powered (adj) | يعمل بالطاقة الشمسية |

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

| | | | |
|-----------------|-----------|-----------------|-------------------|
| clear (adj) | واضح | Lower Egypt (n) | وجه بحري/دلتا مصر |
| company (n) | شركة | manager (n) | مدير |
| cotton (n) | قطن | park (ed) (v) | يتوقف/يركن سيارة |
| customer (n) | عميل/زبون | praise (d) (v) | يمجد/يثني على |
| electricity (n) | كهرباء | sales (n) | مبيعات |
| engineering (n) | الهندسة | Upper Egypt (n) | صعيد مصر |
| line (n) | خط | workplace (n) | مكان العمل |

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

| | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| design a campaign for | يصمم حملة لـ | step in | يتدخل (في الأمر) |
| divide ... into | يقسم ... إلى | switch off | يتطفئ |
| generate ideas | يولد أفكارًا | take medicine | يتناول/يأخذ دواء |
| increase by | يزداد بنسبة ... من | thanks to | بفضل/بسبب |
| manage the pressure | يتحكم في الضغط | under pressure | تحت ضغط |
| reach a goal | يصل إلى هدف | win first place | يفوز بالمركز الأول |
| share updates | يشارك المستجدات | work on | يعمل على/ينجز |
| solar-wind hybrid system | نظام هجين للطاقة الشمسية والرياح | instead of | بدلاً من |

Read and complete with a word from the list:

customer – renewable – products – in – on

- 1 Wind and water are examples of energy sources.
- 2 The asked for help finding a new phone.
- 3 The teacher had to step when the students argued.
- 4 We should buy of high quality.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present | Past simple | Past participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| sell | بيع sold | sold |
| know | يعرف knew | known |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms كلمات مرادفات وعكسها

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (meaning) | مرادفها | Antonym (opposite) | عكسها |
|-----------|----------|-------------------|---------|--------------------|-----------|
| clear | واضح | obvious | واضح | unclear | غير واضح |
| immense | ضخم/هائل | huge | ضخم | tiny | ثقيل |
| renewable | متجدد | sustainable | مستدام | non-renewable | غير متجدد |

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Prefix/Suffix | Function | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|-----------------|--------|---------------|-------------------|---------|-------------------|----------------|
| achieve (v) | ينجز | -ment | | | achieve-ment (n) | إنجاز |
| communicate (v) | يتواصل | -ion | تحول إلى اسم | | communication (n) | تواصل |
| cooperate (v) | يتعاون | | | | cooperation (n) | تعاون |
| peace (n) | سلام | -ful | | | peaceful (adj) | سلمي/هادئ/امن |
| success (n) | نجاح | | تحول إلى صفة | | success-ful (adj) | ناجح |
| renew (v) | يتجدد | -able | | | renew-able (adj) | متجدد |
| manage (v) | يدير | -er | تحول إلى اسم فاعل | | manage-er (n) | مدير |

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Please, speak slowly so your message is clear. The synonym of "clear" is ".....".
 a) renewable b) tiny c) immense d) obvious
- Animals can communicate in many ways. Delete "e" and add the suffix "....." to "communicate" to change it into a noun.
 a) -ion b) -ment c) -er d) -ful
- She felt immense joy after winning the prize. The antonym of "immense" is ".....".
 a) safety b) war c) tiny d) huge

Reading Text

Lesson 1

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What do you already know about ancient Egypt?
 - 2 Can you name any famous pharaohs or queens from Egyptian history?
 - 3 Do you think a good leader should focus more on peace or on war? Why?
-  Read the following text. How long did Ramses II rule Egypt? **SB page 89**

Great Leaders of Ancient Egypt

Egypt has produced some of history's most amazing leaders⁽¹⁾ who shaped one of the world's greatest civilizations⁽²⁾. They left heritage⁽³⁾ that continues to inspire people today.

Queen Hatshepsut was one of the most successful female pharaohs⁽⁴⁾ in Egyptian history. She ruled Egypt for twenty-two years and brought peace and prosperity⁽⁵⁾ to the country. Hatshepsut concentrated on building projects and trade relationships, great temples and important trading routes⁽⁶⁾. Her leadership style emphasized cooperation⁽⁷⁾ rather than fight.

Pharaoh Thutmose III, was a brilliant military⁽⁸⁾ leader. He led many successful campaigns⁽⁹⁾ and brought immense wealth and power to the country. Beyond his military skills, Thutmose III also built monuments and temples that celebrated Egypt's glory⁽¹⁰⁾.

Ramses II, known as Ramses the Great, was famous for his military achievements and great projects. During his sixty-seven-year rule, he built incredible monuments, including the famous Abu Simbel temples.

All these leaders are still remembered as great kings who showed the power and beauty of ancient Egypt's great civilization.



- | | |
|-----------|----------------|
| (1) قادة | (2) حضارات |
| (3) تراث | (4) فراعنة |
| (5) رخاء | (6) طرق |
| (7) تعاون | (8) عسكري/حربي |
| (9) حملات | (10) مجد |

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 How did Queen Hatshepsut make Egypt richer and more peaceful?
- 2 Why was Thutmose III a great leader?
- 3 In your opinion, what qualities made Ramses II and Queen Hatshepsut successful leaders?

Listening Text

Pre-listening questions:

- 1 Have you ever worked in a team? What did you do together?
- 2 Can working with others generate good ideas?



SB page 91

Listen to the audio. Then, answer the questions.

Story 1 — School Project Success

Hi, I'm Dina. Our science team from Cairo won the national competition⁽¹⁾ with our renewable energy project. For three months, we worked on a *solar-powered water pump*⁽²⁾ for villages in Upper Egypt. At first, our design wasn't working well under the hot sun. Instead of giving up, Mona, our team leader, encouraged us and ordered us to find a better way together. Sandra, who knew about electricity and mechanics, reminded us to do more research. We followed her advice, met every day after school, and finally built a *solar-wind hybrid system*⁽³⁾. The judges⁽⁴⁾ praised our creativity and advised us not to stop developing such ideas. In the end, we proudly won first place!



Story 2 - Workplace Challenge

Hi, I'm Hassan. I work in *marketing*⁽⁵⁾ in Alexandria. Last year, our company was losing *sales*⁽⁶⁾, and we had only six weeks to design a campaign for a new line of Egyptian cotton products. We had never worked under such *pressure*⁽⁷⁾. At first, we had too many ideas and no clear direction. Then, our manager stepped in. He ordered one group to focus on research, another team to work on the design, and a third team to prepare the *budget*⁽⁸⁾. He also instructed everyone to share updates online every day. By following his plan, we finished two weeks early. The campaign was a huge success, and *sales*⁽⁹⁾ increased by 35%!

(1) مسابقة

(2) مضخة مياه تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية

نظام هجين للطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح

حكام/مضاهة

تسويق

عملاء/زبائن

ضغط

(8) ميزانية

(9) مبيعات

Post-listening questions:

- 1 Where is Dina's science team from?
- 2 What problem did Dina's team have with their solar-powered water pump?
- 3 Who suggested dividing the team into small groups in Hassan's story?
- 4 How much did the marketing campaign increase sales?

Notes on Reading and Listening

Definitions التعريفات

| | | |
|------------|--------------------|--|
| beyond | وراء/فيما وراء | farther than or outside something; more than |
| budget | ميزانية | the amount of money you can spend |
| campaign | حملة | a plan to share a message and reach a goal |
| emphasize | يؤكد/يبرز | to show that something is important by saying or doing it strongly |
| heritage | تراث | the history, traditions, and culture of a country or family |
| hybrid | خليط/هجين | a mix of two different things |
| immense | ضخم/هائل | very big or great |
| inspire | يلهم | to make someone feel interested or want to do something |
| judges | حكام/قضاة | people who watch or listen and then decide who wins |
| marketing | التسويق | the work of telling people about a product to help sell it |
| prosperity | رفاهية/رخاء/ازدهار | a state of being successful and having enough money |

1 rather than بدلاً من

Her leadership style emphasized cooperation **rather than** fight.

2 a success = successful نجاح

The campaign was a **huge success**. = The campaign was **successful**.

3 be known/famous as معروف/مشهور كـ

be known/famous for مشهور بـ

Ramses II, **known as** Ramses the Great, was **famous for** his military achievements and great projects.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The new system was among citizens.
 a) a success b) success c) succeed d) a successful
- 2 He prefers walking driving.
 a) instead b) rather than c) more than d) other than
- 3 When something is this means it is very big or great.
 a) tiny b) immense c) heritage d) clear

Practice

VOCABULARY

▲ Remembering

▲ Understanding

▲ Applying

▲ Analyzing

▲ Evaluating

▲ Creating

LESSON 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- I like to live in a place with no noise or pollution.
a) crowded b) military c) peaceful d) powerful
- Good leaders always try to others to achieve success.
a) rule b) produce c) trade d) inspire
- Ancient Egypt reached its during the time of Ramses II.
a) glory b) budget c) depth d) trade
- Building the Pyramids was an amazing of ancient times.
a) campaign b) route c) style d) achievement
- Good research helps a business understand its customers' needs.
a) medical b) marketing c) historical d) scientific
- The village was quiet and peaceful. The suffix "ful" in "peaceful" makes it a/an
a) adverb b) adjective c) noun d) verb
- They built a huge stadium for the international sports events. "Huge" is a synonym of ".....".
a) little b) successful c) sustainable d) immense
- Environmental groups began a global to protect the oceans.
a) export b) campaign c) course d) report
- Judges القضاة should have important like courage and fairness.
a) qualities b) quantities c) confidence d) cooperation
- Many people join the to defend their country and help others.
a) cooperation b) power c) military d) achievement

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

emphasized – ruled – produced – temple – prosperity

Hatshepsut was one of the most successful female pharaohs in ancient Egypt. She peacefully and concentrated on trade, not military campaigns. She sent ships down the Red Sea to bring back gold and animals. She the importance of communication and cooperation. Hatshepsut ordered her people to build a beautiful at Deir el-Bahri. Her time brought great to Egypt. She did not fight in wars, but worked to produce wealth through trade.

- 2

Leadership and Teamwork | 241

LANGUAGE

Reported Orders (الكلام غير المباشر (الجملة الأمرية/الأوامر)

Reported orders are used when we tell someone what another person ordered, asked, or told someone else to do — without using their exact words.

تُستخدم الأوامر المنقولة عندما نخبر شخصاً ما بما أمر به أو طلبه أو قاله شخص آخر لشخص ما ليفعله — دون استخدام كلماته الأصلية بالضبط.

e.g. • The teacher said, "Open your book."

• The teacher told me to open my book.

e.g. • The police officer said, "Don't move."

• The police officer told him not to move.

For commands use a reporting verb like:

يُذكر يُدعَو يُحذَر يُصحح يُطلب يأمر يُخبر
للتحويل الأمر من الكلام المباشر إلى الكلام غير المباشر نتبع ما يلي:

to/not to + inf. + المصاطب + فعل الأمر + المتكلم

اتبع خطوات تحويل السؤال كما يلي:

e.g. • The teacher said to the class, "Open your notebooks."

• "Don't argue with the judge," the coach said to the players.

١- نبدأ بالمتكلم.

• The teacher ...

• The coach ...

٢- نكتب فعل القول من أفعال الأمر حسب المعنى المطلوب ثم نكتب المصاطب/المفعول:

• The teacher ... the class ...

• The coach ... the players ...

٣- نحذف علامات التنصيص ونربط باستخدام (to + inf.) للإثبات.

٤- أما إذا كان الأمر نفي نحذف النفي ونربط باستخدام

• The teacher ... the class to open their notebooks.

• The coach warned the players not to argue with the judge.

٥- نكتب باقي الجملة مع ملاحظة التحويلات الآتية:

- نحول الضمائر حسب المعنى كما سبق ذكرها بالوحدة العاشرة:

ضمائر الشخص

| Direct | Indirect |
|--------|----------|
| I | he/she |
| You | I/we |
| We | they |

ضمائر الشخص

| Direct | Indirect |
|--------|----------|
| me | him/her |
| you | me/us |
| us | them |

ضمائر الشخص

| Direct | Indirect |
|--------|----------|
| my | his/her |
| your | my/our |
| our | their |

- تحويل الكلمات والظروف السابق ذكرها بالوحدة العاشرة:

| Direct | | Direct | |
|-----------|-------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| tomorrow | the following day | last (week) | the (week) before |
| yesterday | the day before | ago | before |
| tonight | that night | this | that |
| now | then | these | those |
| today | that day | here | there |

ادرس الأمثلة الآتية لمزيد من التدريب:

| Types | Direct Orders | Reported Orders |
|--|--|---|
|  Positive | • My mom said, "Clean your room." | • My mom told me to clean my room. |
| | • The doctor said, "Take this medicine twice a day." | • The doctor advised me to take that medicine twice a day. |
|  Negative | • The police officer said, "Don't cross the road here." | • The police officer warned us not to cross the road there. |
| | • The mother said to her child, "Don't touch the hot pan." | • The mother told her child not to touch the hot pan. |



Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 The teacher ordered us to open (my) books.

- الإجابة الصحيحة **our** لأن الجملة في صيغة غير المباشر والمخاطب هنا ضمير مفعول جمع.

- 2 The doctor advised me (don't) sleep late.

- الإجابة الصحيحة **not to** لأن الجملة في صيغة غير المباشر والجملة تعبر عن أمر منفي (نهى).

- 3 The officer asked us not to park (here).

- الإجابة الصحيحة **there** لأن الجملة في صيغة غير المباشر ولا بد من تحويل **here** إلى **there**.

 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Maha her brother to clean his room before dinner.
 a) told b) said c) spoke d) listened
- Mom told me forget to water the plants every morning.
 a) not b) to c) don't d) not to
- The officer my dad not to park the car there yesterday.
 a) warned b) said c) wondered d) suggested
- The doctor my sister to drink more water and rest well.
 a) warned b) said c) advised d) wondered

 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The teacher told the students their books quickly.
- My mom asked me to feed the cat.
- The coach ordered the players (warm up) well before the match.
- Habiba warned her brother (don't) touch the hot stove.
- My coach told us (don't be) late for practice again that week.
- The teacher asked us ready for the exam.

 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- The teacher said, "Don't be late for school again."
 (warn)
- "Call me later," said Tamer.
 (Tamer asked)
- The coach said, "Train harder to be ready for the final match."
 (advised)
- "Don't make noise inside the classroom."
 (asked)
- "Never neglect your work," said the manager.
 (warned)

PRACTICE MORE



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The manager the staff to arrive early for the meeting.
a) reminded b) said c) said to d) spoke
- The nurse told the patient the medicine after breakfast.
a) takes b) to take c) taking d) to taking
- "Please, the window open," she said.
a) not to leave b) to leave c) don't leave d) didn't leave
- Rami his friend not to share the secret with anyone.
a) asked b) said c) spoke d) said to

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The officer (said) the driver to stop the car immediately.
- Dad ordered me (lock) the front door.
- The teacher advised the students (don't) waste their time.
- My sister encouraged me (join) in the summer course.
- The tour guide told us (don't take) photos inside the ancient temple.
- Huda reminded me (calling) my grandmother on her birthday.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- My mother said, "Help your sister with his homework." (asked)
.....
- The teacher said, "Close your books." (told) SB
.....
- The coach said to the players, "Run faster." (ordered) SB
.....
- Our manager said, "Send the report by Monday." (Our manager told us) SB
.....
- The doctor said to me, "Take this medicine twice a day." (advised) SB
.....

حل المزيد من التمرينات، قم بالإجابة عن الـ Quiz الخاص بكل درس في ملحق التقويم بعد استشارة معلمك.





SKILL



Asking and answering about leadership styles



How can you describe a leader?

كيف يمكنك أن تصف القائد؟

A leader is a person who guides and helps others to reach their goals.



القائد هو شخص يوجه ويساعد الآخرين على تحقيق أهدافهم.



How does a supportive leader help their team members?

كيف يساعد القائد الداعم أعضاء فريقه؟

A supportive leader listens to their team, gives advice, and encourages them.



القائد الداعم يستمع إلى فريقه، ويقدم النصيحة، ويشجعهم.



How does a good leader inspire their team to do their best?

كيف يلهم القائد الجيد فريقه ليعملوا أفضل ما لديهم؟

A good leader inspires their team by showing confidence in them.



القائد الجيد يلهم فريقه من خلال إظهار الثقة فيهم.

Speaking Exercise

▲ Remembering ▲ Understanding Applying Analyzing ▲ Evaluating ▲ Creating



Complete the following dialog:

► Omar thinks a leader is someone who helps and guides others.

Lina : What is a leader, Omar?

Omar : (1).....

Lina : Can anyone be a leader?

Omar : (2).....

Lina : (3).....?

Omar : A leader helps people every day.

Lina : Do leaders listen to others?

Omar : (4).....

Lina : (5).....?

Omar : Yes, a good leader makes people feel important.

How to write about leadership skills

كيفية الكتابة عن مهارات القيادة

1 Who is a leader? من هو القائد؟

- A leader is a person who guides others.
- A leader helps people work together.

2 Qualities of a true leader: مواصفات القائد الحقيقي:

- A good leader is kind and fair.
- He/She listens to others.
- He/She is honest and responsible.
- He/She has confidence and courage.



3 What a leader does: ماذا يفعل القائد؟

- A leader gives advice and support.
- A leader solves problems in the team.
- He/She encourages people to do their best.

4 Why leadership is important: لماذا القيادة مهمة؟

- Leadership helps people reach their goals.
- A leader makes the team strong and happy.

اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

"Leadership skills"

A leader is a person who helps and guides others. A true leader is kind, fair, and honest. Leaders listen to people and respect their ideas. They help the team work together and solve problems. A responsible leader comes on time and keeps promises. A confident leader believes in the team and says, "You can do it!" A supportive leader gives advice and encourages everyone. Good leaders do not shout; they speak kindly. They make people feel important and happy. Leadership is important because it helps people reach their goals. When a leader is good, the whole team becomes strong and successful.

TEST YOURSELF

Exercise 043

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. "....." is the work of telling people about a product to help sell it.
a) Cooperation b) Achievement c) Marketing d) Heritage
2. Soldiers bravely to protect their country and keep people safe.
a) inspire b) fight c) rule d) praise
3. They decided to increase the for marketing to attract more customers.
a) budget b) message c) passage d) glory
4. Hedaya studied at university to work in a big construction company شركة إنشآت.
a) engineering b) running c) farming d) teaching

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

powered – stepped – problem – to – for

In a small village, the water pump stopped working. A mechanic and two engineering students in to help. They parked their truck near the farm and began to work on the They tested the electricity. They discovered that the pump needed a new solar-..... part. The village ruler ordered his people to give the volunteers food and water for their hard work. Thanks their teamwork, the pump worked again by evening.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the correct new/old brackets:

1. The teacher said, "Don't worry about the final exam."
.....
2. "Please be quiet inside the library," said Mr. Hazem.
.....
3. The policeman said, "Don't park your car here." The policeman ordered
.....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets:

1. Ali told his friend to share the secret with anyone at school.
2. My dad warned me play in the busy street.
3. The nurse told the patient to for at least two days.

5 Complete the following dialog:

Nader thinks a confident leader believes in the team.

Amira : What do you think a confident leader is, Nader?

Nader : (1).....

Amira : (2).....?

Nader : Yes, leaders should stay calm and positive.

Amira : Do they give up easily?

Nader : (3).....

Amira : Not giving up is a good quality for a leader.

Nader : (4).....

Amira : (5).....?

Nader : People trust them because leaders inspire their team by showing confidence.

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A good leader"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. "Open your notebooks," the teacher said to the class. (told)

2. "Clean your room before dinner," Mom said to Ali. (told)

3. "Please, bring your ID card tomorrow," the secretary said to me. (to bring)

4. The guide warned us not to touch the statues. (Don't)

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★

<50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

| | | | |
|-----------------|-----------|------------------|------------------|
| conflict (n) | صراع/نزاع | modesty (n) | تواضع |
| effective (adj) | فعال | motivated (adj) | متحفّز/لديه دافع |
| empathy (n) | تعاطف | trust (ed) (v/n) | يثق/ثقة |
| guide (d) (v) | يرشد/يوجه | | |

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening

مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

| | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| adaptability (n) | القدرة على التكيف | emotional intelligence (n) | الذكاء العاطفي |
| adaptable (adj) | قابل للتكيف/مرن | feedback (n) | تغذية راجعة/تقييم |
| adjust (ed) (v) | يعدّل/يكيّف | progress (n) | تقدّم/تطوّر |
| admit (ted) (v) | يعترف بـ/يسمح بالدخول | respectful (adj) | محترم/موقّر (لغيره) |
| communicate (d) (v) | يتواصل | temporary (adj) | مؤقت |
| deny (y-ied) (v) | ينكر/يرفض | vision (n) | رؤية/نظرة مستقبلية |
| distracted (adj) | مشغول | willingness (n) | رغبة/استعداد |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

| | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| achieve goals | يحقق الأهداف | earn respect | ينال الاحترام |
| achieve shared success | يحقق نجاحاً مشتركاً | set goals | يضع/يحدد الأهداف |
| break ... into steps | يقسم ... إلى خطوات | share key qualities | يشارك في الصفات الرئيسية |
| build trust/relationships | بين الثقة/العلاقات | show empathy | يظهر التعاطف |
| connect with | يتفاعل مع/يتصل بـ | solve problems/conflicts | يحلّ المشكلات/النزاعات |

Read and complete with a word from the list:

for – earn – respectful – empathy

- 1 Eman spoke in a calm and way during the campaign.
- 2 Be nice to others to their respect and be friends.
- 3 Showing can make the world a kinder place.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present | Past simple | Past participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| break | يكسر broke | broken |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات، مرادفها وعكسها

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (meaning) | مرادفها | Antonym (opposite) | عكسها |
|------------|--------------|-------------------|------------|--------------------|-------|
| adapt | يتكيف/يتأقلم | adjust | يعدّل | resist | يقاوم |
| discourage | يحبط | depress | يكتئب/يحبط | encourage | يشجع |
| doubt | يشك | distrust | لا يثق | trust | يثق |
| guide | يرشد | lead | يقود | mislead | يضلّل |
| powerful | قوى | strong | قوى | weak | ضعيف |
| pride | الفخر | honor | فخر | modesty | تواضع |

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Prefix/Suffix | Function الوظيفة | The new word الكلمة الجديدة |
|-------------|--------------|---------------|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| courage (n) | شجاعة | en- | تحول إلى فعل | encourage (v) يشجع |
| adapt (v) | يتكيف/يتأقلم | -able | تحول إلى صفة | adaptable (adj) قابل للتكيف/مرن |
| respect (v) | يحترم | -ful | | respectful (adj) محترم/موثّر (الغيره) |
| invent (v) | يخترع | -or | تحول إلى اسم | inventor (n) مخترع |

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A compass can guide you when you're lost. The synonym of "guide" is ".....".

a) lead b) mislead c) distrust d) trust

- 2 Animals adapt to stay safe. We add the suffix "....." to form the adjective of "adapt".

a) -en b) -er c) -ful d) -able

- 3 Parents should their children to read.

a) explore b) encourage c) invent d) respect

Reading Text

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What qualities do you think make someone an effective leader?
- 2 What kind of leader helps a team succeed?
- 3 Why is it important for a leader to listen to others and show empathy?



Read the following text. Find the main idea of the text.

SB page 94

What Makes an Effective Leader?

Modern leadership research shows that the most effective leaders share key qualities that help them **inspire** teams, solve problems, and achieve goals. These qualities are about how leaders connect with and **lead** others.

Great leaders communicate clearly and listen carefully. They understand others' feelings and viewpoints, which build trust and help solve **conflicts** peacefully.

Empathy allows them to build respectful, strong team relationships. They also stay adaptable, ready to adjust plans, welcome new ideas, and **trust** their teams.

Successful leaders also have a clear vision. They set goals, break them into steps, and celebrate progress to keep teams **motivated**. Importantly, the best leaders never stop learning. They admit mistakes, ask for feedback, and work to improve. This **growth** earns respect and encourages their teams to grow, too. Leadership isn't about having all the answers, but about guiding others with honesty, purpose, and a **willingness** to develop. In today's world, the most successful leaders are those who lead with both confidence and **humility**, supporting their teams to achieve shared success.



1. بلهم

2. يرشد/يوجه

3. نزاعات/صراعات

4. الذكاء العاطفي

(5) ثقة

(6) متحمس

7. تواضع

(8) رغبة

9. تعاطف

Post-reading questions:

SB

- 1 Why is empathy important for effective leadership?
- 2 How does emotional intelligence help leaders manage conflicts?
- 3 In what ways can adaptability make a leader more successful?
- 4 Why is it important for leaders to keep learning and asking for feedback?

1 communicate (with)

يتواصل (مع) لنقل أو لتبادل المعلومات

The internet helps us **communicate with** each other.

The deaf **communicate** using sign language.

connect

يوصل / يربط / يقيم علاقة

The two cities are **connected** by a bridge.

Connect the charger to the phone, please.

The singer struggled **to connect with** his audience.

2 affect (v)

يؤثر على (بدون حرف جر)

effect (on) (n)

تأثير (على)

effective (adj)

فعال / مؤثر

The hot weather will badly **affect** the crops.

The hot weather will have a bad **effect on** the crops.

We need an **effective** solution **to** this problem.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The internet helps people easily.

a) effect

b) affect

c) come

d) communicate

2 The printer is not the computer, so it won't print.

a) connected to

b) joined in

c) linked at

d) attached from

3 The loud noise didn't me at all.

a) connect

b) affect

c) correct

d) communicate

4 We need a/an way to save electricity.

a) effect

b) affected

c) effective

d) connect

LESSON 1

 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Fares had a with his friend about the rules of the game.
a) conflict b) modesty c) feeling d) wonder
- Living on a remote island can cause feelings of
a) isolation b) excitement c) friendship d) activity
- Some plants can adapt to very dry conditions. The verb "adapt" can be replaced by ".....".
a) resist b) adjust c) prevent d) fight
- Rahaf has a/an job at the store just for the summer.
a) temporary b) long c) adaptable d) distracted
- With hard work and determination, anyone can
a) achieve wonders b) give up
c) lose hope d) ignore efforts
- To succeed in life, you need to and work hard to achieve them.
a) set goals b) waste time c) forget dreams d) avoid plans
- We should encourage each other to be kind and helpful. We can replace the prefix "en" in "encourage" with "....." to get the opposite.
a) il- b) dis- c) un- d) im-
- They all helped build the museum to shared success.
a) believe b) achieve c) break d) draw
- She was highly to finish her project before the deadline.
a) motivated b) lazy c) careless d) beautiful
- It is okay to make a as long as you try your best.
a) trust b) mistake c) viewpoint d) mark

 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

feedback – distracted – trust – conflict – modesty

Working with others needs patience and understanding. Sometimes ideas are different, and problems can happen. When someone gives you 1, listen carefully and think about it. Don't get 2, or ignore what they say. When you cooperate well, you build 3, with your friends. It also shows you have 4, and want to improve.

6

Chapter 5: Escape to Freedom

Chapter (6) in points:

الفصل السادس في نقاط



1 After many months, the Nautilus neared the coasts of Europe, and Ned Land saw this as a chance to escape.

بعد عدة أشهر، اقتربت النوتيليس من شواطئ أوروبا، ورأى نيد لاند هذا فرصة للهروب.

2 During a strong storm, Aronnax, Ned Land, and Conseil secretly put a small boat into the sea.

خلال العاصفة الشديدة، قام أرونأكس، ونيد لاند، وكونسيل بوضع قارب صغير في البحر سراً.

3 The storm pushed them far away, but they kept going because they hoped for freedom.

دفعتهم العاصفة بعيداً، لكنهم واصلوا رحلتهم لأنهم كانوا يأملون في الحرية.

4 The night was dangerous, with big waves and strong winds hitting their small boat.

كانت الليلة خطيرة، مليئة بأمواج كبيرة ورياح شديدة تضرب القارب الصغير.

5 At sunrise, tired and almost unconscious, they finally reached a safe shore.

عند شروق الشمس، وصلوا أخيراً إلى شاطئ آمن، متعبين وفاقدين تقريباً للوعي.

6 Aronnax later wrote about their incredible journey, including sea wonders, dangers, and Captain Nemo's brilliance.

كتب أرونأكس لاحقاً عن رحلتهم المذهلة، بما في ذلك عجائب البحر، والمخاطر، وعبقرية الكابتن نيمو.

7 Aronnax never learned the truth about Nemo's past or what happened to the Nautilus after the storm.

لم يعرف أرونأكس مطلقاً الحقيقة عن ماضي نيمو أو ماذا حدث للنوتيليس بعد العاصفة.

8 The story ends with a lesson: human curiosity and knowledge are powerful and can achieve wonders, but too much ambition mixed with sorrow can lead to isolation.

تنتهي القصة بدرس: إن الفضول والمعرفة البشرية قوية ويمكنها تحقيق العجائب، ولكن الطموح الزائد المختلط بالحزن يمكن أن يؤدي إلى العزلة.

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

| | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------|-------|
| exhausted (adj) | متهق/متعب جداً | wonders (n) | عجائب |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------|-------|

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

| | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| ambition (n) | طموح | mankind (n) | الشرعية/الجنس البشرى |
| attempt (n) | محاولة | moral (n/adj) | مغزى أخلاقي |
| brilliance (n) | براعة/نبوغ | motivation (n) | دافع/تحفيز/حافز |
| delicate (adj) | رقيق/هش | seek (v) | يبحث عن/يسعى إلى |
| exploration (n) | استكشاف | solid (adj) | صلب/قوى |
| full truth (n) | الحقيقة كاملة | symbolize (d) (v) | يرمز إلى |
| half-conscious (adj) | شبه/نصف واعٍ | the unknown (n) | المجهول/الغيب |
| humanity (n) | الإنسانية | threaten (ed) (v) | يهدد |
| isolation (n) | عزلة | useless (adj) | غير مفيد |
| limited (adj) | محدود | vast (adj) | شاسع/هائل |
| lower (ed) (v) | يخفض/يقتل | | |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| achieve wonders | يحقق المعجزات/العجائب | interact with | يتفاعل/يتعامل مع |
| at dawn | عند/في الفجر | mixed with | مختلط بـ |
| beyond our reach | تفوق إدراكنا | reach the safety of | يصل إلى بر الأمان |
| crash over | يرتطم بـ/يضرب بقوة | travel over/through | يسافر عبر/يتجول في |

Definitions التعريفات

| | | | |
|-----------|-----------|---|--|
| weak | ضعيف | delicate and easily damaged | |
| explore | يستكشف | to journey or travel over or through | |
| wonders | عجائب | amazing things | |
| exhausted | متهق/منهك | feeling extremely tired or loss of energy | |

Pre-reading questions:

Lesson 4

- 1 Would you like to travel under the sea? Why?
- 2 What dangers can people face in the ocean?

 Read the following text. What moral does the story have?

SB page 96

Chapter Six: Escape to Freedom

At last, after many months, the Nautilus neared the coasts of Europe. Ned Land saw this as a chance to escape. During a strong storm, the three companions secretly lowered a small boat into the sea. They drifted away, because of the storm, yet driven by the hope of freedom.

Why did Ned Land want to escape when the Nautilus reached Europe?

The night was long and dangerous. Waves⁽¹⁾ crashed over them, and the wind threatened to damage their weak craft⁽²⁾. But at dawn, exhausted⁽³⁾ and half-conscious, they reached the safety of a shore. For the first time in many months, they felt solid ground under their feet.

(1) أمواج

(2) مركب

(3) متعب/مهزول جداً

How did the three friends feel when they reached the shore?

(4) مفاترات

Aronnax later wrote down their incredible adventures⁽⁴⁾: the wonders of the sea, the dangers they had faced, and the strange brilliance of Captain Nemo. He never discovered the full truth about Nemo's past, nor what became of the Nautilus. Did it still explore the depths, hidden from mankind, or had it crashed in the storm?

(5) معرفة

(6) طموح

(7) حزن

(8) عزلة

What did Aronnax never find out about Captain Nemo?

The story closed not with final answers but with a lesson: Human curiosity and knowledge⁽⁵⁾ are powerful and can achieve wonders. Yet ambition⁽⁶⁾ mixed with sorrow⁽⁷⁾ may lead to isolation⁽⁸⁾. The ocean remains vast and mysterious, holding secrets beyond our reach.

What lesson does the story teach us about knowledge and ambition?

Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. Where did the Nautilus near after many months?

أين اقتربت الـ «نوتيلوس» منه بعد عدة أشهر؟

- It neared the coasts of Europe.

2. Who saw the chance to escape when they neared Europe?

من رأى فرصة للهروب عندما اقتربوا من أوروبا؟

- Ned Land saw the chance to escape.

3. How did the three companions leave the Nautilus?

كيف غادر الرفاق الثلاثة الـ «نوتيلوس»؟

- They secretly lowered a small boat into the sea.

4. What did Aronnax write about after they escaped? عم كتب أرونأكس بعد هروبهم؟

- He wrote about their adventures, the sea's wonders, and Captain Nemo.

5. What did the three friends feel under their feet when they reached shore? ماذا شعر الأصدقاء الثلاثة تحت أقدامهم عندما وصلوا إلى الشاطئ؟

ماذا شعر الأصدقاء الثلاثة تحت أقدامهم عندما وصلوا إلى الشاطئ؟

- They felt solid ground under their feet.

Critical thinking questions:

1. Why do you think Ned Land wanted freedom more than the others?

لماذا تعتقد أن نيد لاند أراد الحرية أكثر من الآخرين؟

- Because he missed the land, his home, and his normal life.

2. What might happen to Captain Nemo after the storm?

ماذا قد يحدث للكابتن نيمو بعد العاصفة؟

- He might continue exploring the ocean alone, or his submarine might be damaged.

3. Why didn't Aronnax tell the whole truth about Captain Nemo?

لماذا لم يخبر أرونأكس بالحقيقة الكاملة عن الكابتن نيمو؟

- Because Captain Nemo kept his past a secret, and Aronnax didn't know everything.

4. What lesson can we learn from Captain Nemo's story?

ما الدرس الذي يمكننا تعلمه من قصة الكابتن نيمو؟

- Knowledge is powerful, but sadness and anger can lead to loneliness.

5. Do you think the ocean still holds secrets today? Why?

هل تعتقد أن المحيط لا يزال يحتوى على أسرار اليوم؟ ولماذا؟

- Yes, because scientists have not explored all parts of the deep ocean yet.

Chapter 6 Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- What was the main motivation of the characters when they secretly lowered a small boat into the sea?
a) To escape their enemies. b) To find treasure.
c) To seek freedom. d) To explore new lands.
- How was the weather described during their escape attempt?
a) Dangerous and stormy. b) Calm and peaceful.
c) Clear and sunny. d) Foggy and cloudy.
- What happened at dawn after the storm?
a) They reached the shore. b) The boat sank.
c) They were captured. d) They turned back to the submarine.
- Who was the inventor of the Nautilus?
a) Aronnax. b) Conseil. c) Captain Nemo. d) Ned Land.
- What was the final lesson learned by Aronnax about human knowledge?
a) It can solve all problems.
b) It cannot achieve true freedom.
c) It can achieve great things but is limited.
d) It is useless in the ocean.

2 Read and write True (T) or False (F):

- The story ended with Aronnax finding all the answers about Nemo's past. ()
- The companions faced no difficulties during their escape from the submarine. ()
- The weather was calm when they tried to escape. ()
- Aronnax never discovered the full truth about the dangers of the sea. ()
- The ocean is described as a place of freedom and exploration. ()

3 Answer the following questions:

- Why did Aronnax and his companions choose to escape despite the dangers they faced?
- How did the storm affect the companions' journey, and what challenges did it present?
- What did Aronnax write about the events in the story?
- How did the three companions feel when they finally reached safety?
- What do you think Aronnax meant by "the ocean remains vast and mysterious"?

4 Answer the following questions (Critical thinking questions):

- Why did Captain Nemo choose isolation instead of interacting with the world?
- Does the sea symbolize freedom or danger in the story? Why?
- What does Aronnax's view of human knowledge being "limited" tell us about humanity's relationship with the unknown?

LESSON



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The Nautilus finally neared the coasts of
 a) Asia b) Africa c) Europe d) America
- During a storm, the companions away in a small boat.
 a) drove b) flew c) drifted d) jumped
- The past of remained a secret to everyone.
 a) Nemo b) Aronnax c) Conseil d) Ned Land
- Human curiosity and are powerful.
 a) knowledge b) money c) electricity d) education
- The companions were driven by the hope of
 a) sorrow b) power c) freedom d) wisdom
- The crew were when they reached the land.
 a) happy b) exhausted c) bored d) excited
- saw reaching the coasts a chance to escape.
 a) Nemo b) Conseil c) Aronnax d) Ned Land

Answer the following questions:

- How did Ned Land feel when the Nautilus neared the coasts of Europe?
- What did the companions do during a storm?
- What did Professor Aronnax write about?
- What lesson did Professor Aronnax learn from his journey?
- Do you think Professor Aronnax would go on another journey like the one on the Nautilus?
- How do you think Captain Nemo would react when he finds out his companions have left him?
- What do you think happened to the Nautilus during the storm?

TEST YOURSELF

LESSON (3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Rana lost in her friend after she shared her secret.
a) vision b) progress c) feedback d) trust
2. Amir is proud of the he made in learning to swim.
a) way b) progress c) route d) empathy
3. The storm was very powerful last night. The word powerful is the antonym of ".....".
a) strong b) slow c) weak d) helpful
4. Karim let the balloon drift into the sky.
a) on b) in c) away d) at

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

A good leader needs a clear vision. A vision is a picture of the future. Rana always shares her vision with her team, including Tarek and Lina. She explains the big goal in simple words so everyone understands. Then, she makes a step-by-step plan that breaks the big goal into smaller, easier tasks. This helps the team see progress and stay motivated. Rana reminds her team why their work matters. She connects daily tasks to the big vision, which gives everyone purpose. When challenges come, she stays calm and looks for solutions. If something does not go as planned, Rana does not give up. Instead, she changes the plan and keeps going. She knows that vision without action is just a dream. But with a smart plan, teamwork, and flexibility, that dream can become real and inspire others.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. This passage is mostly about a leader's
a) daily work b) vision and plan c) small tasks d) old pictures
2. The passage states that a plan breaks a big goal into
a) new ways b) smaller tasks c) future dreams d) daily work
3. The underlined word "inspire" means
a) motivate b) disappoint c) ignore d) discourage

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What must a leader do if the plan does not work?

.....

5. Why is it important for a leader to explain the big goal?

.....

6. If a leader has a vision but no plan, what will the team probably feel?

.....

The Story

3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The companions escaped into a small
a) airplane **b)** boat **c)** submarine **d)** aircraft
2. The storm helped the companions
a) swim **b)** escape **c)** fly **d)** stay
3. Aronnax wrote about the on the Nautilus.
a) adventure **b)** flight **c)** walk **d)** determination
4. Ambition mixed with sorrow may lead to
a) isolation **b)** escape **c)** adventure **d)** knowledge

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How did Ned Land feel when he touched the solid ground?
6. If you worked with Professor Aronnax, would you go on this journey with him? Why/ Why not?

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. She said to her daughter, "Don't eat too much sugar." (told)
2. The teacher said to us, "Write your names clearly on the exam papers." (told)
3. "Please help me with this math problem," said Omar. (said)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She warned her friend that bad food.
2. My uncle advised me a helmet before riding my bicycle.
3. Mom told me the table for dinner.



مجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Mother asked us to take off their shoes. (told)
2. The doctor said, "Never take this medicine again." (not to)
3. Fadi said, "Don't forget to bring your workbook." (told)
4. My father said to me, "You must get up early." (told)

Assess Your Progress ★★★★★



50 : 64% Practice more



85 : 100% Well done!

VOCABULARY

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

| | | | |
|-----------------|--------|-------------------|--------------|
| coordinator (n) | منسق | researcher (n) | باحث |
| humble (adj) | متواضع | negotiate (d) (v) | يتفاوض/يساوم |

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening مفردات على القراءة والاستماع

| | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| assignment (n) | واجب دراسي | organizer (n) | منظم |
| award (n) | جائزة | preferred (adj) | مفضل |
| check-in (n) | متابعة دورية | regular (adj) | منتظم/دوري |
| complement (ed) (v) | يكتمل/يتمم/ينتم | resist (ed) (v) | يقاوم/يعارض |
| deadline (n) | موعد نهائي/موعد التسليم | schedule (n) | جدول زمني/أعمال |
| detailed (adj) | مفصل/تفصيلي | semester (n) | فصل دراسي |
| follower (n) | متابع | slide (n) | شريحة |
| guess (ed) (v) | يخمن | software (n) | برمجيات/برنامج تشغيل |
| left out (adj) | مستبعد/مهمل | supporter (n) | مؤيد/مساند |
| official (adj) | رسمي | treaty (n) | معاهدة/اتفاقية |

Language Expressions & Prepositions التعبيرات اللغوية وحروف الجر

| | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| get better | يتحسن | make a difference | يحدث فرقاً/تأثيراً إيجابياً |
| hand in | يُسَلِّم | play to strengths | يستفيد من نقاط القوة |
| handle a disagreement | يتعامل مع/يعالج خلافاً | resolve a disagreement | يحلّ خلافاً |
| have a meeting | لديه اجتماع | run smoothly | يسير بسلاسة |
| take a role | يأخذ دوراً | stand at attention | يقف باحترام/في وضع الانتباه |
| keep track of tasks | يتابع المهام | work out well | يسير على ما يرام |

Read and complete with a word from the list:

out – negotiate – in – detailed

- 1 I wrote a report about my trip to Luxor.
- 2 My project worked well after some changes.
- 3 Good leaders know how to conflicts to reach a solution.

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present | Past simple | Past participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| read | قرأ read | read |
| become | يصبح became | become |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms الكلمات المرادفات والمضادات

| Word | الكلمة | Synonym (meaning) | مرادفها | Antonym (opposite) | عكسها |
|----------|-------------|-------------------|---------|--------------------|-----------|
| regular | منتظم/معتاد | usual | معتاد | irregular/unusual | غير معتاد |
| organize | ينظم | arrange | يرتب | disorganize | ينفسد |

Prefixes and Suffixes البادئة واللاحقة

| Word | الكلمة | Prefix/Suffix | الوظيفة | The new word | الكلمة الجديدة |
|----------------|-----------|---------------|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| assign (v) | يعين/يخصص | -ment | تحول إلى اسم | assignment (n) | واجب دراسي |
| follow (v) | يتابع | -er | تحول إلى اسم فاعل | follower (n) | متابع |
| coordinate (v) | ينسق | -or | | coordinator (n) | منسق |

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We organize a small party for our friend's birthday. The synonym of "organize" is ".....".
a) disorganize b) arrange c) assign d) discourage
- 2 We follow the rules to keep safe. We add the suffix "....." to form the noun of "follow".
a) -or b) -ous c) -ment d) -er
- 3 He always coordinates tasks carefully to achieve the best results. We delete "e" and add the suffix "....." to the verb "coordinate" to make a noun.
a) -ment b) -or c) -er d) -ive

Reading Text

Lesson 5

Pre-reading questions:

- 1 What are some different roles people can have in a group project?
- 2 Why is it important for each person to use their strengths in teamwork?

 In pairs, read the following dialog.

SB Page 99

Discussing Team Roles

Maher We need to organize our group presentation for next week. What role does everyone want to take?

Ramy I'd like to be the main **researcher**⁽¹⁾. I've been reading a lot about our topic, and I enjoy finding detailed information.

Hazem That's perfect! I'm good at organizing schedules and keeping track of deadlines. I can be our **project coordinator**⁽²⁾.

Maher Great! I think I work best as a creative person. I've been practicing with presentation software, and I have some ideas for making our slides more interesting.

Ramy What about you, Ahmed? You're always so good at helping people work together.

Ahmed Thanks! I guess I'm naturally a team **supporter**⁽³⁾. I like making sure everyone's ideas are heard and helping resolve any disagreements.

Hazem This is working out well. We all have different strengths, and they complement each other perfectly.

Maher Exactly! I've noticed that our best group **projects**⁽⁴⁾ happen when everyone plays to their strengths.

Ahmed And we've been getting better at teamwork each **semester**⁽⁵⁾. Practice really makes a **difference**⁽⁶⁾.

Ramy So, when should we have our first official planning meeting?



(1) باحث

(2) منسق

(3) مساند/مؤيد

(4) مشاريع

(5) فصل دراسي

(6) اختلاف

Post-reading questions:

- 1 What role does Ramy want to take in the group presentation?
- 2 Why does Ahmed think their teamwork is getting better?

Pre-reading question:

- What do you think helps a team work well together?

 **Work with your partner. Read the conversation below.**

SB Page 100

Mona Hey, Rodayna! What's your preferred role in group work? Why?

منظم

(2) مهمة

Rodayna Hi Mona! I'd like to be the **organizer**. I'm good at keeping track of **tasks** and making sure everything runs smoothly.

خلافات

منبؤد/مستبعد

Mona That sounds great! What makes a team successful?

Rodayna A team is successful when everyone plays to their strengths. We complement each other and work well together.

Mona I agree! How do you handle **conflict** in teams?

Rodayna I listen to everyone's views and suggest regular check-ins. What do you think?

Mona That works well! What's the worst team experience you've had?

Rodayna When we didn't communicate well and some felt **left out**.

Mona I agree completely! When we communicate well, everything comes together perfectly.

Post-reading question:

- What role does Rodayna like to take in group work, and why?

Pre-reading question:

- What qualities do you think make a good leader?

 **Read and complete the text.**

SB Page 101

My Leadership Goal

I want to become a better **leader**. To do this, I will improve my **communication** skills by working with my team and listening to everyone's ideas. I will focus on team **cooperation** and help solve any **problem** we face together. I also want to **inspire** others by **encouraging** them to do their best. **Decision-making** is important, so I will practice making choices that help the group. In the future, I hope to be a leader who helps others achieve their goals.

(1) قائد

(2) تعاون

تشجيع

Post-reading question:

- How does the writer plan to improve their communication skills?

LESSONS 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1. I stayed up late to finish my project before the this Friday.
a) deadline b) semester c) award d) treaty
2. My grandfather is a/an man who never talks about his great achievements.
a) official b) preferred c) humble d) regular
3. I need more time to finish my science assignment. The suffix "-ment" is added to the verb "assign" to make it a/an
a) verb b) noun c) adjective d) adverb
4. We must negative thoughts that tell us we can't improve.
a) resist b) insist c) encourage d) negotiate
5. If you track of tasks, you'll work best and avoid stress.
a) take b) keep c) practice d) make
6. He has thousands of social media followers who like his posts. The suffix "-er" is added to "follow" to form the
a) adjective b) adverb c) opposite d) noun
7. Good leaders know how to disagreements.
a) run b) handle c) get d) play
8. A good teacher is a/an who helps students get better every day.
a) supporter b) player c) maker d) official
9. It's hard to when both sides refuse to talk calmly.
a) guess b) resist c) negotiate d) discourage
10. We use communication to chat and share files online.
a) software b) screen c) keyboard d) hardware

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

researcher – keep – left – felt – software

Our school project team have clear roles. They (1) track of deadlines and tasks. Ali is a (2) who finds detailed information about our topic. The teacher asked us to hand in our work on time and not to wait until the last minute. We use special (3) to share files. Everyone tries to play to their strengths, and no one feels (4) out.



مناقشة أدوار الفريق Discussing team roles

| 1. Talking about roles
الحديث عن الأدوار | 2. Describing team dynamics
وصف ديناميكيات الفريق |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> I'd like to be ... أود أن أكون ... I'm good at ... أنا جيد في ... I work best as ... أعمل بشكل أفضل كـ ... I'm naturally a ... أنا بطبيعتي ... My strength is ... نقطتي القوية هي ... I enjoy ... أستمتع بـ ... | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> We complement each other. نكمل بعضنا البعض. Everyone plays to their strengths. كل شخص يستخدم نقاط قوته. We work well together. نعمل جيدًا معًا. Our skills balance each other out. مهاراتنا تكمل بعضها البعض. |
| 3. Making suggestions
تقديم اقتراحات | 4. Expressing agreement
التعبير عن الموافقة |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> How about if I ...? ما رأيك لو أنني ...؟ What if we ...? ماذا لو أننا ...؟ I think it would be good if أعتقد أنه سيكون جيدًا إذا ... Maybe we should ربما ينبغي أن ... We could try يمكننا أن نحاول ... | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - That's perfect! هذا رائع! - Great idea! فكرة رائعة! - That works well. هذا يناسب جيدًا. - That makes sense. هذا منطقي. - I agree completely. أوافق تمامًا. - Absolutely! بالتأكيد! |

Speaking Exercise

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

Complete the following dialog:

► Mona and Ali are discussing their roles in the team.

Mona: What role would you like to have in our team?

Ali: I'd like to be the organizer.

Mona: (1)

Ali: I want that role because I'm good at planning.

Mona: (2)! We need someone organized.

Ali: Thanks! (3)

Mona: I'd like to be the designer.

Ali: (4)! You're very creative.

Mona: Thanks! (5)

Ali: That's perfect! We can start working together.

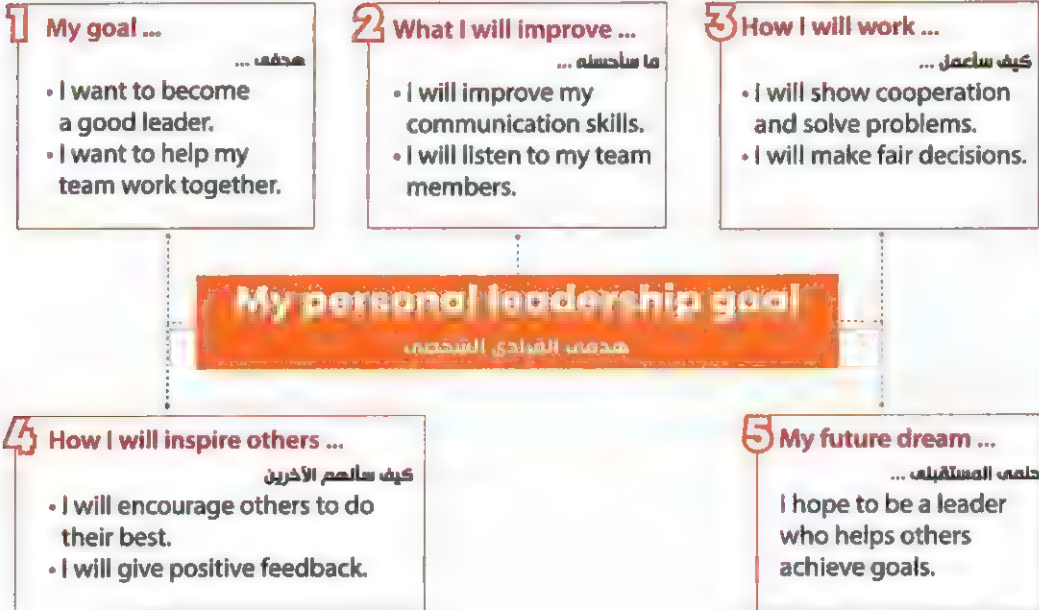
Writing a short text about your personal leadership goal

كتابة نص قصير حول هدفك القيادي الشخصي

Writing a short text

When writing a short text:

- Focus on one idea.
- Use clear vocabulary.
- Follow with the main point.
- Keep sentences simple.
- Start with an introduction.
- End with a conclusion.



اقرأ هذا النموذج المجاب عنه لإضافة أفكار جديدة ولتعلم منه:

“My personal leadership goal”

My personal leadership goal is to become a better leader. I want to help my team work together and reach our goals. To do this, I will improve my communication skills by talking and listening carefully to everyone. I will work on cooperation and help solve any problems we face. I think it is important to make fair decisions and respect all ideas. I also want to inspire others by encouraging them to do their best every day. When people feel supported, they can achieve more. In the future, I hope to be a leader who makes others feel confident and successful.

TEST YOURSELF

Language Skills A3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The teacher gave us a difficult that required research.
a) semester b) assignment c) treaty d) slide
- Please, send me a email explaining your science experiment.
a) humble b) preferred c) detailed d) regular
- The peace ended the long war between the two countries.
a) treaty b) problem c) argument d) issue
- The manager had to coordinate the team. The suffix "....." can be added to "coordinate" to mean the person who acts.
a) -tion b) -ing c) -ed d) -or

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

software – researcher – hardware – assignment – regular

Leadership means helping everyone succeed. Our team leader, Tarek, asked us not to rush or skip important steps. He is good at planning and uses a (1) check-in system. Sara, our (2), found amazing facts about our topic. We use (3) to create colorful slides. The teacher told us to make sure all names are on the (4) and not to leave anyone out.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- My uncle said to me, "Don't be late for the family dinner." (not)
.....
- The teacher said to the students, "Think carefully of these questions." (think)
.....
- "Send the email now," said the manager. (to send)
.....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- My father advised me (not, sleep) up late.
- The chef told the assistants (chop) the onions.
- The judge reminded the players (play) fairly.

5 Complete the following dialog:

Omar thinks his strength is drawing and designing.

Sara : What's your strength in group work?

Omar : (1).....?

Sara : That's perfect! We need that skill.

Omar : (2).....?

Sara : My strength! I'm good at writing.

Omar : (3).....?

Sara : Yes, of course. We can work in one team.

Omar : How about making a poster?

Sara : (4).....! Let's start making a poster.

Omar : (5).....?

6 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Leadership skills"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Challenging Questions

مُجاب عنه نهاية الكتاب.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The officer instructed the driver (stop) the car.
2. The teacher warned the class (not) cheat on the final exam.
3. Zaher encouraged his teammate (keep) practicing.
4. The zookeeper told the visitors (don't/feed) the animals any food.

Assess Your Progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

<50% Study again

50 : 64% Practice more

65 : 84% Take more exams

85 : 100% Well done!

1 Vocabulary building:

Meaning/Synonym – Opposite/Antonym

ارجع للوحدة وحاول استخراج كلمات متشابهة أو متضادة في المعنى للكلمات الآتية:

| Word | Synonym | Word | Antonym |
|---------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| affirm | يؤكد | scold | يوبخ |
| funds | موارد مالية | dishearten | يثبط العزيمة |
| puzzled | متحير | fixed | ثابت |

2 Comprehension strategies:

في هذا الجزء سنقدم مهارة التفكير النقدي وكيفية التعامل مع أسئلتها:

What is critical thinking?

ما مهارة التفكير النقدي؟

- هي عملية تحليل وتقييم المعلومات التي جمعت من خلال الملاحظة وبناء رأي نقدي شخصي على ما تم قراءته من معلومات في النص. ودائمًا ما تكون إجابة هذه النوعية من الأسئلة غير مرتبطة بإجابة واحدة، ولكن تعتمد الإجابة على فهمك وتحليلك للمعلومات الواردة بالفقرة أو النص.

FOR EXAMPLE:

Pollution has become a big problem in many cities. The writer explains how factories and cars produce smoke that harms our health. He also gives solutions, such as planting trees and using bicycles instead of cars.

Critical thinking question:

- Why do you think some people still use cars instead of bicycles even though they know cars cause pollution?

Answer:

- Some people still use cars because they are faster, more comfortable, and easier to use for long distances.

3 Translation:

A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

اختر الترجمة العربية الصحيحة:

- Great leaders communicate clearly and listen carefully.

- القادة العظماء يتواصلون بوضوح ويستمعون بعناية.

- القادة العظماء يتحدثون بسرعة ويستمعون قليلاً.

B) Choose the correct English translation:

اختر الترجمة الإنجليزية الصحيحة:

- جلب تحتمس الثالث ثروة وقوة هائلة إلى البلاد.

Thutmose III brought great wealth and power to the country.

Thutmose III bought great wealth and power from the country.

Vocabulary

| | |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| beyond | وراء/أبعد من |
| immense | ضخم/عظيم/كبير الحجم |
| emphasize (d) | يؤكد/يؤكد/يؤكد |
| important | مهم/أهم |
| glory | مجد |
| inspire (d) | يلهم |
| heritage | تراث |
| prosperity | رفاهية/ازدهار/ازدهار |
| budget | ميزانية |
| marketing | تسويق |
| water pump | مضخة ماء |
| product | مُنتج |
| hybrid | هجين/مختلط |
| renewable | متجدد |
| judge | قاضي/حكم |
| solar-powered | مُشغل بالطاقة الشمسية |
| conflict | صراع/نزاع |
| effective | فعال |
| modesty | تواضع |
| empathy | تعاطف |
| motivated | مُحفَّز/أدب دافع |
| guide (d) | يرشد/يوجه |
| trust | ثقة/أمانة |

Language

Reported Orders

Reported orders are used when we tell someone what another person ordered, asked, or told someone else to do — without using their exact words.

The teacher said to the class,

"Open your notebooks."

- The teacher ordered the class to open their notebooks.

"Don't argue with the judge,"

the coach said to the players.

- The coach warned the players not to argue with the judge.

| Direct | Indirect | Direct | Indirect |
|-----------|-------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| tomorrow | the following day | last (week) | the (week) before |
| yesterday | the day before | ago | before |
| tonight | that night | this | that |
| now | then | these | those |
| today | that day | here | there |

| ضمائر المفعول به | | ضمائر المفعول | | ضمائر الملكية | |
|------------------|----------|---------------|----------|---------------|----------|
| Direct | Indirect | Direct | Indirect | Direct | Indirect |
| I | he/she | me | him/her | my | his/her |
| You | I/we | you | me/us | your | my/our |
| We | they | us | them | our | their |

Skills

A. Speaking

Asking and answering about leadership styles

- How can you describe a leader?
 - A leader is a person who guides and helps others to reach their goals.
- How does a supportive leader help their team members?
 - A supportive leader listens to their team, gives advice, and encourages them.
- How does a good leader inspire their team to do their best?
 - A good leader inspires their team by showing confidence in them.

B. Writing

"Leadership"

Leadership means guiding and inspiring others to work toward a common goal. A good leader is confident, responsible, and kind. Great leaders listen carefully, communicate clearly, and respect everyone's ideas. They solve problems calmly and make fair decisions. Leaders also show honesty and help their teams stay positive and strong. They are not afraid to face challenges and always try to improve. Good leadership creates teamwork, trust, and success in any group, school, or community.



Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She stayed humble and showed great even after winning the award.
a) modesty b) judge c) treaty d) conflict
2. The soldiers were by their leader's brave words to keep fighting.
a) negotiated b) discouraged c) resisted d) motivated
3. Her story me to study harder.
a) admitted b) prevented
c) inspired d) discouraged
4. Our of the project always encourages everyone in the team to do their best.
a) leader b) rules c) opponent d) followers



Language

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets:

1. She commanded me (stop) talking.
2. He ordered the soldiers at attention.
3. The teacher told the students in their assignments.
4. The doctor the patient to rest for a few days.
5. They requested us our phones during the meeting.



Writing

3 Write a paragraph of (100–110) words about:

"Ancient Egyptian Leaders"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Anas helped design a/an _____ for clean water in Upper Egypt.
a) campaign b) idea c) budget d) car
2. She was very successful in her career and achieved all her goals. The suffix "ful" in "successful" makes it a/an _____.
a) adjective b) adverb c) noun d) verb
3. A fair _____ must be clear and honest when giving feedback.
a) thief b) judge c) product d) line
4. The team felt proud when they got the _____.
a) treaty b) semester c) award d) word

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

did – campaign – system – pressure – treasure

Four students formed a team for the school science fair. Their goal was to design a (1) _____ for clean energy. They decided to build a model of a solar-wind hybrid (2) _____. One student worked on the budget, another (3) _____ research, and the others built the model. During the final week, they were under (4) _____, but they supported each other. The teacher ordered them to finish all projects by Thursday.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

At the start of the school year, a group of students formed a "Welcome Committee لجنة" to help new students feel included. Their leader, Nour, is kind and notices when someone feels left out. She created a schedule so two members greeted new students every Monday. The team gave tours, introduced them to teachers, and invited them to eat lunch together. Nour told the group to smile and be friendly and not to rush new students with too many questions. One shy student didn't talk for days, but the team kept inviting her gently. After a week, she smiled and said, "Hello." The principal thanked the committee for making the school feel like a safe place. Their small actions made a big difference.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1.** The main idea of the passage is
- a) New students are shy b) Small acts of kindness
c) Lunch is important d) Mondays are busy
- 2.** Nour told the team not to
- a) smile b) give tours
c) rush new students d) eat lunch
- 3.** The underlined pronoun "She" refers to
- a) the principal b) Nour
c) the teacher d) the new student

B) Answer the following questions:

4. When did the Welcome Committee greet new students?
5. Why did the team keep inviting the shy student even when she didn't respond?
6. How might the shy student act next week?



The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- During the storm, crashed over the companions.
a) rain **b) waves** **c) flood** **d) thunder**
- At dawn, the companions reached the of a shore.
a) freedom **b) safety** **c) ability** **d) result**
- The incredible adventures included the brilliance of
a) Professor Aronnax **b) Captain Nemo**
c) Conseil **d) Ned Land**
- Professor Aronnax doesn't know whether the Nautilus had in the storm or not.
a) crashed **b) flown** **c) run** **d) escaped**

B) Answer the following questions:

6. What do you think happened to Captain Nemo during the storm?



Writing

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Dad said, "Do your homework carefully." (ordered)

.....

2. The doctor said, "Drink more water." (advised)

.....

3. "Don't eat junk food," The doctor said. (told)

.....

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Jana warned her son (don't) mix with bad friends.

2. The teacher reminded the student (brings) his book.

3. My uncle advised me (reading) a new book every month.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Sara thinks a supportive leader helps the team when they need it.

Ali : What does a supportive leader do, Sara?

Sara : (1)

Ali : (2)?

Sara : They help their team by listening and giving advice.

Ali : Do they make people feel happy?

Sara : (3)

Ali : (4)?

Sara : Of course, they work with their team.

Ali : Do they say kind words?

Sara : (5) They say things like "Well done!"

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A good leader"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review 4

LESSON 1



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen to the following text, then choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The class project was to build a using paper and tape.
 - bridge
 - car
 - tower
 - robot
- The group succeeded after they started each other's ideas.
 - ignoring
 - copying
 - listening to
 - disagreeing with
- The bridge was strong enough to hold books.
 - five
 - ten
 - seven
 - twelve

2 Complete the following dialog:

Two classmates are talking about animal adaptation.

Amany : Why do polar bears have white fur?

Gamila : Their white fur helps them blend in with the snow so

(1).....

Amany : (2).....?

Gamila : They store fat in their humps, which their bodies can turn into water and energy when needed.

Amany : (3).....?

Gamila : Their large ears help them hear tiny sounds and also release heat to stay cool in the hot desert.

Amany : How do emperor penguins stay warm in freezing temperatures?

Gamila : (4).....

Amany : Why do some animals change color with the seasons?

Gamila : (5)..... like the Arctic fox, which turns white in winter and brown in summer.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

One cold winter morning, a young boy named Omar was walking to school when he saw smoke coming from a small house nearby. Without thinking twice, he ran to the door and heard a child crying inside. Omar quickly called for help and then crawled through the open window to rescue the frightened boy. Just as he got out, firefighters arrived and put out the fire. Everyone praised Omar for his bravery. He said he didn't feel like a hero—he just wanted to help. His quick thinking and courage saved the child's life and inspired others to act bravely in difficult situations. Sometimes, true bravery comes from caring about others more than yourself.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Omar saw coming from a small house.

a) water

b) light

c) smoke

d) a dog

2. Omar's brave action helped save a

a) dog

b) child

c) firefighter

d) hero

B) Answer the following questions:

3. What would you have done if you were in Omar's place?

.....

4. Why do you think Omar didn't see himself as a hero?

.....

5. What makes a person truly brave?

.....

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning:

1. The police came to the crime scene, but the criminal escaped. (before)

2. "Where did you buy this book?" (She asked me..)

3. "Don't be late for class," (The teacher ordered us)



نص الاستماع
في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen to the following text, then put (T) True or (F) False:

1. The Great Pyramid of Giza is one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World. (.....)
2. The Sphinx has the body of a human and the head of a lion. (.....)
3. The Egyptian Museum is located in Cairo. (.....)
4. The temples of Abu Simbel were moved to lower ground to protect them from floods. (.....)
5. These landmarks show Egypt's long and creative history. (.....)

2 Match the words with their correct meanings:

A

1. solo
2. predator
3. slippery
4. demonstrate
5. immense

B

- a) to show or explain how something works
- b) very big or great
- c) done alone, without anyone's help
- d) an animal that hunts and eats other animals
- e) smooth or wet, making it easy to fall or slide

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets.

1. She asked me where I (go) the previous night.
2. The teacher told us (turn off) our phones before the exam.
3. After we (arrive) home, it started to rain.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Animals like chameleons use to blend in with their surroundings and hide from predators.
 - a) decoration
 - b) camouflage
 - c) color
 - d) shadow
2. The scientist felt an sense of pride when her team discovered a new species.
 - a) small
 - b) tiny
 - c) immense
 - d) weak
3. The polar bear's thick fur is an that helps it survive in the cold Arctic.
 - a) invention
 - b) decoration
 - c) adaptation
 - d) attraction

4. Life in the desert can be very because of the extreme heat and lack of water.
 a) gentle b) easy c) harsh d) soft
5. The view from the top of the mountain was absolutely
 a) boring b) breathtaking c) ordinary d) ugly
6. Be careful when walking on the wet floor; it's very
 a) rough b) dry c) sticky d) slippery
7. The Eiffel Tower and the Pyramids are famous that attract millions of tourists.
 a) landmarks b) streets c) restaurants d) mountains
8. He asked me where I the day before.
 a) go b) went c) am going d) had gone
9. Before we at the station, the train had already left.
 a) arrive b) arrived c) arriving d) arrives
10. The teacher told the students talking during the test.
 a) not to start b) not start c) don't start d) doesn't start

The Story

5 A) Answer the following questions:

1. How does the submarine get its power?

.....

2. What happens when the submarine is attacked by a giant squid?

.....

3. Do the characters ever return to land at the end of the story?

.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4. The men see a huge that attacks the submarine.

- a) shark b) whale c) squid d) crab

5. The three fellows escaped from the submarine through a

- a) small boat b) warship c) steel box d) sunken ship

6. The story is full of adventure and

- a) magic b) mystery c) sadness d) comedy

- 6** Write from **ONE HUNDRED (100)** to **ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110)** words on the following:

“Your school trip to Cairo”

Listening Texts

Review 3

Every culture has its own traditions that make it unique. These traditions can include food, clothing, festivals, and ways of greeting. For example, in Japan, people bow to show respect, while in many Western countries, people shake hands. In Mexico, families celebrate the Day of the Dead to remember loved ones who have passed away. Traditions help people feel connected to their history and community. Learning about other cultures teaches us respect and helps us understand the world better.

Review 4

1. Last week, our class had to build a bridge using only paper and tape. At first, everyone wanted to do things their own way, and it didn't work well. Then, we decided to listen to each other's ideas and divide the tasks. Some students worked on the design, while others focused on testing the strength. By the end of the day, our bridge held ten books without breaking! We realized that teamwork isn't just about working together—it's about respecting each person's skills and ideas.
2. Egypt is famous for its ancient landmarks that attract visitors from all over the world. The Great Pyramid of Giza is one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World and still stands today. Nearby, the Sphinx guards the desert with its lion's body and human head. In Cairo, the Egyptian Museum holds thousands of treasures from ancient times, including the mask of King Tutankhamun. Farther south, the temples of Abu Simbel were built by Pharaoh Ramses II and later moved to higher ground to protect them from the rising waters of the Nile. These landmarks remind everyone of Egypt's rich history and creativity.

Challenging Questions Answers

Unit 7

Lessons 1 & 2

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. She used to live in London before she moved here.
2. Ahmed used to drink a lot of coffee.
3. Did you use to have a cat when you were young?

Lessons 3 & 4

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I used to have a bicycle, but I sold it.
2. The train used to be late every morning.
3. I didn't use to celebrate my birthday when I was little.

Lessons 5 & 6

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. used to play
2. use to like
3. use to go
4. be

Unit 8

Lessons 1 & 2

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The boy, who lives next door, plays football every day.
2. The house, which is near the river, belongs to my uncle.
3. This is the shop where I bought my shoes.
4. I'll never forget the day when I met you.

Lessons 3 & 4

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I know the new house where Gamal lives.
2. I like the book which I bought last week.
3. Did you know the man who wrote that interesting book?
4. I saw the new baby whose eyes are blue.

Lessons 5 & 6

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. when
2. which
3. who
4. whose

Unit 9

Lessons 1 & 2

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. She remembered to turn off the oven before she left.
2. I'd like to eat fresh fruit after lunch.
3. The boy avoids eating fast food.
4. Youssef refused sharing his notes with the class.

Lessons 3 & 4

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. My sister prefers to stay in calm places.
2. I'm sorry; I forgot to bring my workbook.
3. I enjoy watching show programs.
4. My brother is worried about not passing the exam.

Lessons 5 & 6

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. to buy
2. laughing
3. to wear
4. lying

Unit 10

Lessons 1 & 2

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The coach asked the player why he was late.
2. Hala asked Hatem why he hadn't gone to school the day before.
3. The teacher asked what made oil boil.
4. The student asked the weather reporter if it would rain that day.

Lessons 3 & 4

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Magdy asked Adel if his sister was a good nurse.
2. Hala wondered why she was worried that day.
3. Adel asked why I had arrived late.

Lessons 5 & 6

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. could swim
2. was
3. finished / had finished
4. felt / had felt

Unit 12

Lessons 1 & 2

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I missed the train because I had got up late.
2. After the boys had ridden their bikes, they ate lunch.
3. Before cooking dinner, my mom had cleaned the house.
4. Hamza had his dinner after he had done his homework.

Lessons 3 & 4

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. After my mother had cooked a big dinner, the guests arrived.
2. I had never seen a kangaroo before I went to Australia.
3. My brother hadn't eaten breakfast, so he was very hungry at noon.

Lessons 5 & 6

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. didn't water
2. bought
3. had packed
4. had never eaten

Unit 12

Lessons 1 & 2

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The teacher told the class to open their notebooks.
2. Mom told Ali to clean his room before dinner.
3. The secretary asked me to bring my ID card the following day.
4. "Don't touch the statues," the guard said.

Lessons 3 & 4

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Mother said to us, "Take off your shoes."
2. The doctor said not to take that medicine again.
3. Fadi said to remember to bring my workbook.
4. My father said to me to get up early.

Lessons 5 & 6

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. to stop
2. not to
3. to keep
4. not to feed

Group 1

All three forms are the same

| Present form | | Simple past | Past participle |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------|
| bet | يراهن | bet | bet |
| cost | يتكلف | cost | cost |
| cut | يقطع | cut | cut |
| hit | يضرب | hit | hit |
| hurt | يصيب/يؤذي | hurt | hurt |
| let | يسمح/يدع | let | let |
| put | يضع | put | put |
| put out | يطفيئ | put out | put out |
| read | يقرأ | read | read |
| rid | يزيل | rid | rid |
| set | يعد/يجهز | set | set |
| shut | يغلق | shut | shut |
| split | يفصل | split | split |
| sweat | يعرق | sweat | sweat |

Group 2

The 2nd and 3rd forms are the same

| Present form | | Simple past | Past participle |
|--------------|-----------------|-------------|-----------------|
| bleed | يلزف | bled | bled |
| bring | يحضر | brought | brought |
| build | يبني | built | built |
| buy | يشترى | bought | bought |
| catch | يمسك/يلحق/يصطاد | caught | caught |
| feel | يحس/يشعر | felt | felt |
| fight | يحارب | fought | fought |
| find | يجد | found | found |
| get | يحصل | got | got |

| | | | |
|------------|-------------|------------|------------|
| have | يملك | had | had |
| hear | يسمع | heard | heard |
| hold | يمسك | held | held |
| keep | يحفظ | kept | kept |
| leave | يترك/يفار | left | left |
| lend | يقرض | lent | lent |
| light | يوقد | lit | lit |
| lose | يفقد/يخسر | lost | lost |
| make | يصنع | made | made |
| meet | يقابل | met | met |
| pay | يدفع | paid | paid |
| say | يقول | said | said |
| sell | يبيع | sold | sold |
| send | يرسل | sent | sent |
| shoot | يرمي | shot | shot |
| sit | يجلس | sat | sat |
| sleep | ينام | slept | slept |
| spend | يقتطع/يقتطع | spent | spent |
| stand | يقف | stood | stood |
| teach | يعلم | taught | taught |
| tell | يقول | told | told |
| think | يفكر/يرى | thought | thought |
| understand | يفهم | understood | understood |
| win | يفوز | won | won |



All three forms are different

| Present form | | Simple past | Past participle |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------|
| am-is-are | أنا/هي/هو | was, were | been |
| begin | يبدأ | began | begun |
| bite | يعض | bit | bitten |
| blow | ينفخ | blew | blown |
| break | يكسر | broke | broken |

| | | | |
|--------|-----------|--------|-----------|
| choose | يختار | chose | chosen |
| draw | يرسم | drew | drawn |
| drink | يشرب | drank | drunk |
| drive | يقود | drove | driven |
| eat | يأكل | ate | eaten |
| fall | يقع/يسقط | fell | fallen |
| fly | يطير | flew | flown |
| forget | ينسى | forgot | forgotten |
| give | يعطي | gave | given |
| hide | يختفي | hid | hidden |
| know | يعرف | knew | known |
| ride | يركب | rode | ridden |
| ring | يرن | rang | rung |
| rise | يرتفع | rose | risen |
| see | يرى | saw | seen |
| show | يوضح/يعرض | showed | shown |
| sing | يغنى | sang | sung |
| speak | يتحدث | spoke | spoken |
| swim | يعوم | swam | swum |
| take | ياخذ | took | taken |
| throw | يرمى/يلقي | threw | thrown |
| wake | يوقظ | woke | woken |
| wear | يرتدى | wore | worn |
| write | يكتب | wrote | written |

رقم الإيداع: 2025/30334

خدمة العملاء: 16766



جميع حقوق الملكية الفكرية وحقوق المؤلف لهذا الكتاب

مملوكة لدار نهضة مصر للنشر

يحظر طبع أو نشر أو تصوير أو تخزين
أي جزء من هذا الكتاب بأية وسيلة إلكترونية أو ميكانيكية أو بالتصوير
أو خلاف ذلك إلا بإذن كتابي صريح من الناشر

rd

PREP

SECOND TERM



ALAWAA

Gem

2026

**HS
S
I
T
E**

**Ongoing Assessment
& Final Revision**



CONTENTS



Ongoing Assessment

3
التقويم المستمر

Final Revision

70
المراجعة النهائية

A) Units General Revision (Vocabulary/ Language/ Speaking/ Writing)

B) Story Revision (Twenty Thousand Leagues under the Sea)

Final Exams

105
الامتحانات النهائية

A) (10) General Exams

B) (4) Al-Azhar Exams

Part 1

Ongoing Assessment



1 Follow up Worksheets

جزء خاص بالإملاء + اختبارات قصيرة لطلبة العام على كل درسين

2 Al-Azhar Follow up Worksheets

اختبارات قصيرة لطلبة الأزهر على كل درسين

3 Units Mini-Tests

اختبارات قصيرة على كل وحدة لطلبة العام

4 Al-Azhar Units Mini-Tests

اختبارات قصيرة على كل وحدة لطلبة الأزهر

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| chariot racing | منافسة/مسابقة |
| sportsmanship | قوة |
| honor | خضم/منافس |
| knight | إعجاب |
| gladiator fights | جندى |
| practice | المبارزة بالسيف |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|--------------------|---------------|
| create friendships | يذهب فى إجازة |
| prepare ... for | جائزة لـ |
| show fairness | يشارك فى |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past Simple | Past Participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| spread | | |
| teach | | |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|---------|-------------------|--------------------|
| popular | | |
| active | | |
| true | | |

Definitions

| |
|-------------------------------------|
| : soldier in the Middle Ages |
| : treating others honestly in games |

B

Quiz Time

1

- A good respects fair play and shows teamwork during the game.
a) fan b) knight
c) athlete d) soldier
- When the computer froze, I had to restart it to fix the problem. The prefix "re-" in "restart" means
a) less b) not
c) never d) again
- The new café became very popular because of its delicious desserts. The word "....." is a synonym to "popular".
a) common b) empty
c) boring d) unknown
- Our in the race was faster, but we never gave up.
a) trainer b) opponent
c) goal d) fan

2

1. He (use) to live in the countryside.
2. My father didn't use to (being) lazy when he was young.
3. How did you (using) to go to school?
4. I (not/use to) swim when I was a child.
5. I didn't (used) to know much about my family history.

3

1. My grandfather stayed in a traditional house in the country. (used to)
2. Did you go fishing when you lived in Alexandria? (use to)
3. I didn't like milk when I was a child. (use to)



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Maha thinks running was the first sport.

Sami : What was the very first sport ever?

Maha : (1).....

Sami : (2).....?

Maha : Because people ran to hunt or race for fun.

Sami : Did ancient people play team sports?

Maha : (3)..... . People in America played a ball game.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Climate change is now a problem that affects both people and animals.

- a) cultural b) social c) weekly d) global

2. In, horses pulled carts while drivers raced around a track.

- a) fencing b) running c) chariot racing d) wrestling

3. The king rewarded the brave man by making him a

- a) knight b) teacher c) worker d) hunter

4. **A:** Did you use to put a lot of salt on your food? **B:** Yes,

- a) I did b) I used to c) used to d) I have

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the words between brackets:

1. I visited my grandpa a lot when I was younger.

(used to)

2. He smoked a lot, but now he doesn't.

(used to)

3. She used to cook when she was at her father's house.

(to)

4 Write a short paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"The importance of sports"

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| science fiction | الجمبار |
| cannon fire | يذكر |
| struggle | رفع الأثقال |
| represent | أمة/دولة/شعب |
| continent | وحش/بهيمة |
| excellence | يُدعى/يُطالب بـ |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| big fan of | من كل أنحاء العالم |
| fascinated with | قيم لـ |
| set sail | يخلق إحساساً بـ |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past Simple | Past Participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| throw | | |
| win | | |
| hold | | |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|---------|-------------------|--------------------|
| peace | | |
| respect | | |
| united | | |
| famous | | |



Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

from – of – represent – flags – athletics

Every four years, the world celebrates the Olympic Games, a true symbol of global friendship and athletic achievement. Athletes from every continent join together to (1) their nations with honor. The host city prepares for years to welcome visitors (2) all over the world. Players train hard to compete in different (3) Seeing the national (4) raised during medal ceremonies always reminds me of pride.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Amir ate much chocolate when he was a kid.

2. He used to ride his bike to school when he was young.

3. I used to have a dog when I was seven.

The Story

3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The story takes place in the mid-..... century.

a) eighteenth b) nineteenth c) twentieth d) twenty-first

2. The strange creature turned out to be a

a) ship b) car c) mountain d) submarine

3. The creature had a body.

a) steel-like b) plastic c) wood-like d) cotton

4. is a French scientist who joined the voyage.

a) Pierre Aronnax b) Ned Land c) Conseil d) Nemo

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why did Conseil join the voyage?

6. Would you believe that sea monsters exist if you read about them in the newspaper? Why?

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. My sister loves because she enjoys jumping, flipping, and balancing.
a) ring b) boxing c) gymnastics d) friendship
2. After the attack, the damaged began to sink into the deep water.
a) warship b) mystery c) army d) success
3. My dad have a beard, but now he doesn't.
a) used to b) use to c) didn't use to d) used
4. do his homework every day when he was a student?
a) Do he used to b) Did he used to
c) Did he use to d) Did he used

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

A boy found an old map in his grandfather's attic. It showed a journey across the Pacific to a place marked "X" with the words "Here lies the steel monster." His grandfather had been part of a scientific expedition that disappeared in 1920. The boy showed the map to his professor, who said it might be real. They believe the team discovered a man-made submarine but couldn't report it. Now, the boy dreams of setting sail to find the truth. The mystery of the lost expedition still fascinates scientists.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What words were written on the map next to the "X"?
.....
2. Why do you think the expedition couldn't report what they found?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the passage is about
a) old maps b) a lost expedition
c) dusty attics d) how to sail
4. The map showed a
a) hidden beach b) steel monster c) school d) whale

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. He didn't like ice cream when he was young. (use to)
.....
2. I always went out on weekends. (used to)
.....



Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| spirit | منتعش/متجدد النشاط |
| focused | لياقة بدنية |
| relay race | انضباط |
| tournament | منزعج/مستاء |
| selfishness | جو/أجواء |
| individual sport | بطولة |
| weakness | الوثب الطويل |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|--------------|----------------------------------|
| on a TV show | يكون مدافعات |
| cheer for | يظل لائق بدنياً / نشيطاً / قوياً |
| try a sport | متأخر على |
| each other | في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|-----------|-------------------|--------------------|
| calm | | |
| encourage | | |
| strong | | |

B Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Learning to stay calm is part of building
a) weakness b) confusion c) excitement d) discipline
2. Winning the national required hard work, not just luck.
a) championship b) pool
c) selfishness d) spirit
3. Coaches encourage athletes to stay focused and determined. We replace the prefix “en-” in “encourage” with “.....” to get an antonym.
a) im b) il c) dis d) un
4. The at the tournament was full of cheers.
a) talent b) atmosphere c) weather d) winner
5. Fans always cheer their favorite team during the match.
a) in b) on c) at d) for
6. Her kindness was an inspiration to everyone around her. The suffix “-ation”, added to the verb “inspire”, makes it a/an
a) adjective b) adverb c) preposition d) noun

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

win – athlete – discipline – achieve – earn

The journey of any successful athlete is not easy. Feryal Abdelaziz is a clear example of an (1) to follow. To (2) her goal, she used to train hard and follow strict routines. She needed great (3) to focus only on her training. She had to avoid any unhealthy habits to perform successfully. Of course, hard work and determination helped her (4) the gold medal in karate in Tokyo in 2021.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. There was an old hospital near the public park. (used to)
.....
2. I didn't wake up so early when I was on vacation. (use to)
.....
3. Did you like going to birthday parties? (use to)
.....



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Drinking water often keeps you during training.
a) wealthy b) confused c) healthy d) upset
- Players must control their during competitions.
a) winner b) luck c) spirit d) anger
- My uncle used to his car to work.
a) drives b) drove c) drive d) driving
- When you were ten, did you to live in a different house?
a) use to b) use c) used to d) used

Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

refreshed – feel – weather – stay – habits

Playing sports is a lot of fun, but it takes effort. After a good night's sleep, I get (1) and ready to practice. I used to (2) tired when I woke up, but now I don't. My coach always tells me to follow healthy (3) and drink plenty of water. It is important to (4) healthy so I can play my best every day.

Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- I used to swim every day when I was in Alex. (swim)

.....

- They always went to the cinema on weekends. (go)

.....

Write a short paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"Your favorite sport"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A true friend will support you in both good and bad times. We add the prefix "....." to "true" to form the antonym.
a) -dis b) -il c) -im d) -un
2. Every at the sports event raised its flag with pride and joy.
a) continent b) nation c) ring d) friendship
3. The dog was so that he never left his owner during the whole voyage.
a) public b) imaginative c) terrible d) loyal
4. Many students joined the art competition to show their creativity. The suffix "-tion" in "competition" means
a) an adjective b) the person who competes
c) the act of competing d) an adverb

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

injury – honor – showed – injured – sportsmanship

From the beginning, Amir trained hard to become a true champion. He (1) fairness and never tried to attack his opponent unfairly. After an (2), he stayed patient and refused to blame anyone. He didn't use to be violent against other players. The final result was bronze, but he felt (3) and admiration from every fan. His (4) won him respect.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (Does) the book ready yesterday?
2. I (use) to play football every day.
3. She didn't (used) to like coffee.
4. Did you (used) to live in Cairo?
5. We used to (going) running in the morning.

4 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed plays football only on weekends as it's fun and exciting.

Sara : What is your favorite sport?

Ahmed : (1)

Sara : Why do you like football?

Ahmed : (2)

Sara : Do you play it every day?

Ahmed : (3)

Sara : (4) ?

Ahmed : I play with my friends at school.

Sara : (5) ?

Ahmed : Yes, I joined our school team.

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Sports"

Unit 7

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Omar is asking Mona about her favorite sport.

Omar : What is your favorite sport?

Mona : (1)

Omar : (2)

Mona : Because it makes me feel refreshed and healthy.

Omar : (3)

Mona : Yes, I go to the pool every weekend.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The teacher asked each student to a task alone.

- a) do b) show c) make d) attack

2. Mr. Said appeared a TV show to talk about his new book.

- a) on b) in c) at d) for

3. Soha's mother be a teacher, but now she works in a bank.

- a) used to b) use to c) is using d) use

4. Did you use the dishes?

- a) wash b) to wash c) washed d) washing

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box.

weakness – winner – fairness – avoid – medal

Noura reached the final round after years of practice. She wanted to (1) making mistakes. Her smile showed respect for the (2) The reporter asked her how she felt about losing the gold. "It's not about the (3)", she said proudly, "it's about the spirit." Her (4) and kindness offered an example for every student watching from home.

4 Read the following text and answer the questions.

1. I became captain of the team 3 years ago.

2. I collected a lot of stamps when I was young.

3. They used to eat chocolate a lot.

5 Read the following text and answer the questions.

Yesterday, a sports report covered the local club's tournament. Many players joined, showing amazing talent in team and individual sports. The long jump and swimming competitions were full of excitement. Some athletes were upset because they made mistakes, but the coaches encouraged them to stay focused. Everyone tried to stay healthy and fit. Winners were proud, while others learned about discipline, honesty, and teamwork. The atmosphere in the stadium was full of cheering and fun. Children made friends and had fun while learning important lessons about sportsmanship. The tournament was relaxing and inspiring for both players and the audience.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Which competitions were mentioned in the club tournament?

2. How did the coaches help upset athletes?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the text is that the local was inspiring.

- a) classmate b) stadium
c) tournament d) teamwork

4. Athletes learned lessons about

- a) selfishness b) honesty
c) teamwork d) both a and b



Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|----------------|------------------|
| harmony | مراسم احتفال |
| transformation | مذيع/مقدم برنامج |
| talented | يتبادل |
| patience | يعكس |
| wisdom | أقارب |
| locals | يحافظ على |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|--------------|---------------|
| common for | يعد/يجهز لـ |
| tell a story | مرتبط/متصل بـ |
| play a role | يظهر العطف |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past Simple | Past Participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| build | | |
| forget | | |
| light | | |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|---------|-------------------|--------------------|
| massive | | |
| ignore | | |

Definitions

-: peace or balance among people or things
-: special event like a wedding
-: the way of life of a group of people

5

Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Doctors and nurses care patients in hospitals every day.
a) for
b) at
c) in
d) on
2. During the wedding, guests eat and dance happily.
a) harmony
b) culture
c) ceremony
d) creativity
3. To preserve our environment, we should recycle and reduce waste.
The verb "preserve" can't be replaced by "
a) keep
b) damage
c) protect
d) save
4. The festival celebrates the cultural traditions of the local people.
The suffix "-al" added to "culture" makes it a/an
a) verb
b) noun
c) adverb
d) adjective

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The shop (where) sells sports shoes is closed today.
2. The person (who) called you this morning is my friend.
3. The restaurant (where) we have dinner serves the best pizza.
4. The girl (whose) hair is curly sings beautifully.
5. The time (when) we first met will always be special.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. That man is waiting for the bus. He is wearing a blue jacket. (who)
2. The new car belongs to my neighbor. It is parked outside. (which)
3. The student won the prize. His essay was the best. (who)



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Salma is asking Karim about Sham El-Nessim, which is a spring festival.

Salma: What is Sham El-Nessim, Karim?

Karim: (1)

Salma: (2)?

Karim: People celebrate it on the Monday after Easter.

Salma: What do people usually do?

Karim: (3)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Food, music, and art are important parts of every country's
 a) kindness b) beauty c) culture d) health
2. She tried to her brother's annoying comments.
 a) ignore b) copy c) repeat d) describe
3. The moment the sun rises is the most peaceful one.
 a) when b) which c) who d) where
4. The boy sits behind me is always cheerful.
 a) who b) whose c) when d) where

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The teacher explained the lesson. You liked her very much. (who)

2. The book is on the table. You gave it to me. (that)

3. The man owns a red car. His wife is a teacher. (whose)

4 Write a short paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"An Egyptian festival"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|---------------|----------------|
| long-standing | يكرم/يقدر/يشرف |
| insist | أسير |
| artifact | يوصل/يربط |
| hospitality | غرض |
| civilization | معرفة |
| memory | إرادة |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| decorate ... with | يتعد عن |
| powered by | يذكر ... بـ |
| hope for | يتفاعل مع/يرد على |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past Simple | Past Participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| choose | | |
| give | | |
| send | | |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|--------|-------------------|--------------------|
| grand | | |
| honor | | |
| clear | | |
| better | | |

B**Quiz Time****1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**

values – envelopes – letters – graves – hospitality

Customs are everyday practices **ممارسات** that show the culture of a community. People in Mexico celebrate the Day of the Dead by decorating (1)..... with flowers and candles to honor loved ones and keep their memory alive. In China, the Lunar New Year includes cleaning houses, wearing new clothes, and giving red (2)..... for luck and happiness. In Egypt, (3)..... reflects generosity as guests are welcomed with food and traditional drinks. These customs show shared (4)..... of love, respect, community, and keeping traditions alive.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using word(s) between brackets:

1. I saw a dog. It was chasing a cat. (which)
.....
2. The woman spoke to me. She works at the bank. (who)
.....
3. The boy helped me. His bag was very heavy. (whose)
.....

The Story**3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. is the commander of the Nautilus.
a) Nemo b) Aronnax c) Conseil d) Ned Land
2. Life on the Nautilus was
a) boring b) astonishing c) excited d) terrible
3. The Nautilus was built entirely for life
a) underwater b) on the shore
c) in space d) on the ground
4. Nemo had deep
a) power b) truth c) knowledge d) wealth

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What was the rule Nemo made for his crew?
.....
6. What would have happened if Ned Land had refused to be on the Nautilus?
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The hotel staff showed great by offering free drinks and warm smiles.
a) history b) hospitality c) honesty d) safety
2. A small boat was near the coral reef yesterday.
a) floating b) loved c) walking d) amazed
3. The man helped me study is very kind.
a) where b) when c) which d) who
4. The month I celebrate my birthday is always fun.
a) who b) when c) whose d) that

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Generosity is a shared value that makes communities stronger. People help neighbors in need and offer support during hard times. Traditions that involve helping others are followed for many generations. Elders who give advice are respected. Families celebrate festivals like the Lunar New Year with gifts and envelopes, which bring happiness to children. Loved ones whose care supports families are appreciated. Daily practices of kindness are shared widely. Candles are lit to remember ancestors. Communities that teach generosity see happiness grow among members. Customs, friendship, and care are practiced everywhere. Children learn that helping others makes everyone feel valued. Communities with shared values become peaceful and joyful.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Which actions in the passage show generosity?
2. Why are loved ones appreciated in the community?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of this passage is that is an important shared value.
a) a festival b) generosity c) a candle d) ability
2. People and offer support during hard times.
a) help neighbors b) celebrate festivals
c) play games d) light candles

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Marian speaks fluent French. Her dad comes from France. (France)

2. A surgeon is a doctor. He performs operations. (operate)

A Dictation Time

| Vocabulary | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| participant | | يقوى |
| unity | | زينة/ زخرفة/ ديكور |
| delicious | | انتماء |
| carnival | | يوجد |
| explanation | | روابط/ علاقات |
| fast-changing | | يتطور/ يطور/ ينمي |
| expert | | يشكل/ يكون |
| wax | | خشب |
| Language Expressions & Prepositions | | |
| on TV | | على الإطلاق |
| welcome to | | ينتقل من ... إلى |
| connect ... to | | شعور بالهوية |
| It shows respect. | | يبقى متصلاً |
| Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms | | |
| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
| delicious | | |



Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Many traditions from parents to children as part of family life.
a) shape b) belong c) pass d) develop
- We live in a/an world where new technologies appear every day.
a) nasty b) old c) delicious d) fast-changing
- Love and kindness still even in the most difficult situations.
a) exist b) belong c) strengthen d) rest
- The city wants to develop more parks and green spaces. The verb "develop" is an antonym to "
a) worsen b) sell c) support d) encourage
- People from many countries come to watch the colorful each summer.
a) decoration b) carnival c) wood d) wax
- She likes to participate in school activities. We delete 'e' and add the suffix "
a) -tion b) -ant c) -ing d) -ed

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

develop – ties – decorations – carnivals – expert

People everywhere enjoy traditions that give meaning to life and belonging to communities. During festivals, (1) that families prepare together make homes shine with color. A cultural (2), who studies human behavior, believes that traditions shape identity and social (3) Delicious food brings people who have the same values together. Even when the world is fast-changing, traditions continue to (4) while keeping their old spirit alive for everyone.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- I remember the day. I won the gold medal. (when)
.....
- This is the park. We used to play soccer in this park. (where)
.....
- We interviewed a scientist. His research on space is very important. (whose)
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Every has deep knowledge in their field.
a) beginner b) participant c) expert d) unity
2. Welcome our English class! Let's start learning happily.
a) to b) in c) with d) at
3. The classroom the new students sit has computers inside.
a) which b) whose c) when d) where
4. I will never forget the day I got my first prize.
a) who b) when c) where d) whose

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

develop – unity – on – at – candles

Traditions, which pass from parents to children, help societies stay strong and full of life. People decorate their homes with colors and (1)..... during special festivals. Such customs create (2)..... among families and friends who gather to celebrate. These traditions (3)..... over time and increase belonging in every heart. Whether the event is shown (4)..... TV or shared in person, it teaches values that never disappear.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The woman is kind. She helped me cross the road. (that)
.....
2. The park is very clean. We play there every evening. (where)
.....

4 Write a short paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"A great festival"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The friends have many memories together from their school trips.
a) seasonal b) talented c) floating d) shared
- Everyone was surprised by the beauty of the sunset yesterday.
a) astonishing b) floating c) restless d) rude
- A small act of kindness can have a huge impact on others. The suffix "ness" in "kindness" means
a) an adjective b) the person who's kind
c) the act of being kind d) an adverb
- He ignores emails from people he doesn't know. The verb "ignore" can't be replaced by ".....".
a) care for b) neglect c) skip d) leave

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

sculpture – decoration – festival – tourists – region

Many customs are practiced to preserve the culture and identity of local communities. The which begins with music, brings joy and excitement to people of all ages. Creativity is expressed through art, and performances that tell a story about the history of the The celebration, which is common for locals, is admired and respected by who visit the area.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- The movie you recommended was really boring.
- The man works in that shop is very tall.
- The year we moved abroad changed our lives completely.

4. The restaurant (which) they had filmed that movie became famous.

5. The man (who) car was stolen called the police quickly.

4 Complete the following dialog:

Lina thinks that traditions are customs that people follow.

Omar: What are traditions, Lina?

Lina: (1)

Omar: Do all families have traditions?

Lina: (2)

Omar: (3)?

Lina: My family has a big dinner every Friday night.

Omar: (4)?

Lina: That's important because it helps us stay connected.

Omar: Do you ever start new traditions?

Lina: (5) We make new ones for fun!

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The importance of traditions"

Unit 8

Al-Azhar Mini-Test

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Egyptians wear new clothes and go to pray on Eid Al-Fitr.

Emma : What do Egyptians do on Eid Al-Fitr?

Ahmed : (1)

Emma : Do people visit each other?

Ahmed : (2)

Emma : (3)

Ahmed : Yes, children get money called "Eidiya".

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The professors' helped everyone understand the scientific problem.

- a) carnival b) unity
- c) decoration d) explanation

2. Mom that we must study hard for the final exam.

- a) insisted b) remained c) collected d) returned

3. The movie we saw yesterday was based on a true story.

- a) where b) when c) who d) which

4. The lady son won the race looked very proud.

- a) who b) that c) whose d) where

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

ties - carnival - belonging - patience - decorate

Every culture has its own lovely traditions that express beauty and meaning. A (1) which fills the streets with colors and songs, brings everyone together. Families enjoy delicious meals and (2) their homes with great care. These times strengthen the (3) between generations and friends. Traditions help people feel a strong sense of (4) to their family and community.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The movie was exciting. We watched it last night. (which)
2. The student won the medal. He ran very fast. (who)
3. I remember the time. We visited our grandparents then. (when)

5 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

In a small town, people gather every year for a community festival. The festival starts with a ceremony that celebrates local culture. People who are proud of their traditions sing songs that reflect harmony in society. Seasonal foods, which are rich in taste, are shared among families and tourists alike. Children greet each other and participate in games that bring joy and excitement. The elderly, who have preserved these customs for many years, teach young people the importance of patience. Many tourists from abroad visit to see the beauty of the celebrations. Local artists display sculptures and paintings that tell a story about the region. Everyone enjoys the event because it connects people and shows respect for traditions.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What do local people do during the festival?
2. Why do tourists visit the festival each year?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the passage is ".....".
 - a) People work hard in the town.
 - b) Festivals connect people.
 - c) Children study at school.
 - d) Tourists dislike festivals.
4. The teach young people about patience during the festival.
 - a) children b) elderly c) tourists d) artists

A

Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| hidden | حكاية شعبية |
| problem-solving | شجاعة |
| valuable | ذعر/ يصاب بالذعر |
| survive | مغمور/ غارق |
| magical | أنبوب لتقية المياه |
| compass | قطعة أثرية/ فنية |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|--------------|---------------|
| out of sight | يبنى المهارات |
| ask for help | على جزيرة |
| get lost | يتخذ قرارات |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past Simple | Past Participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| hide | | |
| fight | | |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|----------|-------------------|--------------------|
| valuable | | |
| lost | | |
| brave | | |

Definitions

| | |
|--|--|
| | : a piece of historical object from the past |
| | : a safe place to stay and protect yourself |

Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- A/An is a question or puzzle with a hidden answer.
a) explorer b) pirate
c) riddle d) player
- The sailed across the sea searching for ships to attack.
a) explorer b) pirate
c) puzzle d) player
- He showed courage by helping the injured dog. We add the prefix "en-" to "courage" to make it a/an
a) verb b) noun
c) adjective d) preposition
- Animals often hide in a to stay safe at night.
a) torch b) rope
c) shelter d) root

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The boy stopped (buy) a bottle of water on his way home.
2. Do you like (swim) in the pool during summer vacation?
3. My grandfather enjoys (tell) stories about his childhood.
4. My friends agreed (help) me with my homework.
5. I would like (invite) my cousins to my birthday party.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Reading short stories is my favorite hobby. (I enjoy)
2. My sister doesn't like to play video games. (avoids)
3. The teacher said I could leave early. (allowed)



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

A teacher is explaining that a treasure hunt is a game where players follow clues.

Student: What is a treasure hunt?

Teacher: (1).....

Student: (2).....?

Teacher: People can find the clues hidden in places.

Student: Do schools use treasure hunts?

Teacher: (3)..... Teachers use them to make learning fun.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- We learned a lesson after making that big mistake.
a) lost b) hidden c) sunken d) valuable
- The lemon juice tasted very when I first tried it.
a) bored b) acidic c) lucky d) sudden
- What do you keep to stay fit and active?
a) do b) did c) doing d) to do
- We really enjoy board games together on Friday evenings.
a) playing b) played c) to play d) play

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- My brother wants to become an engineer. (engineer)

.....

- Students must complete the assignment by Friday. (Friday)

.....

- Good students never skip important lessons. (important)

.....

4 Write a short paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"A treasure hunt game"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|-----------|-------------------|
| enemy | ارتباك/حيرة |
| shipwreck | استراتيجية |
| motive | بقايا/آثار |
| swallow | يهمز |
| wisdom | إتقان/إجادة/تمكّن |
| calmness | قبيلة/عشيرة |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|----------------|---------------------------|
| known for | يتنافس مع |
| long for | في رحلة غوص |
| grow impatient | يلمح إلى/يشير إلى/يوحى بـ |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past Simple | Past Participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| show | | |
| teach | | |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|----------|-------------------|--------------------|
| known | | |
| calmness | | |
| defeat | | |

Definitions

: a group of families living together with shared traditions

: a clever plan to win a battle



Quiz Time

- 1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:**
strategies – for – as – loyalty – led

Antarah Ibn Shaddad is a famous Arab folk hero. He was known
 (1) his bravery and loyalty. He was born into a Bedouin tribe, he
 defended his people against rival tribes by using intelligence and clever
 (2) Ibn Shaddad (3) his army to defeat powerful enemies.
 His ability to unite people made him a true leader. Legends of Antarah
 teach (4) , bravery, and wisdom to young generations.

- 2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:**
1. She will study medicine when she finishes her secondary school. (decided to)

 2. They will travel to Japan next year to experience a new culture. (go)

 3. My father no longer smokes because it is bad for his health. (stopped)

The Story

- 3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The suits allowed the companions to the sea bed.
 a) run over b) walk over c) fly over d) feel about
2. There were in the underwater forest.
 a) strange plant b) coral reefs c) big fish d) tall trees
3. named every creature accurately.
 a) Nemo b) Aronnax c) Ned Land d) Conseil
4. Nemo was to the companions.
 a) brilliant and mysterious b) smart and kind
 c) cruel and harsh d) difficult and wealthy

- B) Answer the following questions:**

5. What did Aronnax see from the big windows of the Nautilus?

6. Why do you think Nemo didn't talk about his past?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Poems and songs hope to people who feel lonely or sad.
a) act b) perform c) give d) follow
2. The Egyptian army is always loyal and our country.
a) act b) defeat c) work d) defend
3. People use dictionaries the correct meaning of unknown words.
a) find b) to find c) finding d) found
4. She keeps the same question even after it's been answered.
a) ask b) to ask c) asking d) asked

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Abu Zayd al-Hilali is a famous Arab folk hero from the Hilali tribe. He was known for his strength, loyalty, and wisdom. When his tribe faced dangerous enemies, he led his fighters using clever strategies to defeat rival armies. His adventures included long journeys across deserts, fighting battles, and guiding his people during hardships. Storytellers, called "al-Hakawati," still tell poems and stories about him to teach lessons about courage and loyalty. Abu Zayd's ability to unite his tribe and protect the weak made him a respected leader. Children enjoy hearing his stories because they show how bravery, intelligence, and leadership can help people face challenges. His legend continues to inspire generations to act wisely and loyally in their communities.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What tribe did Abu Zayd belong to?
2. What lesson does Abu Zayd's story teach about loyalty?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the passage is that Abu Zayd
a) traveled the world b) is a famous Arab folk hero
c) liked playing music d) built the Pyramids
4. Abu Zayd led his tribe by
a) giving speeches b) building towers
c) throwing parties d) using clever strategies

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I enjoy helping my younger brother with math. (would like)
.....
2. We should finish this project before the deadline tomorrow. (need)
.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|--------------|---------------------|
| presentation | غابة مطيرة |
| respect | أقطار غزيرة |
| historian | بودكاست/برنامج صوتي |
| nature | بري/متوحش |
| describe | الإبحار |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|---------------|-----------|
| bring back | يبنى ماوى |
| find my way | فى عمر/سن |
| become famous | يبقى أمتا |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|---------|-------------------|--------------------|
| respect | | |
| wild | | |



Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Scientists visited the to study plants and animals living there.
a) podcast b) rainforest c) library d) shelter
2. Many people prefer to watch wild animals from a safe distance. The synonym of "wild" is ".....".
a) fierce b) tame c) farm d) quiet
3. It is important to safe while crossing the busy street.
a) eat b) run c) jump d) stay
4. Watching old photographs can bring forgotten moments in life.
a) back b) up c) forward d) to
5. Listeners can download the and listen to it later.
a) shelter b) magazine c) podcast d) book
6. It is wrong to insult someone because it shows disrespect. The prefix "dis-" gives the of "respect".
a) synonym b) antonym c) adjective d) adverb

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

at – in – built – presentations – found

Welcome to my podcast. Today, I am describing an adventure in a wild rainforest. Listening to explorers give (1) about their adventures motivates me to have one. I did it and (2) my way through thick trees and heavy rain (3) the age of twelve. Of course, at first, I (4) a shelter. Respecting nature and staying safe are important when we explore the outdoors.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. She said she would leave early. (decided)
.....
2. The children refused to eat their vegetables. (avoided)
.....
3. My grandfather no longer walks to the field. (stopped)
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. My grandmother got married the age of twenty-two.
a) at b) in c) on d) by
2. A lot of people are usually afraid of animals.
a) heavy b) safe c) calm d) wild
3. People use torches in the dark.
a) see b) seeing c) to see d) saw
4. You should avoid important decisions when you're feeling angry.
a) make b) to make c) made d) making

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

finding – podcast – nature – staying – building

I want to talk about the heavy rain in the wild. I enjoy describing my experiences while recording for the (1)..... . At the age of ten, I began to practice (2)..... my way in forests. I learned how to build a shelter, and (3)..... safe was my first lessons. Historians often inspire us by showing how people respected (4)..... long ago.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Good people never waste clean water. (avoid)

.....

2. Omar will see you at the museum tomorrow. (2nd of 10/2025)

.....

4 Write a short paragraph of 45-60 (6) sentences on:

"A short story you read"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A broken was discovered deep inside the temple remains.
a) riddle b) artifact c) clue d) prize
2. Sometimes a smell means the food is not fresh.
a) sour b) fresh c) lucky d) sweet
3. A/AN is a small electric lamp that you can hold in your hand.
a) ladder b) radio c) torch d) pillow
4. His creative solution impressed the entire team. To get the adverb of "creative", add the suffix ".....".
a) -able b) -ly c) -tion d) -ity

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

torch – choices – lucky – luck – panicked

Children exploring the jungle got lost. The dark forest seemed to be frightening. They were (1), but they carried tools to survive. They also learned to make (2) wisely. They had to collect rainwater and search for food. A (3) helped them to see their way in the dark. They tried to find a shelter under the branches. They were (4) to discover a hidden tent and slept until the morning.

The Story

3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. was curious to learn and recorded everything.
a) Aronnax b) Nemo c) Ned Land d) Conseil
2. Ned Land felt at first, but he missed his freedom.
a) excited b) impatient c) bored d) happiness
3. There were civilizations swallowed by the waves.
a) new b) known c) forgotten d) shared

4. The crew wore to walk over the sea bed.

a) suits b) helmets c) T-shirts d) shoes

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How was Conseil helpful during the voyage?

6. Do you think Conseil wanted to be part of the voyage or wanted to escape like Ned Land?

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ahmed wants (visit) the Pyramids this weekend.
2. My sister tries to avoid (makes) mistakes.
3. They decided (watch) a movie after finishing their homework.
4. I hate (wait) in long lines at the market.
5. She promised (help) me with my science project.

5 Complete the following dialog:

Ali thinks Abu Zayd's story teaches courage, loyalty, and hope.

Fatima : Was Abu Zayd only a fighter?

Ali : (1)

He was also smart and inspiring.

Fatima : How did he win battles?

Ali : (2)

Fatima : Clever strategies! (3)

Ali : Yes, he traveled far across deserts.

Fatima : (4)

Ali : He became famous because people tell his story.

Fatima : Why is his story important?

Ali : (5)

Unit 9

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Tariq sees that Abu Zayd inspired people by protecting the weak.

Nour : How did Abu Zayd inspire people?

Tariq : (1)

Nour : (2)

Tariq : Al-Hakawati tells his story.

Nour : (3)

Tariq : A hero gives hope and leads wisely.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The children tried to solve the written on the board.
a) explorer b) pirate c) riddle d) series
- Learning skills is important before going into the jungle.
a) survival b) danger c) magic d) forest
- She decided her old clothes to charity last weekend.
a) donate b) donating c) to donate d) donated
- Doctors advise us to avoid too much screen time daily.
a) spend b) to spend c) spending d) spent

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following box:

survive – encouraged – respected – matters – torch

A group of explorers got lost in the jungle after a sudden storm. One of them (1) them to invent creative tools from branches and stones. They used a (2) for light. Each person had to find ways to (3) by finding rainwater and building shelter. They realized that solving small problems quickly (4) for survival.

4 Rewrite the sentences by using the correct infinitive.

- Ahmed likes to understand how rockets work. (enjoys)
- My sister decided to learn classical music. (would like)
- I have a clear memory of locking the door this morning. (remember)

5 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Yesterday, I spent a very special day with my friends on a farm. We arrived in the morning and were excited to explore the place. First, we fed chickens and collected eggs. Then we went to the vegetable garden, where we learned to plant seeds and water the plants. During lunch, we shared sandwiches and talked about our favorite animals. Later, we helped build a small shelter for rabbits. Listening to the farmer describing farm life made the day even more interesting. This day brought back memories of previous trips and reminded me how much I respect nature.

A) Answer the following questions:

- When did the writer arrive at the farm?
- What did they learn at the vegetable garden?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the passage is
a) a day at the farm b) a shopping trip
c) going to school d) visiting the zoo
- First, the friends
a) fed chickens b) planted seeds
c) built a shelter d) ate lunch

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| predator | يحدّد موقع/يعين مكانا |
| hibernation | لا يصدق/مذهل/رائع |
| extreme | عاصفة رملية |
| adaptation | هجرة |
| fascinated | تغير المناخ |
| extraordinary | مقلق/مزعج |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| lose heat | يجمع البيانات |
| interested in | يتكيف/يتأقلم مع |
| during the day | يركز على |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past Simple | Past Participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| hear | | |
| sink | | |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| fascinated | | |
| harsh | | |
| prevent | | |

Definitions

| |
|--|
| : changes that help living things survive in their environment |
| : protecting nature and natural resources |



Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Because of the recent drought جفاف, fresh water resources became extremely in the village.
a) large
b) easy
c) scarce
d) cheap
- Good water conservation helps reduce shortages during the summer. The suffix "-tion" added to "conserve" forms
a) an adjective
b) the noun of the person
c) the noun of the action
d) an adverb
- Birds make a long each year to reach warmer climates.
a) celebration
b) migration
c) decoration
d) cooperation
- "....." are changes that help living things survive in their environment.
a) Inventions
b) Attractions
c) Adaptations
d) Decorations

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Aliaa asked me if I (eat) lunch outside the house the day before.
2. Alaa wondered what time the bakery (close) on Sundays.
3. My friend whether I had seen the new cartoon the previous night.
4. The teacher wondered why Ali come to school the previous day.
5. They wanted to know where play after school.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Tamer said, "When will we travel to Aswan?" (asked)
2. "Did you answer these questions alone?" The teacher said. (wondered)
3. Faten said to me, "Are you preparing for the party?" (whether)



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

The desert is hard for animals because it's too hot by day and freezing at night.

Ali : Why is the desert hard for animals?

Mai: (1).....

Ali : Can any animals live there?

Mai: (2).....; like the fennec fox, tortoise, and camel.

Ali : (3).....?

Mai: The fennec fox stays cool by having big ears.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Many smartphones have built-in that help locate them if they are lost.

a) tracking devices

b) public services

c) screens

d) speakers

2. Being a good helps you handle challenges at work.

a) student

b) problem-solver

c) traveler

d) fast runner

3. The tourist asked the guide the museum opened on Fridays.

a) if

b) where

c) that

d) what

4. The teacher asked the students what for the science fair.

a) they prepare

b) did they prepare

c) they had prepared

d) had they prepared

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. "Where do you live, Hani?" Hana said.

(Hana asked ...)

2. Ali said to his friend, "Can you swim?"

(Ali asked his friend ...)

3. "What time does the match start?" Hala asked her friend.

(started)

4 Write a short paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"Desert animals"

.....

.....

.....

.....

A

Dictation Time

Vocabulary

remarkable

يمتص/يستوعب/ينغمس في

indifference

الدفء

hatch

ظلام

desperate

سجن

breakdown

راكب/مسافر

camouflage

رمح صيد الحيتان

Language Expressions & Prepositions

mix with

يقاوم/يتغلب على/يطرد

take turns

خسارة في الأرواح

escape the danger

ازداد التوتر

force its way free

يضعف/يتضاءل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

Present

Past Simple

Past Participle

stand

smell

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

Words

Synonym (meaning)

Antonym (opposite)

under

ignore

freezing

B

Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

absorb – camouflage – drop – darkness – hunters

The Arctic fox lives in the freezing north all year round. Its white fur gives it perfect (1) in the snow. This helps it stay hidden from (2) The fox has thick fur on its paws that helps it walk on thin ice and stay warm. Its small ears and short nose help it (3) less cold air. People often wonder how it finds food in the (4) of winter.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. "Did you feed the dog this morning?" Mom asked me. (if ...)
.....
2. "What time does the school bus leave?" Ali said to the driver. (Ali asked)
.....
3. "Can you see the stars tonight?" Lama asked her brother.
(Lama asked her brother if ...)
.....

The Story

3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Life on the Nautilus was
a) quiet b) calm c) risky d) danger
2. The submarine was attacked by a giant
a) squid b) shark c) ship d) mountain
3. Nemo warships without mercy.
a) attacked b) robbed c) stole d) locked
4. showed calm courage and remarkable leadership.
a) Aronnax b) Ned Land c) Nemo d) Conseil

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What do we understand about Nemo's personality?
.....
6. How would you react if you were attacked by a giant squid in the middle of the ocean?
.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She felt about the movie; it was neither good nor bad to her.
a) amazed b) indifferent c) terrified d) proud
2. They worked together to the disease spreading in the area.
a) fight off b) look for c) encourage d) imagine
3. The student wondered the library opened on public occasions.
a) how many b) whether c) that d) then
4. Hala asked me whether I to visit Alexandria the following week.
a) go b) went c) would go d) had gone

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The Arctic fox lives in the far north, where it is freezing cold all year round. Its thick white fur helps it stay warm and acts as perfect camouflage in the snow. This small hunter can survive temperatures as low as -50°C ! During winter, the fox uses its strong sense of smell to find food under the snow. In summer, its fur turns brown to match the rocks and plants. The fox has fur on the bottom of its paws, like natural snowshoes, so it can walk on icy ground without slipping. Scientists say the Arctic fox is one of the best survivors in the frozen world. Many people wonder how such a small animal can live in such a harsh place.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What color is the Arctic fox's fur in summer?
.....

2. What helps the Arctic fox find food under the snow?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the passage is that Arctic foxes
a) are hunters b) can't survive
c) are amazing survivors d) match the rocks and plants
4. The Arctic fox's paws are like
a) rocks b) hunters c) temperatures d) snowshoes

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. "How does this machine work?" (Ali asked)
.....
2. "Did she pass the exam?" (Dad asked)
.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|-------------------|------------|
| migration | معرض |
| keen hearing | يعكس |
| hibernation | سمات/خصائص |
| growing thick fur | حيوان ثديي |
| meat eater | نالج |
| endangered | وظم/حالة |
| origin | زاحف |
| cliff | يعكس |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|---------------|------------------|
| keep air for | على ارتفاع |
| blend in with | يحتفظ بالهواء لـ |
| fall through | مقبول/منطقي |
| covered in | يصل إلى |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|-------|-------------------|--------------------|
| catch | | |

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Using a helmet can prevent serious injuries. The verb "....." can replace "prevent".
a) stop b) cause c) let d) allow
- The polar bear's white fur helps it in with the snowy environment.
a) reflect b) detect c) blend d) imagine
- Scientists study animal to understand how they survive in extreme places.
a) features b) future c) origin d) numbers
- The weather was so extreme that schools had to be closed. To form the adverb of "extreme", we can add the suffix ".....".
a) -ful b) -ly c) -able d) -ity
- The museum opened a new about space exploration.
a) exhibit b) kitchen c) park d) library
- Many animals are, so we must protect their homes.
a) safe b) hollow c) endangered d) physical

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

keen – Arctic – mammal – eater – eating

The Arctic wolf lives in freezing temperatures. It is a strong (1)..... that has growing thick fur in winter to keep air for warmth, and its white coat helps it blend in with the snow. This meat (2)..... hunts in groups and can run for miles over icy ground. Its (3)..... hearing helps it find prey under the snow. Someone may ask whether the (4)..... wolf ever feels cold in winter or not.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Maher said, "Why did you travel to Alexandria alone?" (asked)
.....
- "Are you still sick?" My friend said. (if)
.....
- Hadi said to me, "Have you prepared lunch?" (wondered)
.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The snowy owl has, which helps it hear mice under the snow.
a) keen hearing b) average size
c) extra weight d) rocky features
2. Turtles, snakes, and lizards are all examples of
a) reptiles b) mammals c) birds d) fish
3. They wanted to know we were going to stay in Cairo.
a) how many b) how far c) that d) how long
4. Omar wanted to know why I late to school the previous day.
a) am b) was c) had been d) have been

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

survivor – mammal – large – storing – store

The desert kangaroo rat lives in hot, dry places with almost no water. One of its best adaptation strategies is (1)..... fat and using very little energy. It stays cool in underground holes during the day. Scientists wondered if this tiny (2)..... could survive without drinking water for its whole life. Its (3)..... back legs help it jump quickly to escape snakes. This small (4)..... proves that even in the harshest places, life finds a way.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. "Where were you during the rain?" Dad said to Omar.

(Dad asked Omar where ...)

2. "Have you finished your drawing?" the teacher asked.

(The teacher wondered if ...)

4 Write a short paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"Polar bears"

Unit 10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Children learn to balance when they ride a bike.
a) keep b) break c) drop d) waste
- Water is in the desert most of the year.
a) harsh b) scarce c) tough d) extreme
- "....." is the movement from one place to another.
a) Adaptation b) Conservation
c) Migration d) Population
- She wore a thick coat to stay warm. "Thick" has the same meaning as "^a.....".
a) thin b) little c) dense d) far

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

hatch – feathers – frozen – hot – to

Emperor penguins live in the icy center of Antarctica, where temperatures can drop (1) -60°C. They have thick layers of (2) and fat to keep warm in the / wind. A child once asked a guide how the penguins (3) their eggs in such cold weather. The male penguin balances the egg on his feet. Their powerful bodies help them get through the long winter.

The Story

3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- fearlessly killed the giant squid.
a) Ned Land b) Conseil c) Nemo d) Aronnax
- The Nautilus was beneath thick ice at the South Pole.
a) saved b) trapped c) swimming d) floating
- Nemo fought warships without
a) emotion b) mercy c) movement d) happiness

4 The ocean was beautiful but full of

- a) threats b) submarines c) ships d) creatures

B) Answer the following questions:

5 How did the crew manage to survive being trapped?

6 Why do you think Nemo fought the warships without mercy?

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- My brother asked if I (hear) the thunder the previous night.
- Rahaf wondered how I (have made) that paper airplane.
- The doctor asked if the child (get) that medicine.
- Hala (tell) me where I had bought my new shoes.
- The teacher asked why the students (are making) noise during the lesson.

5 Complete the following dialog:

Salma is telling Sami that camels can drink a lot of water and store it.

Sami : Why don't camels get thirsty in the desert?

Salma : (1)

Sami : Do they store water in their humps?

Salma : (2) Their humps store fat.

Sami : (3)

Salma : Fat provides energy during long journeys.

Sami : (4)

Salma : They walk on wide feet so they don't sink.

Sami : What about sand in their eyes?

Salma : (5) They have long eyelashes.

Unit 10

44 Azhar Mini-Test

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nour is telling Omar that polar bears have thick fur.

Omar: How do polar bears stay warm in the snow?

Nour: (1)

Omar: Is their skin white too?

Nour: (2) It is black.

Omar: (3) ..?

Nour: Their paws work like snowshoes to walk on thin ice.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The zoo has a special about animals that live in cold places.

a) category b) exhibit c) diet d) length

2. Her eyes and nose are her most beautiful

a) colors b) features c) books d) clothes

3. They asked us where we during the sandstorm the previous afternoon.

a) be b) had been

c) are d) have been

4. My cousin wondered how I the difficult problem alone.

a) will solve b) is solving

c) would solve d) was solved

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

detect – reflect – adaptation – survivor – keen

The chameleon is a small reptile which is famous for changing color. This (1) strategy helps it blend in with leaves, branches, and flowers to avoid predators. It also uses color to talk to other chameleons! The chameleon has (2) hearing and eyes that move in different directions to (3) insects far away. This amazing (4) is a true expert in physical disguise.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. "Will you come to the picnic tomorrow?" Hala asked her friend. (if)

2. "How many books did you read last month?" the librarian said to us. (The librarian asked)

3. "Do penguins live in hot places?" the student asked the scientist. (if)

5 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The Arctic is very cold, but many animals live there. The polar bear has thick fur and fat to stay warm. It walks on ice with big, strong feet. It hunts seals and can smell them from far away. The Arctic fox is small and white. Its fur helps it hide in the snow. In winter, it curls up and covers its nose with its tail. The snowy owl has soft white feathers and can see in the dark. It flies quietly to catch mice and lemmings. Penguins do not live in the Arctic—they live in Antarctica! In Antarctica, emperor penguins stand together in big groups to keep warm. The fathers hold the egg on their feet for many weeks. These animals are amazing survivors.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What does the Arctic fox use to cover its nose?

2. Why do emperor penguins stand in big groups?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the passage is that

a) penguins live in Antarctica

b) ways to stay warm and safe

c) polar bears hunt seals

d) foxes have white fur

4. Emperor penguins keep the egg warm

a) in a nest

b) on their feet

c) in a hole

d) under snow



Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|-------------|---------------------|
| hike | منظر طبيعي |
| slippery | مبهر/رائع |
| pack | لا ينسى |
| destination | سفاري (صيد/استكشاف) |
| snorkeling | يعيد تحديد الموعد |
| hospitality | بناء/بنية/تركيب |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| run off with | يجد نفسه في موقف |
| gather overhead | يلجأ إلى ماوى |
| miss a flight | على بعد |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past Simple | Past Participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| set up | | |
| steal | | |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|--------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| breathtaking | | |
| challenging | | |
| smooth | | |

Definitions

| | |
|--|---|
| | : smooth and hard to stand on because you might slide |
| | : places where the dead are buried, often underground |

B

Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Drivers should slow down when roads are after the rain.
a) dusty
b) slippery
c) wide
d) clear
2. They chose a smooth path so that they could walk comfortably. The synonym of "smooth" is "
a) soft
b) dangerous
c) rough
d) muddy
3. We'll have to reschedule the meeting because the manager is sick today. The prefix "re-" in "reschedule" means
a) without
b) never
c) again
d) full of
4. We went on a in Kenya and saw lions and elephants.
a) voyage
b) picnic
c) safari
d) cruise

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Before Eman left, she (put) all her books into her bag.
2. My grandparents (live) in the countryside many years ago.
3. We (not watch) the match because the TV was broken.
4. (you/ever) tried molokhia before you visited my house?
5. By the time I arrived, they (already eat) all the cake on the table.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. She read the short story, then went to bed. (Before)
2. I didn't solve the problem until my father had helped me. (After)
3. Before returning home, I had met my friend in the supermarket. (By the time)



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Omar hiked Mount Sinai at night.

Lina : Tell me about your trip to Sinai.

Omar : (1).....

Lina : (2).....?

Omar : We hiked at night to see the sunrise from the top.

Lina : Was it scary in the dark?

Omar : (3)..... . But my mom held my hand.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The view from the top of the mountain was absolutely; I like it very much.
a) boring b) breathtaking c) ordinary d) noisy
- After a long flight, we finally reached our safely.
a) direction b) destination c) transportation d) vacation
- They to the concert last night because the tickets had been sold out.
a) go b) didn't go
c) don't go d) hadn't gone
- After they the cake, they sang happy birthday.
a) cutting b) had cut c) cuts d) have cut

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Do you help your mom in the kitchen? (last night)
.....
- The teacher explains the math problem clearly. (very easily)
.....
- I lost my keys. So, I couldn't enter the house. (because)
.....

4 Write a short paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"A travel tale"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

| Vocabulary | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| memorable | | لا نهائي/دائم |
| solo adventure | | محافظة |
| hesitate | | مهمم/عازم |
| exhausting | | بشغف/بحماس |
| confirm | | مدفن/مقبرة |
| cruelty | | داعم/مؤيد/مشجع |
| Language Expressions & Prepositions | | |
| give up | | أفكار عن/أراؤه حول |
| on a ferry | | يبدأ رحلة |
| agree with | | يخطط للهروب |
| stay forever | | لا يهم/بفض النظر |
| Conjugations of Irregular Verbs | | |
| Present | Past Simple | Past Participle |
| ride | | |
| Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms | | |
| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
| set off | | |
| exhausting | | |
| solo | | |
| sorrow | | |



Quiz Time

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

on – motorcycle – southward – cliffs – for

Three months ago, I set off the journey of a lifetime. The Nile Valley is full of life and history. As I rode (1)....., I passed farms, mosques, and busy markets. Sometimes, the road was rough, and my (2)..... needed repairs. Once, I had to wait (3)..... a ferry to cross the river. While waiting, I met other travelers who shared stories. I followed their directions and found it! The sandstone (4)..... were covered in symbols.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Alaa walks to school with her friend. (yesterday)
.....
2. They don't play outside on hot days. (last Tuesday)
.....
3. First, we went to the park. Then, we visited our uncle. (After)
.....

The Story

3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. is clearly a man of wealth and sorrow.
a) Ned Land b) Nemo c) Aronnax d) Conseil
2. Ned Land planned
a) escape b) flying c) swimming d) staying
3. Conseil was and loyal to his master.
a) noisy b) calm c) angry d) patient
4. Nemo guided the Nautilus through a graveyard of
a) sunken ships b) fish
c) whales d) saved ships

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why did the companions decide to escape?
.....
6. How would you feel if you went through a graveyard of sunken ships?
.....

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1. The Pyramids are important that show Egypt's ancient history.
a) markets b) landmarks c) streets d) borders
2. The prisoners quietly started to escape during the night.
a) have b) plan c) keep d) agree
3. My mom cook dinner because she had been ill.
a) wasn't b) can't c) couldn't d) hadn't
4. Before he left school, Omar breakfast with his family.
a) eats b) ate c) had eaten d) eating

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Youssef wanted to see Egypt in a special way—on his own motorcycle. He didn't want a family vacation or a school tour. He wanted a real adventure. He started in Cairo and rode southward toward Luxor. The trip was exhausting, but also wonderful. He saw endless deserts, green fields, and historic landmarks. In one village, his bike broke down, and a local man helped him fix it. They drank tea together and talked about life. Youssef wrote everything in his journal, including a personal image of a sunset over the cliffs. He never gave up, even when things were difficult. In the end, he felt proud. He had proven to himself that he was strong and brave.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What type of trip did Youssef NOT want?
.....

2. What does the sunset over the cliffs tell us about Youssef's feelings?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the passage is that Youssef likes
a) food b) exploring places c) motorcycles d) Luxor
4. A helped Youssef fix his motorcycle.
a) police officer b) tourist c) local man d) friend

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Is your dad working from home today? (yesterday)
.....
2. The baby slept well because he had eaten enough. (before)
.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|----------------|------------------------|
| suggestion | مذهول |
| capture | يقدر على/ يتِمَكَّن من |
| transportation | لقطة/ صورة |
| narrative | غُيُور/ حُسُود |
| experienced | يوصى بـ |
| thrilled | خارج البلاد |
| pharaohs | أنار |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| take a boat ride | مختلف عن |
| for the first time | بينى قلعة رملية |
| ask for advice | سيراً على الأقدام |
| on a camel | على الأرض |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|----------|-------------------|--------------------|
| amazed | | |
| helpful | | |
| thrilled | | |

B**Quiz Time****1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- Can you help me carry these heavy bags? The verb "help" can be an adjective by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -ly b) -able c) -ful d) -ive
- The kids were thrilled when they saw the fireworks الألعاب نارية. The word "thrilled" can't be the same as ".....".
a) happy b) delighted c) disappointed d) pleased
- It's right to ask advice when you don't know which places to visit first.
a) for b) at c) on d) to
- During our trip to Aswan, we decided to a boat ride on the Nile.
a) sell b) climb c) take d) buy
- Our English teacher asked us to write a short travel about our summer trip.
a) photo b) song c) narrative d) map
- The in Luxor are really amazing; they were made by the ancient Egyptians.
a) beaches b) monuments c) movements d) seas

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

capture – in – on – shot – recommend

My family decided to do something different. We decided to take a boat ride (1)..... the Nile. The sunset was pink and orange. I had never seen such a peaceful scene. I tried to (2)..... it with my camera. I got one perfect (3)..... of the water and sky. My sister said it looked like a painting. By the time we returned, stars had appeared. I felt relaxed and happy. I (4)..... trying this again.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Before we arrived, the movie had already started. (As soon as)
.....
- Did you buy the new suit after going to the new mall? (after you)
.....
- After he had finished his work, he visited his friend in the hospital. (until)
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The long hike up the mountain was _____, but the view was worth it.
a) exhausting b) short c) cool d) quiet
- I followed my father's _____ and wore comfortable shoes for walking all day.
a) correction b) suggestion c) chair d) sky
- What _____ your dad done before he became an engineer?
a) does b) did c) has d) had
- After I _____ my room, I invited my friend to come in.
a) was cleaning b) had cleaned
c) clean d) have cleaned

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

recommended – definitely – jealous – thrilled – breathtaking

I saw the Great Wall of China last winter. It was (1)..... I had read about it at school, but seeing it was (2)..... different. I climbed the steps slowly. My legs were tired, but the view was worth it. My friend said it was the best thing he had ever seen. He (3)..... sitting and eating snacks. I felt (4)..... and excited. I want to visit it again one day.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- Where do you have lunch?
.....

- First, she ate her breakfast, then she went to the park.
.....

4 Write a short paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"A short travel narrative"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Last week, she a seat on the early morning train to Alexandria.
a) explained b) danced c) reserved d) floated
- We need to set off early to arrive before sunset. "Set off" has the same meaning as ".....".
a) end b) start c) stop d) give up
- The teacher gave us a difficult problem to solve in math class. To make a noun of "difficult", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -tion b) -ity c) -y d) -sion
- Many people to find clean drinking water in dry areas.
a) struggle b) relax c) celebrate d) ignore

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

gathered – set up – down – up – storm

My family and I went camping near a hill last spring. We (1) the tent early and enjoyed the crystal-clear view of the lake. But by evening, dark clouds had (2) overhead. Within minutes, a strong (3) began, and the wind tried to scare our dog away! We stayed safe inside because we had prepared for bad weather. The heavy rain poured (4) all night, but our tent stayed dry.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Before 2021, I (never see) snow in real life.
- By the time we got there, the shop (already close) for the day.
- They (not be) at home last Tuesday.

- After I (turn) off the lights, I went straight to bed.
- My grandfather (tell) us amazing stories about his childhood years ago.

4 Complete the following dialog:

Nour and Karim are talking about the last weekend.

Nour : Did you go anywhere fun last weekend?

Karim : (1)

Nour : (2)?

Karim : I saw lions, monkeys, and giraffes.

Nour : (3)?

Karim : My favorite animal was the elephant.

Nour : Did you take photos?

Karim : (4)

Nour : Was it crowded?

Karim : (5) But it was still fun!

5 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A memorable visit"

Unit 11

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Mal went to Marsa Matrouh.

Zain : Did you travel during the spring break?

Mai : (1) We went to Marsa Matrouh.

Zain : (2)

Mai : My favorite part is swimming in the clear blue water.

Zain : Did you find seashells?

Mai : (3) I kept the prettiest ones.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. They had only ten minutes to everything before the bus left for the airport.

a) sit b) pack c) catch d) turn

2. Many tourists choose Luxor as their to see ancient temples and tombs.

a) destination b) column c) tomb d) peace

3. you visit your grandparents during the last school holiday?

a) Do b) Did c) Have d) Had

4. By last summer, I never ridden a camel.

a) did b) had c) have d) was

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

distance – vacation – perfect – distant – went

Nadia wanted to escape the flood of stress in her life. She planned a beach (1) with her sister. They stayed in a small building near the water, where the sound of waves was relaxing. They (2) snorkeling together and saw colorful fish. In the (3), they saw a felucca boat sailing peacefully. That journey was (4)

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. After he had fixed his bike, he went to the park with his friends.
(Before)

2. By the time we arrived, the movie had already started.
(As soon as)

3. Before going to bed, Hala had brushed her teeth.
(After)

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Laila dreamed of riding across Egypt alone. She saved money for months to buy a used motorcycle. When she finally set off, she felt both excited and nervous. Her route took her through the Nile Valley, where she saw farmers working in green fields. She stopped at small towns and visited historic temples. Once, she rode through a sandstorm and had to wait under a tree until it passed. People along the road were kind—they offered her water and suggested places to stay. She took many photos of sunsets and sandstone cliffs. Every night, she wrote in her journal about the day's sights and her personal thoughts. After three weeks, she reached Aswan. She realized this solo adventure had given her confidence she never knew she had.

A) Answer the following questions:

- How long did Laila's trip take?
- Why do you think people helped Laila on her journey?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the passage is that

- Laila loves photography
- a girl gains confidence on a solo ride
- sandstorms are common in Egypt
- temples are beautiful

4. Laila saw farmers working

- in the desert
- near the Pyramids
- in the Nile Valley
- in Luxor

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|---------------|----------------|
| emphasize | وراء/فيما وراء |
| product | ضخم/هائل |
| campaign | مبيعات |
| hybrid | مختلطة |
| qualities | زبون |
| solar-powered | مبيعات |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| manage the pressure | يصل إلى هدف |
| bring peace/prosperity | يشارك المستجندات |
| divide ... into | نظام هجين للطاقة الشمسية والرياح |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past Simple | Past Participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| sell | | |
| know | | |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|-----------|-------------------|--------------------|
| clear | | |
| immense | | |
| renewable | | |

Definitions

- : the work of telling people about a product to help sell it
- : a state of being successful and having enough money



Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The explorer discovered an immense cave filled with crystals. The word "immense" is similar to ".....".
a) huge b) small c) narrow d) little
2. The hotel manager made sure all the guests were comfortable and happy. The suffix "-er" changes the verb "manage" into
a) an adjective b) a noun (the person who manages)
c) an adverb d) a noun (the act of managing)
3. The school started a recycling thanks to student research.
a) engineering b) judge c) message d) campaign
4. The coach the players for winning the match.
a) warned b) praised c) ignored d) punished

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My grandmother asked me (call) her every Sunday evening.
2. The manager ordered the workers to (finishing) the report.
3. The dentist advised my brother (brush) his teeth twice a day.
4. Sally told her neighbor (return) the camera by tomorrow morning.
5. The lifeguard warned the swimmers (not/dive) in the end of the pool.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. My mom said, "Don't forget to water the flowers." (told)
.....
2. The coach said to the player, "Follow my instructions carefully." (advised)
.....
3. The teacher said to the students, "Hand in your homework tomorrow." (to hand)
.....



1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Adam thinks a leader always tells the truth.

Nora : What makes a leader honest, Adam?

Adam : (1).....

Nora : Do they hide their mistakes?

Adam : (2)..... They admit them and fix them.

Nora : Do people trust honest leaders?

Adam : (3).....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- His name will live in because of his brave military actions.
a) prosperity b) heritage c) achievement d) glory
- The team worked hard to first place in the engineering competition.
a) win b) design c) earn d) do
- The secretary asked us outside.
a) waiting b) to wait c) waited d) wait
- The coach the players not to skip warm-up exercises this morning.
a) reminded b) said c) wondered d) spoke

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- "Don't run near the pool!" the lifeguard said to the children. (ordered)
.....
- "Take this medicine twice a day," the doctor said to my grandmother. (advised)
.....
- "Wait outside, please," the manager said to the client. (told)
.....

4 Write a short paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"Great leaders of Ancient Egypt"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|----------------|--------------------|
| empathy | تواضع |
| motivated | مراء/نزاع |
| distracted | محترم/موقر (لغيره) |
| exhausted | عجائب |
| motivation | عزلة |
| half-conscious | يهدد |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| achieve shared success | ينال الاحترام |
| set goals | يتفاعل مع/يتعامل مع |
| beyond our reach | يبني الثقة/العلاقات |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past Simple | Past Participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| break | | |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| adapt | | |
| discourage | | |
| doubt | | |
| pride | | |

Definitions

-: delicate and easily damaged
-: amazing things

1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

encourage – modest – solve – modesty – shared

An effective leader listens to others with care and shows real empathy. They understand people's feelings and always try to (1)..... problems without creating conflict. A good leader guides the team toward their (2)..... success. They (3)..... the members of the team to work together. True leaders lead with (4)..... and earn respect by being honest and kind.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. "Turn off your phones during the exam," the teacher said to the students. (instructed)

2. "Don't feed the animals," the zookeeper said to the tourists. (warned)

3. "Wear your helmet when riding the bike," my uncle said to me. (told)

The Story

3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The three companions escaped in a small
 a) ship b) submarine c) boat d) airplane
2. What natural phenomenon threatened to damage their weak craft?
 a) the wind b) the rain c) the flood d) the volcano
3. Human curiosity and knowledge can wonders.
 a) win b) achieve c) give d) allow
4. Nemo's past remained a
 a) secret b) known c) story d) clear

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How did the companions escape?

6. Do you think Captain Nemo survived the storm?/ Why?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- His communication helped solve the problem during the meeting.
a) distracted b) boring c) effective d) amazed
- Even though Hala was, she refused to stop until the project was finished.
a) delicate b) moral c) exhausted d) vast
- The teacher told the students in the library.
a) not shouting b) not to shout c) to not shout d) don't shout
- Karima her friend to bring extra snacks to the picnic tomorrow.
a) asked b) said c) said to d) wondered

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Laila leads a team collecting money for helping poor families. When the weather turned bad, the team felt disappointed. But Laila, their leader, stayed positive. She said, "We can adjust our plan." Within an hour, she moved the event online and asked everyone to share photos of their home walks. She was adaptable and didn't let a temporary problem stop their task. She also communicated clearly through messages, so no one felt left out. Laila told volunteers not to give up, reminding them of their shared goal to help families in need. Her empathy and quick thinking kept the team motivated. In the end, they collected even more money than last year.

A) Answer the following questions:

- Where did the team hold the event after the weather changed?
.....
- Why do you think the team collected more money this year?
.....

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the passage is
a) charity walks are fun b) rain always causes problems
c) flexible leaders find new solutions d) online events are better
- Laila told volunteers not to
a) walk outside b) give up
c) take photos d) talk to families

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

- "Don't forget to lock the door," Dad said to me. (reminded)
.....
- "Please, help me carry these boxes," she said to her brother. (asked)
.....

A Dictation Time

Vocabulary

| | |
|-------------|-------------------------|
| coordinator | واجب دراسي |
| discourage | متابم |
| negotiate | متواضع |
| organizer | رسمي/معتمد |
| resist | جدول زمني/اعمال |
| researcher | معاهدة/اتفاقية |
| semester | موعد نهائي/موعد التسليم |

Language Expressions & Prepositions

| | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| have a meeting | يتابع المهام |
| play to strengths | يحدث فرقاً/تأثيراً إيجابياً |
| handle a disagreement | يسير بسلاسة |
| take a role | يحل خلافاً |

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

| Present | Past Simple | Past Participle |
|---------|-------------|-----------------|
| become | | |

Words, Synonyms, and Antonyms

| Words | Synonym (meaning) | Antonym (opposite) |
|----------|-------------------|--------------------|
| regular | | |
| organize | | |



Quiz Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The teacher reminded us that the for the report is next Wednesday.
a) slide b) deadline c) line d) software
2. Despite his success, Tamer lives in a small house and stays
a) preferred b) humble c) regular d) detailed
3. I must my files before the new semester begins next week.
a) guess b) resist c) discourage d) organize
4. The new material can high temperatures.
a) resist b) enjoy c) fail d) admire
5. A good leader knows how to inspire followers without forcing them.
The suffix "-er" in "follower" makes it
a) an adjective b) a noun (the person who follows)
c) an adverb d) a noun (the act of following)
6. It's important to organize your schedule to manage time effectively.
The prefix "....." forms the antonym of "organize".
a) il- b) un- c) im- d) dis-

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

keep – with – out – compete – make

A good team needs different roles. Sami is the coordinator. He told us to practice (1)..... the presentation slides. We must (2)..... track of deadlines so our project can run smoothly. The teacher reminded us to complete each other's work, not (3)..... We hope our project will work (4)..... well and even win an award this semester.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The teacher said, "Don't talk during the exam." (warned)
.....
2. My mom said to me, "Please, tidy your room now." (asked)
.....
3. "Never be late for school again," Mr. Samir said to Nader. (ordered)
.....



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A to-do list helps me track of tasks during busy weeks.
a) keep b) hand c) get d) stand
2. The weekly with my teacher helps me stay on track with my goals.
a) check-out b) check-in c) treaty d) award
3. The lifeguard told the children into the deep end of the pool.
a) not jump b) not to jump
c) to not jump d) don't jump
4. The doctor advised my grandma walking every day for better health.
a) start b) to start
c) starting d) not start

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

software – hand in – resolve – left out – leave

In our group, Karim is the leader. He told us to (1) our part of the assignment carefully and not to forget the final deadline. Nour is good at using (2) to design charts. We have a meeting every Monday to (3) a disagreement if needed. Our teacher asked us to notice if someone feels (4) and include them.

3 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. "Submit your reports by Friday," the boss said to the team. (ordered)
.....
2. "Don't cross the street here," the police officer said to the pedestrians. (warned)
.....

4 Write a short paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"A good leader"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 12

Mini-Test

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. She received a/an for being the best student in her class.
a) award b) punishment c) mistake d) challenge
2. The employee stayed calm even when he was under
a) pressure b) campaign c) treasure d) research
3. I really don't doubt that she will pass the exam. The word "....." can replace "doubt".
a) discourage b) distrust c) support d) succeed
4. Wildlife can quickly adapt to changes in their habitat. The word "adapt" can be an adjective by adding the suffix ".....".
a) -ation b) -ion c) -able d) -sion

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

set up – electricity – customers – companies – renewable

A group of volunteers organized a Clean-Energy Day. They wanted to teach people about solar-powered tools and (1) resources. The team included a mechanic, a teacher, and three students. They parked their van at the community center and (2) displays. One volunteer gave a clear message about saving. The event leader ordered the team to start at 10 a.m. Many (3) asked questions and showed interest.

The Story

3 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The helped the three men escape.
a) storm b) sand c) flood d) rain
2. wrote about the incredible adventures.
a) Nemo b) Aronnax c) Ned Land d) Conseil

3. Aronnax described the ocean as

- a) vast and mysterious b) big and blue
- c) calm and big d) scary and dangerous
4. Ambition mixed with sorrow could lead to
a) determination b) isolation
- c) exploration d) elaboration

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How did the companions feel when they reached a safe shore?
6. Do you think Professor Aronnax would join another voyage like this?/Why?

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My mom encouraged me (read) more novels to improve my vocabulary.
2. The security guard ordered the stranger (tell) his name.
3. The host asked the guests (remove) their shoes before entering.
4. The doctor told the patient (not / smoke) during the recovery period *فترة النقاهة*.
5. My aunt reminded me (bring) her bag.

5 Complete the following dialog:

Karim would like to be the speaker.

Layali: Who wants to be the speaker?

Karim: I'd like to be the speaker.

Layali: (1)

Karim: Because I'm good at talking in front of people.

Layali: (2)

Karim: (3)

Layali: I'll be the writer. I enjoy writing notes.

Karim: (4)

Layali: We could practice together.

Karim: (5) Let's start practicing together soon.

Unit 12

At-Azhar Mini-Test

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Nora wants to know her role.

Nora : I'm not sure what role fits me.

Tamer : (1)

Nora : I am good at helping others.

Tamer : (2)

Nora : Assistant! That works well!

Tamer : (3)

Nora : Thank you very much.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Knowledge gives people the to make good decisions.

a) prosperity b) heritage c) power d) glory

2. Every must be tested before it is sold.

a) workplace b) product c) sales d) cells

3. My sister told me her laptop without asking first.

a) not using b) not to use c) to not use d) using

4. The teacher reminded us our homework before the weekend.

a) finish b) to finish c) finishing d) not to finish

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

build – with – think – adjust – welcome

Leaders must be adaptable because plans often change. When something goes wrong, a smart leader will (1) quickly and stay calm. He asks his team not to deny their mistakes, but to learn from them. Good leaders (2) feedback and use it to improve. They also (3) trust by keeping promises and being fair. With strong emotional intelligence, they connect (4) team members.

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. "Review your notes before the test," Mr. Said said to the students. (advised)

2. "Call me as soon as possible," she said to her friend. (told)

3. "Don't leave your bags outside," mom said to her son. (reminded)

5 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Our school entered a math tournament last month. The teacher formed a team of four students. She chose Zain as captain because he is patient and explains ideas clearly. Zain's job was to organize practice sessions and keep track of tasks. He told the team to review mistakes together and not to blame anyone for wrong answers. They practiced three times a week using special math software. At first, one member felt nervous and slow, but the others encouraged him. "Everyone learns at their own pace" Zain said. During the tournament, they worked calmly and supported each other. They didn't win first place, but they got third—and everyone felt proud. The teacher said their real success was teamwork, not the award.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What tool did the team use to practice math?

2. How did the team help the nervous member feel better?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the passage is that

a) math tournaments are difficult

b) team support matters more than winning

c) software helps with math

d) Zain is the smartest

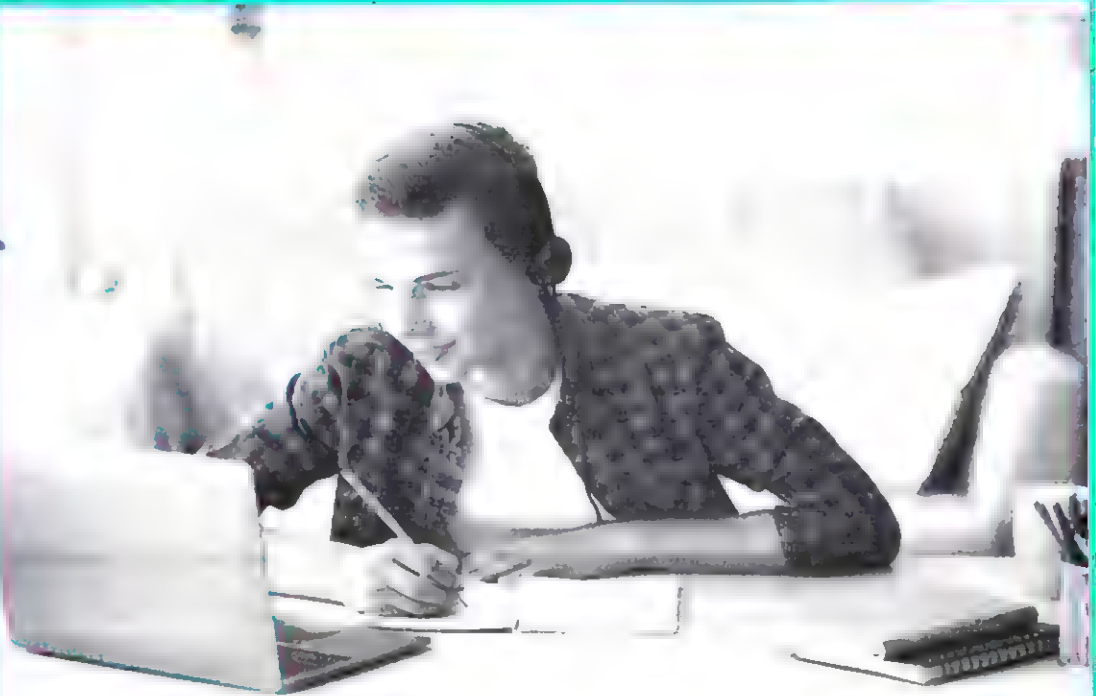
4. The team practiced a week.

a) once b) twice

c) three times d) no time

Part 2

Final Revision



A)

Units General Revision (Vocabulary - Language - Speaking - Writing)

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات أهم الكلمات والقواعد والمحادثة والفقرات على كل وحدة.

B)

Story Corner "Twenty Thousand Leagues under the Sea"

مراجعة على القصة (عشرون ألف فرسخ تحت البحر).

Unit 7: Sports

A Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|----------------------|------------|-------------------------|
| athlete | لاعب رياضي | fair play | اللعاب العادل/النظيف | admiration | إعجاب |
| battle | معركة/قتال | generation | جيل | attack | يهاجم |
| century | قرن (١٠٠ عام) | inspire | يلهم | medal | ميدالية |
| compete | يتنافس/ينافس | knight | فارس | opponent | خصم/منافس |
| achievement | إنجاز | gymnastics | الجمباز | bronze | البرونز/برونزي |
| celebrate | يحتفل | host | يستضيف/يقيم | monster | وحش |
| represent | يمثل | weightlifting | رفع الأثقال | harpooner | صائد الحيتان/رامي الرمح |
| united | موحد/مليحد | continent | قارة | | |

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- When the entered the stadium, the fans cheered loudly in excitement.
a) battle b) race c) athlete d) medal
- The dog suddenly the strangers, but luckily no one was injured.
a) respected b) attracted c) blamed d) attacked
- Reem is very active, she trains every day. The antonym of "active" is ".....".
a) safe b) lively c) lazy d) boring
- With hard work, Ahmed was able to achieve his goals. To get the noun of "achieve", add the suffix ".....".
a) -ence b) -ious c) -ity d) -ment

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

include – strength – global – strong – bring

Discus throwing and cricket have long histories that connect people across generations. Ancient Greeks enjoyed discus throwing as part of their culture, while cricket became a (1)..... sport much later. Athletes trained daily to increase speed, (2)....., and skill. The early organizers didn't use to (3)..... more social activities. Modern sports events continue to (4)..... people together in peace.

(used to) for regular past habits and routines

e.g. When I was young, I **used to** watch cartoons.

Usage

- We use **(used to + inf.)** to talk about a repeated action in the past (past habit) that has now changed.

Form

A) Affirmative Form: الإثبات

Subject الفاعل + **used to + inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. I **used to** play the piano when I was ten.

B) Negative Form: النفي

Subject الفاعل + **didn't use to + inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. I **didn't use to** walk to school.

Question

A) Yes/No question: السؤال بـ «هل»

Did + subject الفاعل + **use to + inf.** مصدر الفعل...?

e.g. **A:** Did you **use to** read the newspaper?

B: Yes, I did.

B) Wh- question: السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q. Word أداة استفهام + **did + subject** الفاعل + **use to + inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. **A:** Where did you **use to** play after school?

B: I **used to** play in the playground.

Language Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We (use) to use energy-saving light bulbs مصابيح موفرة للطاقة, but now we do.
2. Which primary school did you (used) to go?
3. (Do) you use to play the guitar when you were younger?
4. He used to walk to school, but now he (rode) his bike.
5. We (use) to get our shopping in plastic bags. Now, we don't.
6. Ali (used/walk) to work when he was young.
7. I used to play football every weekend when I (be) younger.
8. My friend never used to be active, but now he (be).
9. What did you (used) to eat for lunch?
10. Heba (use/have) a wooden hairbrush, but now she has got one.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I played tennis every weekend in the past, but now I don't. (used to)
.....
2. Nawal was a teacher, but now she is retired متقاعدة. (used to)
.....
3. He didn't like vegetables when he was a child. (use to)
.....
4. My uncle was a heavy smoker, but now he cares about his health. (used to)
.....
5. Did your grandfather usually plant vegetables? (use to)
.....
6. I always spent the weekend in my village when I was young. (used to)
.....



Skills

1. Speaking

The history of sport:

تاريخ الرياضة:

1. Do you think sport connects cultures as it did before?

هل تعتقد أن الرياضة تربط الثقافات كما كانت تفعل من قبل؟

• Yes, I think sports still connect people. They share joy and respect.

نعم، أعتقد أن الرياضة ما زالت تربط الناس. فهم يتشاركون الفرح والاحترام.

2. Why did people in ancient Greece start the Olympic Games?

لماذا بدأ الناس في اليونان القديمة الألعاب الأولمبية؟

• They started the Olympic Games to spread peace and connect people together.

بدأوا الألعاب الأولمبية لإحلال السلام وربط الناس معًا.

3. What is your favorite sport?

ما هي رياضتك المفضلة؟

• My favorite sport is football because it's fun.. لأنها ممتعة..

4. Why do people enjoy races?

لماذا يستمتع الناس بالسباقات؟

• People enjoy races because they love speed.

يحب الناس السباقات لأنهم يحبون السرعة.

5. What sport shows a lot of skill?

ما الرياضة التي تظهر الكثير من المهارة؟

• I think archery shows a lot of skill.

أعتقد أن الرماية تظهر الكثير من المهارة.

2. Writing

The Olympic Games

The Olympic Games are a famous sports event held every four years. Athletes from many countries come together to compete in different sports like running, swimming, football, and gymnastics. The Olympics teach us about peace, friendship, and fair play. The first modern Olympic Games were held in Greece in 1896. Every time, a new country hosts the games and shows its culture. People around the world watch and cheer for their teams. Winning a gold medal is a big dream for every athlete. The Olympics bring nations together and remind us that sports can unite the world in a positive way.

Unit 8: Cultures and Traditions

A Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|----------------|----------------------|----------------|-------------------|-----------|--------------------|
| ceremony | مراسم احتفال | culture | ثقافة | custom | عادة |
| harmony | التناغم / تناسل | celebration | احتفال | identity | هوية |
| patience | صبر | reflect | يعكس | tradition | تقليد |
| transformation | تحول / انتقال | neighbor | جار | purpose | غرض |
| generation | جيل | Lunar New Year | رأس السنة القمرية | honor | يكرم / يقدر / يشرف |
| hospitality | كرم الضيافة | shared | مشارك / متبادل | grave | قبر / مقبره |
| decoration | زينة / زخرفة / ديكور | participant | مشارك / مشترك | unity | وحدة / ترابط |

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- During the wedding, everyone smiled and clapped for the happy couple.
a) custom b) feast c) ceremony d) festival
- Before making a final choice, you should all the possible options carefully.
a) think b) consider c) promise d) invite
- Amira is very kind, she helps everyone. To get the noun of the adjective "kind", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ness b) -ful c) -or d) -ion
- Our school honors those who get high grades. The antonym of "honor" is ".....".
a) value b) admire c) dishonor d) worse

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

decorations – generations – bring – play – shared

Communities gather to perform traditional ceremonies. These ceremonies (1) joy and excitement to everyone. The festival, which is rich in seasonal (2), shows the beauty of the region's culture. Children greet each other with kindness while taking part in fun activities. The elderly who have preserved these customs for (3) teach the young about respect. This is (4) among relatives and friends.

Defining Relative Clauses

جملات الوصل المحددة

(who/which/that/whose/where/when)

A relative clause gives more information about a noun.

جملة الوصل تعطي مزيداً من المعلومات حول اسم.

| Relative pronouns | Usage | Examples |
|-------------------|--|--|
| who | people
الأشخاص (فاعل/مفعول) | e.g. • The teacher who teaches us English is kind.
• The man who you saw is my neighbor. |
| which | things/animals
الحيوانات/الأشياء غير العاقل (فاعل/مفعول) | e.g. • The cat which I adopted is very playful.
يمكن استخدام حرف جر قبل (which)
• This is the house in which I live. |
| that | people or things
العاقل/غير العاقل (فاعل/مفعول) | e.g. • The movie that we watched was exciting.
• The girl that won the prize is my friend. |
| whose | possession
الملكية (للعاقل/غير عاقل) | e.g. • The boy whose bag is red is my cousin.
يمكن استخدام حرف جر قبل (whose)
• My uncle in whose house we celebrated was very kind. |
| where | places
الأماكن | e.g. • This is the shop where I bought my shoes. (= from which)
• The school where my brother studies is far. (= in which) |
| when | time
الزمن | e.g. • I remember the year when we moved here. (= in which)
• My birthday is a day when I feel special. (= on which) |

لاحظ:

نستخدم (which) مع الأماكن إذا:

١- كانت الجملة الثانية وصفاً للمكان:

• That's the school **which** has the best teachers.

٢- إذا وجد حرف جر (قبل which أو بعدها).

• This is the park **in which** we play football.• This is the school **which** we learn **in**.

نستخدم (which) مع الوقت إذا:

١- كانت الجملة الثانية وصفاً للوقت:

• Summer is the season **which** has many hot days.

٢- إذا وجد حرف جر (قبل which أو بعدها).

• I remember the day **which** I got my new bike **on**.• Monday is the day **on which** I visit my grandmother.

Language Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The woman (which) lives next to the library has a dog.
2. The song (who) we listened to was written by Mesbah.
3. The shop (which) we buy vegetables is open every day.
4. The day (where) my brother was born was memorable.
5. The girl (who's) father is a doctor studies medicine.
6. The car (what) is parked outside belongs to my uncle.
7. The boy (whose) made that drawing is only eight years old.
8. The lady (who) dress is red works in the library.
9. The park (when) the children play every evening is near the river.
10. The day (where) we won the medal was unforgettable.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The phone was left on the chair. It rang suddenly. (which)
.....
2. The runner trained hard all winter. He won the race. (who)
.....
3. The artist is a friend of mine. His paintings are famous. (whose)
.....
4. We saw wonderful monuments in the museum. They were made by the ancient Egyptians. (that)
.....
5. I remembered the day. I got a higher position on that day. (when)
.....
6. I will go to the factory. My brother works there. (where)
.....



Skills

1. Speaking

Asking about cultures and traditions

السؤال عن الثقافات والتقاليد

1. What tradition is important in your family or country?

ما التقليد المهم في عائلتك أو بلدك؟

• Eid Al-Fitr is an important tradition in Egypt.

عيد الفطر تقليد مهم في مصر.

2. What do people usually do during this tradition?

ماذا يفعل الناس عادةً خلال هذا التقليد؟

• People wear new clothes, visit their relatives, and eat kahk.

يرتدي الناس ملابس جديدة، ويزورون أقاربهم ويأكلون الكحك.

3. Why should this tradition be remembered or preserved?

لماذا يجب أن نتذكر هذا التقليد أو نحافظ عليه؟

• Because it brings joy and keeps families close.

لأنه يجلب الفرح ويحافظ على ترابط العائلة.

2. Writing

Customs you admire most

I admire many customs in my country. Customs are traditions that people follow in daily life. One custom I like is greeting people politely, even if they are strangers. Saying hello, shaking hands, or showing respect is part of our daily traditions. Another custom is helping others even if they don't ask for help. People share food, give gifts, and visit sick friends. Festivals are also important customs. During holidays, families celebrate together with joy and happiness. I also admire our tradition of respecting the elderly. Listening to grandparents and helping parents are good habits. I try to follow these customs every day. They make people happy, show love and respect, and keep our culture alive. I feel proud when I practice them.

Unit 9: Courage and Survival

A Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|----------|-----------------|---------|---------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| artifact | قطعة أثرية/فنية | magical | سحري | sailing | الإبحار |
| clue | مفتاح حل اللغز | marine | بحري | shelter | ماوى/مسكن |
| courage | شجاعة | motive | دافع/حافز | sour/acidic | لاذع/حامض |
| defeat | يَهْزِم | panic | ذعر/رعب | survive | ينجو/يبقى حيًا |
| defend | يدافع عن | pirate | قرصان | torch | كشاف/مصباح يدوي |
| explorer | مستكشفون/ركالة | podcast | بودكاست/برنامج صوتي | treasure hunt | لعبة البحث عن الكنز |
| hidden | مخبأ/مخفى | riddles | فوازير/ألغاز | tribe | قبيلة/عشيرة |
| jungle | غابة/أدغال | rival | خصم/منافس | valuable | قيم |

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The teacher gave a small to help solve the puzzle.
a) prize b) riddle c) hint d) explorer
- The teacher prepared an important of questions for the final exam.
a) branch b) jungle c) map d) series
- Ali has a lot of courage. To get the verb of "courage", add the prefix ".....".
a) re- b) en- c) im- d) ir-
- The movie Hesham watched was exciting. The antonym of "exciting" is ".....".
a) simple b) boring c) unreal d) afraid

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

clues – learn – valuable – out of – teach

Treasure hunts can happen anywhere, even on an island or in a park. We had hidden (1)..... objects that players needed to discover. The game encouraged solving riddles and following (2)..... carefully. I liked using quick thinking and creative problem-solving. The activity helped us to (3)..... teamwork and share ideas. We preferred searching for clues (4)..... sight to avoid distractions. At the end, the winners received a special prize.



Language

Verbs followed by "to + inf. / v + ing".

1. Verbs followed by "to + inf."

(want – hope – force – use – promise – refuse – agree – learn
– need – decide – mean – would like)

e.g. The children **want to visit** their grandparents during the holiday.

- The boy **refused to share** his toys.

2. Verbs followed by "v + ing"

(enjoy – finish – keep – avoid)

e.g. She **kept talking** even after the teacher asked for silence.

- They should **avoid eating** too many sweets.

3. Verbs followed by "to + inf." or "v + ing" without difference in meaning

(like/love / hate)

e.g. He **hates waiting** in long lines.

- He **hates to wait** in long lines.

4. Verbs followed by "to + inf." or "v + ing" with different meanings

(stop/remember)

e.g. I **stopped smoking** because it was unhealthy.

- I **stopped to buy** a bottle of water; I was thirsty.
- I **remember meeting** you last year.
- **Remember to lock** the door.

Language Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My little brother loves (play) football in the park after school.
2. I hope (see) my cousins when we go to Alexandria next week.
3. She refused (eat) the vegetables, so her mom was a little upset.
4. We kept (walk) until we reached the Nile bank.
5. Do you agree (join) our study group for the math test?
6. He needs (finish) his homework before he can watch TV.
7. The students finished (write) their essays.
8. We learned (solve) the problem in class.
9. My parents would like (travel) to Aswan during the winter vacation.
10. Don't stop (practice)! You're getting better every day.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Karim likes to try new recipes using ingredients **مقادير** from his garden. (enjoys)
.....
2. I said I would help him with his homework. (promised)
.....
3. Magid said, "Let's go to the zoo." (suggested)
.....
4. Don't make noise; the baby is asleep. (Stop)
.....
5. I don't like to stay in a crowded area. (avoid)
.....
6. She let Hagar use her cell phone. (allowed)
.....

1. Speaking

Retelling the story of a legend

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Who is the hero of the story? | من هو بطل القصة؟ |
| • The hero is Abu Zayd Al-Hilali. | البطل هو أبو زيد الهلالي. |
| 2. Where did the story take place? | أين حدثت القصة؟ |
| • The story took place in the desert. | حدثت القصة في الصحراء. |
| 3. What problem did the hero face? | ما المشكلة التي واجهها البطل؟ |
| • He had to defeat a strong army. | كان عليه هزيمة جيش قوى. |
| 4. What did Abu Zayd learn from the adventure? | ماذا تعلم أبو زيد من المغامرة؟ |
| • He learned to be brave and clever. | تعلم أن يكون شجاعاً وذكياً. |
| 5. Who were the enemies in the story? | من هم الأعداء في القصة؟ |
| • The enemies were the rival armies. | كان الأعداء الجيوش المنافسة. |
| 6. How did the people feel after he won? | كيف شعر الناس بعد أن فاز؟ |
| • They were happy and proud. | شعروا بالسعادة والفخر. |
| 7. Can you tell the story to your friends? | هل تستطيع أن تروي القصة لأصدقائك؟ |
| • Yes, I can retell the story of Abu Zayd. | نعم، أستطيع أن أعيد سرد قصة أبو زيد. |

2. Writing

“A folktale you like”

One folktale I really like is “**Aladdin and the Magic Lamp.**” It tells the story of a poor young man named Aladdin who finds a magical lamp. When he rubs the lamp, a powerful genie appears to grant him his wishes. With the genie’s help, Aladdin becomes rich and marries the beautiful Princess Jasmine. However, an evil magician tries to steal the lamp to use its power for himself. In the end, Aladdin’s bravery and cleverness help him defeat the magician and keep his happy life. I like this story because it teaches that true worth comes from courage and kindness, not from magic or wealth.

Unit 10: Animal Adaptations

A Vocabulary

| | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| absorb
يمتص/يستوعب | demonstrate (d)
يوضح/يعرض | remarkable
رائع/ملحوظ |
| adaptation
تكيف/ تأقلم | fennec fox
ثعلب الفنك/الصحراء | sandstorm
عاصفة رملية |
| Arctic fox
الثعلب القطبي | growing thick fur
نمو فراء كثيف | scarce
نادر/شحيج |
| camouflage
التصويه/التخفي | harsh
قاس/شديد | storing fat
تخزين الدهون |
| changing color
تغير اللون | migration
هجرة | temperature
درجة الحرارة |
| clue
مفتاح حل اللغز | mile
ميل (وحدة قياس مسافة) | vegetation
نباتات/غطاء نباتي |
| conservation
حماية/محافظة | paw
مخالب الحيوان | warmth
الدفء |

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Climate change can weather and cause storms.
a) reflect b) affect c) hunt d) catch
- It's when people talk loudly on their phones.
a) relaxing b) physical c) average d) annoying
- Pollution is a serious threat to ocean around the world.
a) wildlife b) forest c) population d) experts
- Animals in deserts can bear the extreme cold at night. Add the suffix "....." to get the adverb of "extreme".
a) -ly b) -tion c) -ior d) -ent
- Regular exercise can prevent many health problems. The synonym of "prevent" is ".....".
a) stop b) allow c) give d) attract

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

on – in – hibernation – flexible – warm

Studying the of hibernation of bears is a big part of wildlife research. One team asked whether bears wake up if it gets too (1)..... . They use special devices to monitor heart rate and temperature. Climate change affects (2)..... patterns in surprising ways. Their current focus is (3)..... helping bears find safe places to sleep. The experts are (4)..... . They change their plans if animals move. Their work is quiet but very important.



Language

Reported Questions

A reported question is when you tell someone what another person asked, but you are not quoting their exact words.

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| Yes/No
Question
السؤال بهل | She asked me, "Are you coming to the party?" | - She asked me whether I was coming to the party. |
| | "Did they finish the project?", the teacher asked. | - The teacher asked if they had finished the project. |
| | - "Can you help me with this project?" he asked. | He asked if I could help him with that project. |
| Wh-
Question
السؤال باداة استفهام | - Adel said, "When will the train arrive?" | - Adel asked when the train would arrive . |
| | - "What are you doing now?" my mother asked. | - My mother asked what I was doing then . |
| | - "How long have you lived here?" the neighbor asked. | - The neighbor asked how long I had lived there . |

| Direct | Indirect | Direct | Indirect |
|-----------|--------------------------|-------------|------------------------|
| tomorrow | the following day | last (week) | the week before |
| yesterday | the day before | ago | before |
| tonight | that night | this | that |
| now | then | these | those |
| today | that day | here | there |

| ضمائر الفاعل | | ضمائر المفعول | | صفات الملكية | |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|
| Direct | Indirect | Direct | Indirect | Direct | Indirect |
| I | he/she | me | him/her | my | his/her |
| you | I/we | you | me/us | your | my/our |
| we | they | us | them | our | their |

Language Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My cousin asked if I (visit) my grandparents the weekend before.
2. They wanted to know what time the sun had (sets) that day.
3. Ali asked his friend if he had (eat) his sandwich at lunch.
4. The teacher wondered how many stars we (can count) in the sky.
5. She asked me (that) I knew the answer to question three.
6. My mom asked if I (put) my toys away before dinner.
7. The guide asked where we (stay) during our last visit to Luxor.
8. Laila asked her brother what he (dream) about last night.
9. They asked if the ice cream truck (come) to the park the day before.
10. The scientist asks how birds (finds) their way in winter.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. "Where do you work?"
..... (Adel asked)
2. Wael said to me, "Do you like fish?"
..... (wondered)
3. Tamer said to me, "Why didn't you come on time?"
..... (asked)
4. "When did you buy this T-shirt?"
..... (Nader asked me)
5. The teacher said to us, "Have you finished your task?"
..... (whether)
6. Father said, "Why is the baby crying?"
..... (was crying)



Skills

1. Speaking

Amazing Animals Adaptations! تكييفات مذهلة للحيوانات!

1. What do animals do to survive in their habitats?

ماذا تفعل الحيوانات للبقاء على قيد الحياة في مواطنها؟

◦ Animals find food, drink water, hide from enemies, and stay safe in their homes.

تجد الحيوانات طعامًا، وتشرب ماءً، وتختبئ من الأعداء، وتحافظ على سلامتها في منازلها.

2. What's your favorite desert animal?

ما هو حيوانك المفضل في الصحراء؟

◦ My favorite desert animal is the camel.

حيواني المفضل في الصحراء هو الجمل.

3. How does it survive in its environment?

كيف ينجو في بيئته؟

◦ It can go many days without water and carry food in its hump.

إنه يعيش أيامًا كثيرة دون ماء، ويحمل طعامه في سنام.

4. What special body part or behavior helps it live there?

ما العضو الخاص أو السلوك الذي يساعده على العيش هناك؟

◦ Its hump stores fat, and its thick eyelashes keep sand out of its eyes.

يحفظ سنام بالدهن، ورموشه الكثيفة تمنع الرمال من دخول عينيه.

2. Writing

Animal Adaptation

Animals adapt to their environment to stay alive. Each animal has special features that help it survive. For example, camels can live for long in the hot desert without water. Polar bears have thick fur and fat to keep them warm in the cold Arctic. Some birds fly south in winter to find food. Chameleons can change their color to hide from enemies. Fish have gills to breathe underwater. These adaptations help animals find food, stay safe, and protect themselves from danger. Without adaptation, many animals could not survive in their habitats.

Unit 11: Stories on the Move

A

Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------------------|----------------|----------------------|
| brehtaking | يخطف الأنفاس | family vacation | إجازة عائلية | narrative | سرد/رواية |
| business trip | رحلة عمل | hike | يذهب للنزهة مشى/نزهة مشى | pack | يحمّل/يجمع (الأغراض) |
| camping | التخييم | impressive | صهر/رائع | sandstone | صخر/حجر رملي |
| challenging | صعب/متحد | jealous | غيور/حسود | scenery | منظر طبيعي |
| cliff | منحدر صخري | landmark | معلم بارز/علامة مميزة | slippery | قابل للانزلاق |
| determined | مطمئن/عازم | landscape | منظر طبيعي/تضاريس | solo adventure | مغامرة فردية |
| educational tour | جولة تعليمية | lifelong | مدى الحياة | suggestion | اقتراح |
| exhausting | منهك/مجهّد | lightweight | خفيف الوزن | unforgettable | لا ينسى |

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- She on the wet floor, but caught herself just in time.
a) set b) slipped c) packed d) sit
- The Cairo Tower is a famous that many tourists visit every year.
a) market b) landmark c) river d) hotel
- The scene wasn't ordinary. The word "ordinary" is an antonym of ".....".
a) breathtaking b) challenging c) smooth d) near
- She bought new comfortable shoes. The noun of "comfortable" is ".....".
a) comfort b) comforting c) comforted d) comforts

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

impressed – peace – snorkeling – spot – camping

Mona wanted more than just a routine life. She dreamed of adventure and (1)..... as well. So, she made a trip to the Red Sea. She went (2)..... and saw fish living underwater. She had reserved a (3)..... on a boat weeks before. The mix of sea, sun, and friendly people (4)..... her deeply. At last, she understood what true relaxation felt like.



Language

1

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

التصريف الثاني للفعول + فاعل Subject

e.g. The small boy **climbed** the tree yesterday.

Subject فاعل + **didn't + inf.** مصدر الفعل

e.g. My mom **didn't cook** yesterday as she was sick.

Did + subject. + **inf.** مصدر الفعل ...?

e.g. **Did you see** the last film?

Q.Word + **did** + subject. + **inf.** مصدر الفعل ...?

e.g. When **did your mom cook** your last meal?

2

The Past Perfect Tense

زمن الماضي التام

Subject الفاعل + **had(n't) + past participle (P.P.)** التصريف الثالث للفعول ...

e.g. • Nancy **had written** her first poem by the time she was twelve.

• They **hadn't met** each other before the party.

Had + subject الفاعل + **past participle (P.P.)** التصريف الثالث للفعول

e.g. **A:** Had you **ever visited** the museum by five? **B:** Yes, I had. **B:** No, I hadn't

Q. Word أداة استفهام + **had** + subject الفاعل + **past participle (P.P.)** التصريف الثالث للفعول

e.g. **A:** What **had they done** before I arrived? **B:** They **had finished** their homework.

لاحظ هذه الروابط:

• Maged **was hungry** because he **hadn't eaten** lunch.

• After my mum **had heard** the news, she **phoned** me.

• Before my father **reached** the bus stop, the bus **had already left**.

• I **didn't play** video games until I **had finished** my homework.

Language Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. After they (reach) the station, they met their friends.
2. They (not/come) to the party because they were sick then.
3. By 7 p.m., I (finish) all my homework.
4. After she (eat) breakfast, she walked to school with her brother.
5. Before going to bed, he (brush) his teeth.
6. By the time she called me, I (already/leave) the house for school.
7. I (not sleep) until I had done my homework.
8. My little brother (fall) asleep during the long car ride yesterday.
9. We (no/know) the answer because we hadn't revised the lesson.
10. By last December, they (never/travel) outside Egypt.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. After he had fixed his bike, he went to school. (until)
.....
2. Before we went to the museum, we had booked tickets online. (after)
.....
3. My sister prepared dinner. Then I got home. (Before)
.....
4. Maha had studied French before she moved to Paris. (Maha didn't ...)
.....
5. Hagar had collected all the data before she started doing the research. (As soon as)
.....
6. I didn't visit Maher until I had contacted him. (After)
.....

1. Speaking

Talking about a personal travel experience:

الحديث عن تجربة سفر شخصية:

| 1. Showing Interest | إظهار الاهتمام | 2. Describing Experiences | وصف التجارب |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| ◦ Really? | حقًا؟ | ◦ It was absolutely ... | كان حقًا ... |
| ◦ No way! | مستحيل! / لا يمكن! | ◦ I had never ... | لم أكن قد ... قط |
| That sounds amazing! | هذا يبدو رائعًا! | ◦ The most exciting part was ... | أكثر جزء مثير كان ... |
| Tell me more! | أخبرني بالمزيد! | ◦ We suddenly ... | فجأة ... / فوجئنا بأننا ... |
| What happened next? | ماذا حدث بعد ذلك؟ | ◦ All of a sudden ... | فجأة ... / في لحظة واحدة ... |
| I want to hear everything! | أريد أن أسمع كل شيء! | | |
| 3. Expressing Emotions | التعبير عن المشاعر | 4. Asking Follow-up Questions | طرح أسئلة متابعة |
| I was thrilled/terrified/amazed. | كنت متحمسًا/خائفًا جدًا/مذهولًا. | ◦ What was it like? | كيف كان؟ |
| It opened my eyes to ... | فتح عيني على ... | ◦ How did you feel? | كيف شعرت؟ |
| I'll never forget when ... | لن أنسى أبدًا عندما ... | ◦ Did you ...? | هل فعلت/فعلت ...؟ |
| | | ◦ Were you ...? | هل كنت/كنت ...؟ |
| | | ◦ What else did you do? | ماذا فعلت/فعلت أيضًا؟ |

2. Writing

An adventure to Wadi El-Rayan

Last summer, my family and I went to Wadi El-Rayan. The sun was shining, and everything seemed perfect. But suddenly, our car stopped in the middle of the desert. We had no phone signal and grew worried. After a while, a kind man in a truck stopped to help us. He gave us cold water and called a mechanic. At first, I was scared, but his kindness made me feel safe. We waited under a tree and watched the desert birds. In the end, the car was fixed, and we continued our trip. This small problem became an unforgettable adventure. I learned that help can come from unexpected places and that kindness matters.

Unit 12: Leadership and Teamwork

A Vocabulary

| | | | | | |
|-----------|----------------|-------------|---------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| beyond | وراء/فيما وراء | guide | يرشد/يوجه | modesty | تواضع |
| budget | ميزانية | heritage | تراث | motivated | متحفز/لديه دافع |
| campaigns | حملات | hybrid | هجين/مختلط | product | منتج |
| conflict | صراع/نزاع | immense | ضخم/هائل/فائق الحجم | prosperity | رفاهية/رخاء/ازدهار |
| effective | فعال | important | مهم/هام | renewable | متجدد |
| empathy | تعاطف | inspire | يلهم | solar-powered | مشغل بالطاقة الشمسية |
| emphasize | يؤكد/يوضح/يبرز | Lower Egypt | وجه بحري/دلتا مصر | trust | يثق/ثقة |
| glory | مجد | marketing | تسويق | water pump | مضخة ماء |

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Good teachers their students to dream and work hard.
a) rule b) produce c) inspire d) emphasize
- Every in the company got praise for their hard work.
a) employee b) judge c) athlete d) employer
- Solar power is a source of renewable energy. The synonym of "renewable" is ".....".
a) clear b) sustainable c) huge d) obvious
- Amira found peace in nature. To get the adjective of "peace", we add the suffix ".....".
a) -ful b) -ion c) -ly d) -ment

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ruled – campaign – build – cooperation – immense

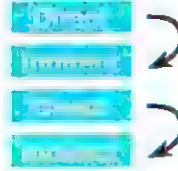
Khufu was a powerful ruler of Ancient Egypt. He decided to build the Great Pyramid, an (1)..... achievement that still amazes people today. His building project showed his power and vision. Khufu (2)..... with confidence and strong decision-making skills. He ordered his men to (3)..... the Great Pyramid as a tomb to honor his glory. This project required great (4)..... among workers.

Reported Orders

Reported orders are used when we tell someone what another person ordered, asked, or told someone else to do — without using their exact words.

نُستخدم الأوامر المنقولة عندما نخبر شخصاً ما بما أمر به أو طلبه أو قاله شخص آخر لشخص ما ليفعله — دون استخدام كلماته الأصلية بالضبط.

- e.g. • The teacher **said**, "Open your book."
 • The teacher **told me to open** my book.
 e.g. • The police officer **said**, "Don't move."
 • The police officer **ordered him not to move**.



لتحويل الأمر من الكلام المباشر إلى الكلام غير المباشر نتبع ما يلي:

فعل في المصدر **to/not to** + المخاطب + فعل الأمر + المتكلم

اتبع خطوات تحويل السؤال كما يلي:

١- نبدأ بالمتكلم.

٢- نكتب فعل القول من أفعال الأمر (told/asked/ordered/warned/advised ...) حسب المعنى المطلوب، ثم نكتب المخاطب/المفعول.

٣- نحذف علامات التنصيص ونربط باستخدام (to + inf.) للإثبات.

٤- أما إذا كان الأمر نفيًا نحذف النفي (Don't/Never ...) ونربط باستخدام (not to + inf.).

- نكتب باقي الجملة مع ملاحظة التحويلات الآتية:

تحول الضمائر حسب المعنى:

| ضمائر الفاعل | | ضمائر المفعول | | صفات الملكية | |
|--------------|----------|---------------|----------|--------------|----------|
| Direct | Indirect | Direct | Indirect | Direct | Indirect |
| I | he/she | me | him/her | my | his/her |
| you | you | you | me/us | your | my/his |
| we | they | us | them | our | their |

تحويل الكلمات والظروف السابق ذكرها بالوحدة العاشرة:

| Direct | Indirect | Direct | Indirect |
|-----------|-------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| tomorrow | the following day | last (week) | the week before |
| yesterday | the day before | ago | before |
| tonight | that night | this | that |
| now | then | these | those |
| today | that day | here | there |

Language Exercises

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The captain told the sailors (lower) the sails.
2. The doctor advised the children (drink) more water.
3. Hassan warned his friend (not/drive) so fast.
4. The teacher asked the group (complete) their project.
5. The teacher told the pupils (don't throw) litter on the ground.
6. My sister told me (charge) her phone.
7. The engineer instructed the workers (finish) working on the bridge.
8. Dad advised me (to not) eat many fats.
9. Sandy asked her brother (not/play) video games too much.
10. The leader told the group (gather) at the bus stop.

2 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. "Don't be unkind to your classmates," said the teacher. (The teacher told)
.....
2. "Be positive and care about the environment," said Mr. Maher.
(Mr. Maher advised)
.....
3. The teacher said, "Don't interrupt me."
(asked)
.....
4. "Turn down the music," Mom said.
(Mom asked)
.....
5. "Don't leave the front door open," Mona said.
(Mona warned)
.....
6. Suzan said, «Water the plants during my travel, please.» (Suzan asked me)
.....



Skills

1. Speaking

Discussing Team Roles

| Talking About Roles
الحديث عن الأدوار | Describing Team Dynamics
وصف ديناميكيات الفريق |
|--|---|
| <p>I'd like to be ... أود أن أكون ...</p> <p>I'm good at ... أنا جيد في ...</p> <p>I work best as ... أعمل بشكل أفضل كـ ...</p> <p>I'm naturally a ... أنا بطبيعتي ...</p> <p>My strength is ... نقطتي القوة هي ...</p> <p>I enjoy ... أستمتع بـ ...</p> | <p>- We complement each other.
نكمل بعضنا البعض.</p> <p>- Everyone plays to their strengths.
كل شخص يستخدم نقاط قوته.</p> <p>- We work well together.
نعمل جيداً معاً</p> <p>- Our skills balance each other out.
مهاراتنا تُكمل بعضها البعض.</p> |
| Making Suggestions
تقديم اقتراحات | Expressing Agreement
التعبير عن الموافقة |
| <p>How about if I ...? ما رأيك لو أنني ...؟</p> <p>What if we ...? ماذا لو أننا ...؟</p> <p>I think it would be good if ...
أعتقد أنه سيكون جيداً إذا ...</p> <p>Maybe we should ... ربما ينبغي أن ...</p> <p>We could try ... يمكننا أن نحاول ...</p> | <p>- That's perfect!
هذا رائع!</p> <p>- Great idea!
فكرة رائعة!</p> <p>- That works well
هذا يناسب جيداً</p> <p>- That makes sense
هذا منطقي</p> <p>- I agree completely
أوافق تماماً</p> <p>- Absolutely!
بالتأكيد!</p> |

2. Writing

Leadership Skills

A leader is a person who helps and guides others. A true leader is kind, fair, and honest. Leaders listen to people and respect their ideas. They help the team work together and solve problems. A responsible leader comes on time and keeps promises. A confident leader believes in the team and says, "You can do it!" A supportive leader gives advice and encourages everyone. Good leaders do not shout; they speak kindly. They make people feel important and happy. Leadership is important because it helps people reach their goals. When a leader is good, the whole team becomes strong and successful.

Chapter (1) in points:

1. In the mid-nineteenth century, sailors reported seeing a "sea monster" that smashed ships with terrible force.
في منتصف القرن التاسع عشر، أفاد البحارة أنهم رأوا «وحشًا بحريًا» يحطم السفن بقوة رهيبه.
2. Public debate grew so intense that a voyage was organized to capture or kill the monster.
أصبح النقاش العام حادًا لدرجة أنه تم تنظيم رحلة للقبض على الوحش أو قتله.
3. Professor Aronnax, his loyal servant Conseil, and Canadian harpooner Ned Land joined the crew on a warship searching for it.
انضم البروفيسور أرونأكس وخادمه المخلص كونسيل وصياد الحربة الكندي نيد لاند إلى الطاقم على متن سفينة حربية للبحث عنه.
4. After months of failure, the crew finally spotted a glowing shape and desperately chased it, but the creature hit the ship.
بعد أشهر من الفشل، تمكن الطاقم أخيرًا من رصد شكل متوهج وطاردوه بشدة، لكن المخلوق ضرب السفينة.
5. Thrown into the sea, Aronnax and his companions discovered the "monster" was actually a specially designed man-made submarine, beginning a new underwater adventure.
بعد إلقائهم في البحر، اكتشف أرونأكس ورفاقه أن «الوحش» كان في الواقع غواصة من صنع الإنسان مصممة خصيصًا، لتبدأ بذلك مغامرة جديدة تحت الماء.

Answer the following questions:

1. What role did Professor Aronnax play in the voyage?
Professor Aronnax joined the voyage as a marine scientist. His science knowledge helped him explain sea animals and understand the strange things they saw.
2. How did the description of the sea monster create a sense of both fear and wonder among the crew?
The sea monster was big, fast, and strong, so it was very scary. But its strange glowing body also made it interesting and exciting, and the crew felt curious to learn more about it.
3. Why do you think some sailors doubted the existence of the sea monster while others were determined to capture it?
Because Some Sailors searched for something, some doubted it after months without success, while others believed the reports and eagerly wanted adventure.
4. What do you think the importance of the "public debate" over the sea monster's existence was?
I think the public debate created urgency and pressure. It pushed people to take action, leading them to launch a voyage to find the creature. It also kept the topic alive in newspapers, increasing interest and the desire for answers.

Chapter (2) in points:

1. Aronnax, Conseil, and Ned Land were taken inside the submarine Nautilus, where they met its mysterious and knowledgeable commander, Captain Nemo.
أخذ أرونكس وكونسيل ونيد لاند إلى داخل غواصة نوتيلوس، حيث التقوا قائدها الغامض والمطلع، الكابتن نيمو.
2. Nemo explained that the Nautilus was designed for life underwater and powered by electricity, allowing long journeys without surfacing.
أوضح نيمو أن نوتيلوس مصممة للحياة تحت الماء وتعمل بالكهرباء، مما يسمح برحلات طويلة دون الصعود إلى السطح.
3. Although Nemo welcomed them, he told them they could never return to land, which Aronnax accepted out of curiosity, Conseil accepted out of loyalty, and Ned Land strongly opposed.
على الرغم من ترحيب نيمو بهم، أخبرهم أنهم لا يستطيعون العودة إلى اليابسة أبدًا، وهو ما قبله أرونكس بدافع الفضول، وقبله كونسيل بدافع الولاء، وعارضه نيد لاند بشدة.
4. Ned Land grew angry about losing his freedom and secretly began planning an escape from the submarine.
غضب نيد لاند لفقدان حريته وبدأ يخطط سرًا للهروب من الغواصة.
5. Life aboard the Nautilus was filled with underwater wonders, but the three companions felt both like guests and prisoners as they traveled through a world of beauty and danger.
كانت الحياة على متن نوتيلوس مآخرة ومليئة بالعجائب تحت الماء، لكن الرفاق الثلاثة شعروا وكأنهم ضيوف وسجناء في آن واحد وهم يسافرون عبر عالم من الجمال والمخاطر.

Answer the following questions:

1. How did Professor Aronnax react to the situation on the Nautilus? Why?
Aronnax stayed calmly because his scientific curiosity was stronger than his wish to return home, and he wanted to explore the ocean's secrets.
2. How did Captain Nemo compare the sea to the land?
Captain Nemo saw the sea as his true home and preferred it over land. To him, the sea provided everything he needed: treasures, freedom, and peace.
3. If you were in Ned Land's place, would you try to escape or stay on the ship? Why?
I would try to escape, because I would want my freedom and my normal life back. Even though the Nautilus is interesting, I would not want to stay somewhere I cannot leave.
4. Why do you think Captain Nemo chose to keep Aronnax and his friends on the Nautilus instead of sending them back to land?
Nemo kept them on the Nautilus to protect its secrecy, to prevent them from revealing it, and to preserve his hidden way of life.

Chapter (3) in points:

1. Aronnax witnessed breathtaking underwater scenes from the Nautilus, including colorful coral reefs, diverse fish, and ancient shipwrecks.
شهد أرونأكس مشاهد خلابة تحت الماء من سفينة نوتيلوس، بما في ذلك الشعاب المرجانية الملونة، والأسمك المتنوعة، وحطام السفن القديمة.
2. Captain Nemo took the guests on diving expeditions using special suits, allowing them to walk on the seabed and explore underwater forests and sunken cities.
اصطحب الكابتن نيمو الضيوف في رحلات غوص باستخدام بدلات خاصة، مما سمح لهم بالسير في قاع البحر واستكشاف الغابات تحت الماء والمدن الغارقة.
3. Aronnax documented everything scientifically, while Conseil helped by identifying marine creatures accurately.
وثّق أرونأكس كل شيء علميًا، بينما ساعد كونسيل في تحديد الكائنات البحرية بدقة.
4. Ned Land, however, grew increasingly impatient and unhappy, as the wonders of the ocean could not replace the freedom he missed on land.
لكن نيد لاند أصبح يشعر بعدم الصبر والحزن بشكل متزايد، إذ لم تستطع عجائب المحيط تعويض الحرية التي افتقدها على اليابسة.
5. The companions admired Nemo's brilliance but were worried by his mysterious past, while the Nautilus continued its deep journey far from any known shores.
أعجب الرفاق ببراعة نيمو، لكنهم شعروا بالقلق من ماضيه الغامض، بينما واصلت سفينة نوتيلوس رحلتها العميقة بعيدًا عن أي شواطئ معروفة.

Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Professor Aronnax find the chance to study marine life so exciting, and how did he take this opportunity?
Professor Aronnax was excited to study underwater life, observing sea creatures, plants, and landscapes, recording everything carefully.
2. How did the companions see Nemo's character?
The companions admired Captain Nemo's brilliance, courage, and skills, but they were unsure about trusting him due to his secretive, unpredictable nature.
3. How do you think Conseil's calmness and accuracy helped during their underwater exploration?
I think Conseil's calmness supported research, keeping the exploration organized.
4. What do you think Captain Nemo's silence about his past tells us about his character and his relationship with the crew?
I think Nemo's silence shows he is secretive and private, creating distance, mystery, and distrust despite his admired brilliance.

Chapter (4) in points:

1. Life on the Nautilus was dangerous, including battles such as a giant squid attack in which Nemo's crew and Ned Land fought bravely to survive.
كانت الحياة على متن سفينة نوتيلوس مفعمة بالمخاطر، بما في ذلك معارك مثل هجوم حبار عملاق حارب فيه طاقم نيمو ونيد لاند بشجاعة من أجل البقاء.
2. The submarine also faced deadly natural threats, such as being trapped under thick ice at the South Pole with limited oxygen before narrowly escaping.
واجهت الغواصة أيضاً تهديدات طبيعية مميتة، مثل احتجازها تحت جليد سميك في القطب الجنوبي مع نقص الأكسجين قبل أن تنجو بأعجوبة.
3. Nemo attacked warships without mercy, showing his willingness to sink enemies and revealing a darker side of his character.
هاجم نيمو السفن الحربية بلا رحمة، مظهراً استعداداه لإغراق الأعداء وكاشفاً عن جانب مظلم من شخصيته.
4. Through these events, Aronnax saw Nemo's mix of bravery, leadership, and cold disregard for human life, causing him to feel both admiration and fear.
من خلال هذه الأحداث، رأى أرونالكس مزيجاً من الشجاعة والقيادة واللامبالاة تجاه حياة الإنسان في شخصية نيمو، مما جعله يشعر بالإعجاب والخوف في آن واحد.
5. The ocean represented different things to each man—wonder for Aronnax, a battlefield for Nemo, and a prison for Ned Land—creating growing tension among the group as the journey continued.
مثل المحيط جوانب مختلفة لكل رجل - أعجوبة بالنسبة لأرونالكس، وساحة معركة بالنسبة لنيمو، وسجن بالنسبة لنيد لاند - مما خلق توتراً متزايداً بين المجموعة مع استمرار الرحلة.

Answer the following questions:

1. How would you describe the relationship between Captain Nemo and his crew?
Captain Nemo's crew trusted and respected him, following bravely, but his secrecy and coldness weakened personal connections.
2. What was Captain Nemo's role in facing the dangers on the submarine?
Captain Nemo was a brave leader, staying calm, giving orders, making quick decisions, and protecting the crew from dangers.
3. If you were a crew member, how would you have reacted to the dangers described in the text?
I would feel fear facing dangers like a giant squid, but teamwork and the captain's guidance give strength despite uneasy moments.
4. Do you think Captain Nemo's calmness was a key factor in their survival? Why or why not?
Yes, I think so because calmness helped him make quick decisions in danger, saving the crew, but his cold attitude raised moral concerns.

Chapter (5) in points:

1. As the Nautilus continued its journey, Aronnax became increasingly curious about Captain Nemo's hidden past and complex personality.
مع استمرار رحلة نوتيلوس، ازداد فضول أرونأكس بشأن ماضي الكابتن نيمو الخفي وشخصيته المعقدة.
2. Nemo showed both bravery and bitterness, attacking warships and claiming he fought against cruelty, yet revealing nothing about his personal history.
أظهر نيمو شجاعة ومرارة، فهاجم السفن الحربية مدعياً أنه حارب القسوة، لكنه لم يكشف شيئاً عن تاريخه الشخصي.
3. Ned Land remained focused on escaping, insisting that they were prisoners despite the wonders of the submarine.
ظل نيد لاند مصراً على الهروب، مصراً على أنهم سجناء على الرغم من عجائب الغواصة.
4. Aronnax felt conflicted between his love of scientific exploration and his desire for freedom, while Conseil stayed steady and loyal.
شعر أرونأكس بصراع بين حبه للاستكشاف العلمي ورغبته في الحرية، بينما ظل كونسيل ثابتاً ومخلصاً.
5. During a journey through a graveyard of sunken ships, Aronnax sensed Nemo's deep sorrow and isolation, strengthening the companions' determination to return home.
خلال رحلة عبر مقبرة السفن الغارقة، شعر أرونأكس بحزن نيمو العميق وعزلته، مما عزز عزم الرفاق على العودة إلى ديارهم.

Answer the following questions:

1. How did Aronnax feel when he saw the graveyard of sunken ships?
Aronnax felt sadness seeing Nemo's underwater graveyard, realizing Nemo saw himself in a lost world, increasing Aronnax's curiosity.
2. How did Nemo's actions confirm people's thoughts about him?
Nemo was brave and mysterious, fighting cruelty while keeping secrets, showing strength, determination, and a hidden, possibly painful past.
3. Nemo attacked warships without hesitation. Do you think this makes him a hero or a dangerous man? Why?
Nemo is seen as a hero for fighting injustice and protecting the weak, but his anger and actions may harm innocents.
4. Why do you think Captain Nemo chose to fight against cruelty on land?
Because Nemo suffered past injustice, rejected land, attacked warships to punish cruelty, protect the weak, while keeping personal painful reasons secret.

Chapter (6) in points:

1. After many months, the Nautilus approached Europe, giving Ned Land and the others a chance to escape.
بعد أشهر عديدة، اقتربت سفينة نوتيلوس من أوروبا، مانحةً نيد لاند والآخرين فرصة للهروب.
2. During a stormy night, the three companions used a small boat and struggled against dangerous waves before finally reaching shore at dawn.
في ليلة عاصفة، استخدم الرفاق الثلاثة قارباً صغيراً وواجهوا أمواجاً عاتية قبل أن يصلوا أخيراً إلى الشاطئ عند الفجر.
3. Safe on land, they felt relieved after their long and risky journey away from the Nautilus.
بعد وصولهم إلى البر بأمان، شعروا بالارتياح بعد رحلتهم الطويلة والمحفوفة بالمخاطر بعيداً عن نوتيلوس.
4. Aronnax later recorded their adventures, describing the wonders of the ocean, the dangers they survived, and the mysterious genius of Captain Nemo.
دون أرونالكس لاحقاً مغامراتهم، واصفاً عجائب المحيط، والمخاطر التي نجوا منها، وعبقريّة الكابتن نيمو الغامضة.
5. The story ends with unanswered questions about Nemo's fate and a message that human curiosity can lead to great discoveries, but sorrowful ambition can result in loneliness, while the ocean remains full of secrets.
تنتهي القصة بأسئلة بلا إجابات حول مصير نيمو، ورسالة مفادها أن الفضول البشري قد يؤدي إلى اكتشافات عظيمة، لكن الطموح الحزين قد يؤدي إلى الوحدة، بينما يبقى المحيط مليئاً بالأسرار.

Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Aronnax and his companions choose to escape despite the dangers they faced?
They chose freedom over the Nautilus's wonders, risking the storm to escape Captain Nemo and return safely home.
2. How did the storm affect the companions' journey, and what challenges did it present?
The companions faced a dangerous storm with huge waves and strong winds, making their journey hard, but they continued seeking freedom.
3. Why do you think Captain Nemo chose isolation instead of interacting with the world?
Because Captain Nemo chose isolation because he suffered from the cruelty of living on land before. He saw himself as part of the sea.
4. What do you think Aronnax meant by "the ocean remains vast and mysterious"?
I think Aronnax meant that the ocean is incredibly huge and full of secrets humans may never fully understand.

Story Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- is the narrator of the adventures on the Nautilus.
a) Ned Land
b) Conseil
c) Professor Aronnax
d) Captain Nemo
- remained loyal and calm throughout the journey.
a) Ned Land
b) Conseil
c) Nemo
d) Aronnax
- insisted that they should escape the Nautilus.
a) Aronnax
b) Conseil
c) Nemo
d) Ned Land
- accepted staying on the Nautilus out of scientific curiosity.
a) Ned Land
b) Nemo
c) Aronnax
d) Conseil
- didn't reveal his past and it remained unknown.
a) Conseil
b) Nemo
c) Aronnax
d) Ned Land
- wrote down all the adventures afterward.
a) Nemo
b) Ned Land
c) Conseil
d) Aronnax
- viewed the ocean as a "battlefield".
a) Aronnax
b) Nemo
c) Ned Land
d) Conseil
- Aronnax and his companions were taken after falling into the sea into
a) a fishing boat
b) a beach
c) a submarine
d) a lighthouse
- The underwater forest exploration involved
a) swimming
b) walking in special suits
c) diving from the surface
d) riding underwater animals
- The Nautilus escaped the ice trap by
a) swimming
b) using harpoons
c) breaking a path to the surface
d) leaving the ship
- attacked the ship.
a) A giant whale
b) A giant squid
c) A sea snake
d) A huge shark

12. Nemo attacked on the surface.
- a) islands
 - b) submarines
 - c) warships
 - d) fishing boats
13. Aronnax saw through the Nautilus windows.
- a) coral reefs
 - b) deep-sea fish
 - c) sunken ships
 - d) all of the above
14. What did the companions do during their final escape?
- a) swam away
 - b) used a small boat
 - c) broke through the Nautilus hull
 - d) flew away
15. Aronnax and the others escaped to
- a) a desert island
 - b) a fishing village
 - c) the shore
 - d) another ship
16. What was never discovered at the end?
- a) Nemo's age
 - b) what became of the Nautilus
 - c) Ned Land's future
 - d) the location of the escape
17. The Nautilus represented a from the inside.
- a) cave
 - b) floating palace
 - c) park
 - d) room
18. During the diving trips, the crew walked on
- a) mountains
 - b) stones
 - c) the sea bed
 - d) ice
19. The glowing monster turned out to be a
- a) fish
 - b) submarine
 - c) shark
 - d) warship
20. The story is about "....."
- a) Friendship and jealousy
 - b) Exploration vs. freedom
 - c) Life in space
 - d) Competition
21. The story suggests that ambition mixed with sorrow lead to
- a) happiness
 - b) wealth
 - c) isolation
 - d) anger
22. The ocean in the story represents
- a) boredom
 - b) mystery
 - c) simplicity
 - d) freedom only

2 Answer the following questions:

Factual questions:

1. Why did sailors originally believe the sea monster was dangerous?
.....
.....
2. How did Aronnax react when he first saw the Nautilus?
.....
.....
3. What did the sunken city reveal about the ocean's past?
.....
.....
4. What made the Nautilus seem like a "floating palace"?
.....
.....
5. What does the giant squid attack show about the dangers of the deep sea?
.....
.....
6. Why did Aronnax hesitate before choosing to escape?
.....
.....
7. How does Nemo's sorrow affect the atmosphere on the Nautilus?
.....
.....
8. Why did Aronnax write down the adventures later?
.....
.....
9. What lesson did Aronnax learn at the end of the story?
.....
.....
10. How did Aronnax change throughout the story?
.....
.....

Critical thinking questions:

1. Do you think Nemo was a hero or a villain شرير? Why?

2. Was Aronnax right to stay on the Nautilus initially في البداية? Why or why not?

3. How would the story change if Nemo had revealed كشف his past?

4. What does Ned Land's desire for freedom tell us about human nature?

5. What would you have done if the Nautilus was trapped under ice?

6. How might the world react if the Nautilus became known publicly?

7. Why do you think Nemo feared returning to land?

8. Would you join Nemo if he invited you today? Why?

9. What does Conseil teach us about loyalty?

10. What does the ending teach us about accepting the unknown?

Part 3

Final Exams



A)

(10) General Exams

اختبارات نهائية لطالبة العام وعددها (١٠).

B)

(4) Al-Azhar Exams

اختبارات الأزهر وعددها (٤).

(A) Final Exams (General)

Exam (1)

A

Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The between the two armies lasted for many days without rest.
a) event b) race c) battle d) competition
2. My teacher always treats everyone with respect. The antonym of "respect" is "
a) admiration b) dislike c) disapproval d) disrespect
3. The players had to restart the game. The prefix "re-" means "
a) again b) not c) before d) without
4. A/An is a special event like a wedding or graduation.
a) identity b) harmony c) culture d) ceremony

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

skills – clues – torches – artifacts – winners

During the summer camp, our group decided to participate in a treasure hunt. Each player had to use creative thinking and search for (1)..... hidden in the park. I loved discovering valuable objects and solving riddles with my friends. The game also helped us to build teamwork (2)..... We preferred following the map carefully instead of guessing. Some clues were about historical (3)....., which made the activity more educational. At the end, the (4)..... received a special prize.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Last winter, Sami and his uncle went camping in the Western Desert near Giza. They packed a lightweight tent, warm blankets, and enough food for three days. The sky was clear, and the stars looked crystal clear at night. On their second evening, they built a small campfire and roasted marshmallows. While they sat quietly, Sami saw something move in the sand. It was a small desert fox! It didn't run away—it just watched them with curious eyes. Sami felt relaxed and happy. Before bed, his uncle told a travel tale about getting lost in the same desert years ago. He said the most important thing was to stay calm and never go on the move alone. Sami will never forget that peaceful night under the golden stars.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the passage is about
a) building a campfire b) a peaceful camping trip
c) finding foxes d) dangerous deserts
- Sami and his uncle ate by the fire.
a) bread b) fruit c) marshmallows d) rice
- Sami's uncle said the most important thing in the desert is to
a) run fast b) stay calm
c) shout for help d) travel alone

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where did Sami and his uncle go camping?
.....

5. Why do you think the fox didn't run away?
.....

6. What do you think Sami will do the next time he goes camping?
.....

B The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- People believe that a is attacking ships.
a) giant octopus b) sea serpent
c) mysterious sea monster d) hidden enemy navy
- The French scientist invited to join the expedition.
a) Captain Nemo b) Ned Land
c) Conseil d) Pierre Aronnax
- Nemo considers the sea to be his only
a) treasure b) home c) enemy d) friend
- During one journey, they explored an underwater of strange plants.
a) forest b) cave c) desert d) mountain

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why did governments decide to send a warship to hunt the "monster"?
.....

6. Aronnax both admires Nemo and fears him. Why do you think so?
.....



Writing

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The boy is my cousin. He won the school race. (who)
.....
2. "Where do penguins live?" Hana asked the zookeeper. (asked)
.....
3. I lived in the countryside when I was young. (used to)
.....

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Nour loves (play) on the big red slide at the park.
2. Laila asked where I (live) three years before.
3. After we (reach) the village, we visited our grandparents.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Zain and Laila are talking about the Olympics in the past and now.

Zain : Are today's Olympics similar to the old ones?

Laila : (1)

Zain : (2)?

Laila : Countries from all over the world can join it.

Zain : Did they have medals long ago?

Laila : (3) Gold medals started in 1904!

Zain : Were women allowed to compete before?

Laila : (4) Women competed for the first time in 1900.

Zain : (5)?

Laila : They were held every four years—just like today!

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Your community traditions"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is that the fennec fox
a) eats insects and birds b) has special body parts to survive
c) lives in forests d) drinks a lot of water
2. The fennec fox hunts
a) in the morning b) during the day
c) at night d) in winter
3. The fennec fox gets most of its from food because water is scarce.
a) energy b) heat c) moisture d) fur

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where does the fennec fox sleep during the day?
.....
5. Why might the fennec fox have light-colored fur?
.....
6. What could happen to fennec foxes if they live in colder places?
.....

B

The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The real identity of the "sea monster" is a/an
a) pirate ship b) whale
c) submarine d) sea creature
2. is the Canadian harpooner aboard the expedition.
a) Aronnax b) Nemo c) Conseil d) Ned Land
3. The Nautilus sometimes travels beneath, creating dangerous situations.
a) forests b) ice c) mountains d) deserts
4. Captain Nemo hides details about his from the companions.
a) wealth b) past c) knowledge d) crew

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What amazed the three men when they first entered the Nautilus?
.....
6. Why do you think Ned Land was the one who insisted on escaping, while Aronnax and Conseil hesitated?
.....

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I visited London in 2023. (ago)

.....

2. "Why will you sell your car?" said Amin. (asked)

.....

3. I didn't get the news until I had met Adel. (As soon as)

.....

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Reem (uses) to play tennis.

2. The boy (who) dog ran away is my neighbor.

3. The GPS (stop) working because we hadn't charged the battery.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Rania thinks a team leader helps people work together.

Omar: What does a team leader do, Rania?

Rania: (1)

Omar: Do they make everyone feel included?

Rania: (2) Everyone feels part of the team.

Omar: (3) ?

Rania: Yes, they listen to every idea.

Omar: What should they do if they face problems?

Rania: (4)

Omar: (5) ?

Rania: They say to the team, "Let's do our best together!"

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A sport you like"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam (3)

A

Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Bears' happens in winter to save energy when food is very scarce.
a) migration b) hibernation c) exercise d) travel
2. The surface of the old wooden table was very smooth. The antonym of "smooth" is ".....".
a) flat b) rough c) remote d) difficult
3. The doctor advised me to do regular exercise. We use the prefix "....." to get the opposite of "regular".
a) un- b) im- c) ir- d) dis-
4. A/An is the way of life, beliefs, and traditions of a particular group of people.
a) ceremony b) culture c) harmony d) festival

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

gather – storm – scenery – harmony – built

Last summer, I went hiking in the mountains with my brother. The trail was narrow but beautiful, with breathtaking (1) all around. We had packed lightweight bags with water and snacks. Dark clouds began to (2) overhead, and suddenly, heavy rain started to pour down. We quickly (3) shelter under a large rock. By the time the (4) passed, we had spent a nice time.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

One day, I dream of competing in the Olympics. I practice athletics every day: running, jumping, and discus throwing. My coach says I have talent, but I must keep training to reach excellence. The Olympics are not just about winning medals; they are about representing your nation with pride and making friends from other countries. I'm a big fan of watching gymnastics on TV, especially the ring event. Athletes come from every continent to join this huge sports event. The host country builds stadiums and villages for the athletes. When I see the flags of different nations waving together, I feel hopeful. I wish I had started training earlier, but I won't give up. One day, I hope to wear my country's colors and receive a medal.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of this passage is about
a) being an Olympic athlete b) the best Olympic sport
c) summer sports d) disliking sports
2. The writer practices
a) swimming b) weightlifting c) athletics d) ice hockey
3. When the writer sees the flags of different nations waving together, they feel
a) nervous b) proud c) hopeful d) tired

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What does the writer say about gymnastics?
.....
5. What are three things the writer says about the Olympics?
.....
6. Do you think the writer will become an Olympian بطل أوليمبي؟ Why or why not?
.....

B The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Captain Nemo says that is his only homeland.
a) France b) the ocean c) Atlantis d) the Arctic
2. allow the crew of the Nautilus to walk on the ocean floor.
a) Magic suits b) Oxygen tanks and diving suits
c) Glass tunnels d) Air-filled balloons
3. The companions are called "half-prisoners and half-....." on the Nautilus.
a) explorers b) guests c) scientists d) sailors
4. The Nautilus contains a library, museum, and large for observing the sea.
a) windows b) engines c) doors d) ladders

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How does Nemo justify يبرر keeping the three men on the submarine?
.....
6. If you were Professor Aronnax, would you have joined the voyage? Why or why not?
.....



Writing

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. We reached the village. Then we saw the lights. (After)
.....
2. "Don't touch the hot pan!" the chef said to the children. (warned)
.....
3. Taher wants to become a scientist when he grows up. (would like)
.....

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I (used to) travel by car, but now I do.
2. The baby kept (cry) until his mother gave him his favorite toy.
3. Nada wondered if the giraffe (can) really reach the tallest tree leaves.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Emma is asking Tamer about traditional weddings.

Emma : What happens at Egyptian weddings?

Tamer : (1)

Emma : Do they wear special clothes?

Tamer : (2)

Emma : (3)?

Tamer : Yes, there is food that is delicious.

Emma : Do people give gifts?

Tamer : (4)

Emma : This makes the bride and the groom feel happy. (5)?

Tamer : Yes, it's full of fun.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A wild animal"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We should always people who make achievements in difficult situations.
 a) honor b) replace c) share d) offer
2. The instructions he gave were very clear. The synonym of "clear" is ".....".
 a) huge b) obvious c) renewable d) unclear
3. The whole city joined the celebration. The suffix "-ion" is added to the verb "celebrate" to form a/an ".....".
 a) adjective b) noun c) verb d) adverb
4. A/An is a person who travels to unknown places to discover new things.
 a) artifact b) shelter c) explorer d) torch

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

scarce – hump – hill – adaptation – sandstorms

Camels are amazing desert animals. They have a large (1)..... on their back that stores fat, not water. This fat gives them energy when food is (2)..... . Their wide feet help them walk on soft sand without sinking. Long eyelashes protect their eyes from (3)..... . Researchers wonder how camels could go for days without drinking. This behavior is a perfect example of (4)..... to extreme conditions.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Antar Ibn Shaddad is a famous Arab folk hero known for his bravery, loyalty, and intelligence. He was born into a Bedouin tribe and grew up learning the importance of courage and honor. When enemies attacked his tribe, Antar acted to defend his people. He led his fighters with clever strategies and defeated stronger rivals. His adventures included long journeys across deserts, fighting rival tribes, and protecting the weak during times of hardship. Storytellers often tell poems and stories about Antar to teach children lessons about courage and loyalty. Many people admire Antar because he inspired others to act bravely and wisely. His legend remains important today because it reminds everyone that loyalty, intelligence, and courage are qualities of a true hero.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is that Antar
a) traveled to other countries b) is a famous Arab folk hero
c) liked animals d) built homes
2. Antar defeated his rivals by using
a) magic powers b) clever strategies
c) gold d) loud shouting
3. Storytellers share Antar's adventures to teach children about
a) courage and loyalty b) wealth and power
c) magic and luck d) music and dance

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where was Antar born?
5. What lessons does Antar's story teach about bravery?
6. What might happen if Antar had not led his tribe wisely?

B

The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The Nautilus's impressed Aronnax the most.
a) kitchen b) electric engine
c) underwater garden d) library and museum
2. What kind of treasures does Nemo collect from the sea?
a) Rare fish. b) Sunken gold and pearls.
c) Coral jewelry. d) Ancient maps.
3. Aronnax feels both and fear toward Nemo.
a) curiosity b) admiration
c) both a and b d) anger
4. The story ends with the ocean still full of
a) ships and sailors b) secrets and mysteries
c) islands and treasure d) warships

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Describe three wonders Aronnax sees through the Nautilus's windows.
.....
6. Captain Nemo says the sea is his only homeland. What do you think this tells us about his past or personality?
.....

C

Writing

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. We finished our work. Then we went to the cinema. (After)

2. "Don't forget to bring back my toy," Sami said to Alaa. (asked)

3. Did you know the boy? He broke the glass of the window. (who)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Basim (use) to smoke, but now he doesn't.

2. She decided (learn) how to swim this year.

3. Samir asked me what color I (prefer).

7 Complete the following dialog:

Hala is telling Zain about her visit to the farm with her class.

Zain : Where did you go with your class?

Hala : (1)

Zain : (2)?

Hala : We saw cows, chickens, sheep, and a friendly dog.

Zain : Did you feed any animals?

Hala : (3)

Zain : Was it fun to be there and feed rabbits?

Hala : (4) I even rode a horse.

Zain : (5)?

Hala : Yes, I would like to go there again.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"The role of a good leader"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam (5)

A

Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Some animals have large to help them walk in deserts or on ice.
a) paws b) feathers c) humps d) ears
2. They built an immense statue in the center of the city. The antonym of "immense" is "
a) huge b) sustainable c) tiny d) obvious
3. His greatest achievement was winning the race. The suffix "-ment" in "achievement" is used to form a/an "
a) verb b) adjective c) adverb d) noun
4. A/An is an animal that hunts and eats other animals.
a) adaptation b) migration c) predator d) conservation

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

competition – do – athletes – keep – make

The school sports day was full of activity and energy. Some (1)..... felt nervous before their final event. They knew they had practiced hard for weeks leading up to the (2)..... . The children tried to (3)..... new friends during the break between races. Their supportive coaches encouraged them to (4)..... a positive attitude regardless of بغض النظر عن the final score.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Nour noticed that her study group was losing energy before exams. Some members felt they couldn't succeed. Instead of ignoring this, she decided to act. She set goals with the group: "Let's learn five words a day." She broke big lessons into steps so nothing felt too hard. Every evening, she welcomed questions and gave kind feedback. She never made anyone feel small for not knowing something. When Ali said he felt tired, she showed empathy and suggested a short break. Her vision was that everyone could improve with support. She told the group to keep trying, even after small mistakes. Because of her motivated attitude and willingness to help, the whole team passed their tests with better grades than before.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the passage is ".....".
 - a) exams are very difficult
 - b) study groups need breaks
 - c) encouraging leaders
 - d) only smart students pass tests
2. Nour told the group to
 - a) stop studying
 - b) keep trying
 - c) ask the teacher
 - d) work alone
3. Because of Nour's help and motivation, the study group
 - a) repeated the tests
 - b) recorded the lessons
 - c) got better grades
 - d) stopped studying

B) Answer the following questions:

4. How many new words did the group learn each day?
.....

5. How did Ali probably feel after Nour suggested a break?
.....

6. What did Nour do to help her study group?
.....

B The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The travelers explored a/an using diving suits.
 - a) sunken airport
 - b) underwater forest
 - c) deep-sea volcano
 - d) ice palace
2. They visited that hints at lost civilizations.
 - a) Troy
 - b) Rome
 - c) a sunken city
 - d) Egypt
3. Conseil is loyal to Aronnax and throughout the voyage.
 - a) questions Nemo
 - b) records marine life
 - c) helps Aronnax
 - d) fights warships
4. During their underwater journeys, Aronnax and his companions explored
 - a) deserts and forests
 - b) castles and caves
 - c) mountains and rivers
 - d) coral reefs and sunken cities

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why is Ned Land unhappy despite seeing the ocean's beauty?
.....

6. Why do you think Aronnax was so excited to explore the underwater world, while Ned Land became more frustrated?
.....



Writing

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. My brother decided not to eat fast food. (avoided)
.....
2. "How do animals stay cool in summer?" they asked. (inquired)
.....
3. I returned home after finishing my work. (had finished)
.....

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ahmed used to play football when he (is) young.
2. This is the street (when) I first learned to ride my bicycle.
3. They refused (share) their snacks.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Amal and Ahlam are talking about their project.

Amal : We have to do a project about animals.

Ahlam : I know! (1)

Amal : We should choose penguins. They are funny.

Ahlam : (2)

Amal : We should include pictures of where they live.

Ahlam : How about writing facts about what they eat?

Amal : (3)

Ahlam : Should we make a model for it?

Amal : (4)

Ahlam : (5) These are confusing.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A travel narrative"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A

Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The team looked after playing for extra time.
a) exhausted b) amazed c) bored d) quiet
- The museum works hard to preserve the ancient artifacts. The synonym of "preserve" is "....."
a) damage b) protect c) neglect d) buy
- The magician made the rabbit disappear. The prefix "dis-" is used to
a) mean again b) give the opposite
c) mean before d) refer to the synonym
- are changes that help living things survive in their environment.
a) Adaptations b) Predators
c) Migrations d) Conservations

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

heritage – bring – rule – immense – store

Tutankhamun became a pharaoh when he was only nine years old. Though his time was short, his tomb brought him (1)..... glory in modern times. He ruled after Akhenaten's changes. Tutankhamun worked to (2)..... peace and prosperity back to Egypt. His advisors helped him to make wise decisions. Trade and building projects began again under his (3)..... . His (4)..... lives on through the treasures found in his tomb.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Last Saturday was a special day. I went to the park with my best friends, Sara and Omar. We decided to spend the whole day outdoors because the weather was sunny and warm. First, we played on the swings and slides. Then, we had a picnic under a big tree. We ate sandwiches, fruits, and cookies while talking and laughing together. After lunch, we played a game of football. Everyone was running, kicking, and having fun. Later, we collected flowers and watched birds flying above. We ended the day by taking pictures and sharing our favorite moments. I felt very happy because spending time with friends is always special. I will never forget this day because it was full of joy, laughter, and friendship.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the passage is about a
 - rainy day
 - fun day
 - school trip
 - birthday party
- The passage mentions the friends did all the following EXCEPT
 - playing football
 - having a picnic
 - collecting flowers
 - swimming in a pool
- The writer will never forget the day because it was full of
 - homework
 - joy and laughter
 - joy and movies
 - homework and exams

8) Answer the following questions:

- What did the friends eat during their picnic?
- How do you think the writer felt while playing football?
- What do you think the friends will do next weekend?

B The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A attacks the Nautilus in the Atlantic.
a) shark b) whale c) giant squid d) sea dragon
2. plays the main role in fighting off the creature on deck.
a) Captain Nemo b) Conseil
c) Professor Aronnax d) Ned Land
3. Professor Aronnax accepts staying on the Nautilus because of his
a) fear of the sea b) scientific curiosity
c) love for Ned Land d) dislike of Nemo
4. Captain Nemo refuses to let the passengers return to
a) the ocean b) land
c) the sunken city d) his museum

B) Answer the following questions:

6. Why do you think the battle with the squid was especially frightening?



Writing

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. The policeman said, "Don't cross the street." (warned)

2. She usually went to bed late when she was young. (used to)

3. We got the latest news after we had watched that program. (until)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Mom reminded me (wash) my hands before eating.

2. That's the café (when) serves the best hot chocolate in Giza.

3. Ahmed enjoys (read) stories about Faraway Lands.

7 Complete the following dialog:

A student is asking his teacher about Camels' special adaptations.

Student: How can camels live in the hot desert?

Teacher: (1)

Student: What kinds of adaptations do camels have?

Teacher: (2)

Student: Long eyelashes! (3)?

Teacher: The humps store fat, which gives them energy.

Student: Do they drink water every day?

Teacher: (4)

Student: That's amazing! (5)?

Teacher: They walk on the sand with their wide feet.

8 Write a biography of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A folk Arab hero"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam (7)

A

Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The final match of the was very challenging.
a) championship b) confusion c) spirit d) discipline
2. The treasure they discovered was extremely valuable. The synonym of "valuable" is ".....".
a) boring b) precious c) lost d) unreal
3. The teacher will encourage the students before the test. The prefix "en-" is used to form a/an
a) noun b) verb c) adjective d) adverb
4. The wrote a book about ancient civilizations in detail.
a) engineer b) teacher c) historian d) doctor

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

dead – tomb – guide – ambition – attraction

Youssef always admired ancient history. Last spring, he made a trip to Luxor. He visited a (1)..... that left him amazed. He had read many books about the (2)..... before, but seeing the real place was different. A friendly (3)..... explained the meaning of each symbol on the walls. At last, Youssef understood why people came from all over the world. The journey gave him an (4)..... to become a historian.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Last month, our friends joined a treasure hunt in the park. The game included many hidden objects and valuable artifacts. Each team had to follow clues to find treasures. Some clues were riddles, while others were written on paper. Players enjoyed solving puzzles and discovering hidden items. The activity encouraged creative thinking and teamwork. Some challenges included musical instruments, while others required quick thinking. Everyone preferred to work in teams to complete the tasks. The treasure hunt helped us to build problem-solving skills and observation. At the end, all teams received a small prize. It was an educational and enjoyable activity. I hope we have another treasure hunt soon because it was exciting and fun for all the children.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of this text is about
a) joining a treasure hunt
b) reading books quietly
c) playing music only
d) watching a movie
2. The teams needed to
a) cook food
b) draw pictures
c) walk in the park
d) solve riddles
3. The treasure hunt helped participants build
a) problem-solving skills
b) strength and speed
c) drawing and painting skills
d) music skills

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What were the treasures hidden in?
.....
5. Why did the children prefer working in teams?
.....
6. What might happen in the next treasure hunt if the organizers hide more clues?
.....

B

The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The story suggests that scientific curiosity is
a) dangerous
b) pointless
c) powerful but must be guided by ethics
d) should replace emotions
2. The icy trap happened in the
a) Caribbean
b) South Pole
c) Mediterranean
d) Indian Ocean
3. The Nautilus is powered by
a) steam
b) wind
c) coal
d) electricity
4. Life on the Nautilus is described as a under the sea.
a) palace
b) prison
c) cave
d) shipwreck

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How did the Nautilus escape from under the polar ice?
.....
6. Nemo destroys warships without hesitation. Do you think his actions are justified مبرر؟ Why or why not?
.....

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. That's the day. I learned to ride a bike on it. (when)

.....

2. "Where are you going now?" Ali said. (asked)

.....

3. Samar ate dinner. Then she left the house. (As soon as)

.....

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My brother (finish) his homework before he went out to play.

2. My sister encouraged me (try) again after I failed.

3. Did you use to walk to school when you (are) young?

7 Complete the following dialog:

Youssef is asking **Nour** about her favorite sport.

Youssef : What is your favorite sport?

Nour : (1)

Youssef : Why do you like basketball?

Nour : (2)

Youssef : (3) ?

Nour : Yes, I play in our school team.

Youssef : Who is your favorite player?

Nour : My favorite player is LeBron James.

Youssef : (4) ?

Nour : I practice every afternoon.

Youssef : Do you score points in games?

Nour : (5)

8 Write a story of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"Qualities of effective leaders"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A

Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The children were very brave during the fire drill تحريب. The antonym of "brave" is ".....".
a) courageous b) exciting c) afraid d) real
- She is a very kind person. We add the suffix "....." to the adjective "kind" to get the noun.
a) -ful b) -al c) -or d) -ness
- is the history, traditions, and culture that are passed down from previous generations.
a) Budget b) Heritage c) Marketing d) Prosperity
- The weather in Aswan is much hotter and different the weather in Alexandria.
a) of b) at c) in d) from

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

for – to – solve – pump – pressure

Youth tries hard to help people in Upper Egypt. A group of young people formed a team to (1)..... water problems. They wanted to build a low-cost water (2)..... using solar energy. They did research and generated ideas. They tested their pump (3)..... and improved it three times. Thanks (4)..... their teamwork, the pump worked well. Farmers used it to grow cotton. The team felt they had reached their goal.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

The desert tortoise is a slow-moving reptile that lives in dry, sandy places. It spends most of its time in an underground hole to escape the harsh sun. This cool shelter helps it survive extreme heat during the day and freezing cold at night. The tortoise has a hard shell that protects it from predators. It eats grass, flowers, and cacti الصبار, and can store water in its body for months. Because water is scarce, it drinks only when it rains. Conservation experts asked whether tortoises could live if their habitat was destroyed. They said protecting the desert is important for their survival. The tortoise may be slow, but its adaptations are excellent for desert life.

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. We finished school. Then we met our friends in the club. (Before)

2. "Why didn't you tell me about that terrible accident?" (Adel asked)

3. Don't repeat the same mistakes, Faten. (Avoid)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Dad warned me (not come) late again.

2. Remember (close) the windows before you sleep.

3. Summer is the season (which) we always visit our grandparents.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Karim thinks traditions make good memories for us.

Hana : What tradition do you love the most, Karim?

Karim: (1)

Hana : (2)?

Karim: I love the Ramadan tradition because we gather when we eat.

Hana : (3)?

Karim: Yes, we visit friends during Ramadan.

Hana : Does your school have any traditions?

Karim: (4)

Hana : When is this party?

Karim: (5)

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A special day you spent"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam (9)

A

Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. People around the world holidays with music and food.
a) perform b) celebrate c) gather d) reflect
2. A thick fog covered the entire city. The antonym of "thick" is ".....".
a) dense b) huge c) thin d) warm
3. We had an enjoyable time at the party. The suffix "-able" is added to the verb "enjoy" to form a/an ".....".
a) adverb b) noun c) adjective d) verb
4. A/An is a trip to explore and observe nature and wildlife, often in the desert.
a) hospitality b) safari c) snorkeling d) tomb

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

physical – prepare – value – chemical – running

The ancient Greeks believed in the harmony **تلاغم** of mind and body. Athletes used to train daily to (1)..... for the Olympic Games. They understood the true (2)..... of discipline and dedication. Achieving great speed in (3)..... events was highly respected. Ultimately, these sports promoted excellent (4)..... health among citizens.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

A group of friends started a recycling club at their school in Alexandria. They wanted to reduce waste and teach others about clean habits. The team made colorful posters and placed bins for paper, plastic, and metal in every classroom. They also gave short talks during break. One member designed a clear message: "Recycle today for a better tomorrow!" Another kept track of how much waste they collected each week. The school head teacher advised them to collect plastic bottles in blue bins. At first, some students forgot to recycle, but the team stayed patient and reminded them kindly. After two months, they recycled over 200 kilograms of material. The city even gave them a small prize. Now, the club meets every Wednesday to plan new ideas.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is that students
a) organized a football match b) started a recycling club
c) built a new playground d) sold lemonade
2. The bins for plastic bottles were
a) red b) green c) blue d) yellow
3. According to the passage, the club recycled of material.
a) 50 kilograms b) 100 kilograms
c) over 190 kilograms d) over 250 kilograms

B) Answer the following questions:

4. Where did the team place the recycling bins?
.....

5. What does their patience tell you about the team's attitude?
.....

6. What new idea might the club try next month?
.....

B

The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Aronnax admires Captain Nemo's most.
a) cooking b) bravery in battle
c) scientific knowledge d) sailing skills
2. Aronnax was worried because Nemo didn't talk about
a) his love of music. b) his past.
c) his kindness to fish. d) his good handwriting.
3. Captain Nemo attacks warships without mercy because he wants to
a) explore the oceans b) fight against cruelty
c) return to land d) collect treasure
4. The companions escape the Nautilus near the coasts of
a) Africa b) Asia c) Europe d) America

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How does the storm symbolize the challenges of seeking freedom or knowledge in life?
.....

6. Why do the three companions have mixed feelings about their life on the Nautilus?
.....



Writing

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Summer is the season. It has the longest days. (which)
.....
2. Amir usually played tennis when he was young. (used to)
.....
3. My father recommended studying early in the morning. (wanted me)
.....

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ali started (practice) piano every evening.
2. The student inquired what time they (will) have the exams.
3. The train (leave) by the time they got to the station.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Maher is asking Fareed about the story of the lion and the mouse.

Maher : Do you know the story of the lion and the mouse?

Fareed : (1) Can you tell me?

Maher : (2) A tiny mouse wakes a sleeping lion.

Fareed : Was the lion angry?

Maher : (3)

Fareed : (4)?

Maher : Yes, the lion let him go. Then the mouse helped him.

Fareed : (5)?

Maher : He saved him from a hunter's net.

Fareed : Wow! Small friends can do big things.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A personal adventure experience"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A

Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The of hard work appears when you reach success.
a) value b) skill c) event d) race
2. She was very successful in her career and achieved all her goals. The suffix "-ful" in "successful" makes it a/an
a) adjective b) adverb c) noun d) verb
3. She is a very kind person. We add the suffix "....." to the adjective "kind" to form the noun.
a) -ful b) -al c) -or d) -ness
4. Animals like chameleons use to blend in with their surroundings and hide from predators.
a) decoration b) camouflage c) color d) shadow

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

share – strengthen – respects – existed – passed

Traditions are more than just celebrations; they are lessons that shape character. A person who (1)..... their customs understands unity and peace. When families meet to (2)..... delicious meals, they develop love and kindness. A carnival may look joyful, but it also teaches teamwork among participants. Such events not only (3)..... relationships, but also preserve the culture that has (4)..... for centuries.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions:

Yesterday, our school hosted a sports tournament. The students played team sports like football and relay races. Everyone tried their best, staying focused and calm. The coach encouraged the players to work together and have fun. Some students were late for their matches, which caused a little anger, but they quickly joined the game. The atmosphere in the sports club was full of excitement. Winners felt refreshed and proud of their achievements. Everyone made friends and learned the importance of discipline and honesty. The semi-final matches were very challenging, but the students gave their best. For me, the best part was seeing the children enjoy healthy competition and amazing teamwork.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The main idea of the text is that the school was full of excitement.
a) discipline b) tournament c) atmosphere d) teamwork
2. Students stayed during the games.
a) calm b) focused c) scared d) a & b
3. The tournament helped students learn the importance of discipline and
a) honesty b) speed c) strength d) luck

B) Answer the following questions:

4. What sport did the students play in the tournament?
.....
5. Why do you think the students felt proud after winning?
.....
6. What do you think will happen in the next school tournament?
.....

B The Story

4 A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ned Land's grows stronger as the voyage continues.
a) scientific interest b) love for the submarine
c) desire to escape d) friendship with Nemo
2. Conseil always remains loyal to
a) Captain Nemo b) the ocean
c) Professor Aronnax d) his family
3. The story teaches that human curiosity can achieve wonders, but can lead to isolation.
a) ambition mixed with sorrow
b) friendship mixed with courage
c) bravery mixed with fear
d) knowledge mixed with carefulness
4. Ned Land felt angry because he valued more than anything.
a) money b) books c) freedom d) gold

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why does Ned Land believe it's wrong to stay on the Nautilus?
.....
6. Each character sees the ocean. Why do you think the same place can feel so different to different people?
.....



Writing

5 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. Mother said, "Don't drink too much cola." (warned)

2. We got the new clothes. Then we decided to attend the wedding party. (Before)

3. I no longer اعد لم stay up late. (used to)

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. After they (eat) dinner, they watched the match.

2. I (have gone) to the zoo a month ago.

3. This is the museum (when) they keep ancient Egyptian treasures.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Aly is explaining that the Arctic fox has thick white fur to stay warm.

Kady: How does the Arctic fox survive the freezing cold?

Aly : (1)

Kady: Does it change the color of the thick white fur?

Aly : (2)

Kady: Why does it change color?

Aly : (3)

Kady: (4)?

Aly : It eats small animals, birds, and eggs.

Kady: (5)?

Aly : It listens for movement under the snow.

8 Write a text of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

"A local hero you know"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Language Functions

Kareem : Swimming become a real sport in the 1800s in Europe.

d) took

Part 3

4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:

1. I didn't travel to London until I had gotten a visa. (After)
2. The teacher teaches science. She comes from Alex. (who)
3. Don't forget to call your grandmother on her birthday. (Remember)
4. "Who broke the classroom window?" the principal said to the boys. (The principal asked)

C Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

During midyear vacation, my family and I traveled to Aswan. We stayed in a hotel near the Nile. One evening, we decided to take a boat ride on the Nile. The sun was setting, and the water looked golden. I saw birds flying and palm trees along the shore. I was thrilled by the peaceful feeling. I managed to capture a perfect shot of the river with my phone. Our boat driver was very helpful and told us about the local islands. Before this trip, I had never been south of Cairo. Now, I understand why Aswan is so special. I want to return during spring when the weather is cooler and flowers are blooming everywhere.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did the boat driver tell them?
2. Why was the writer thrilled?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 3.** The main idea of the passage is about
- a) staying in a hotel b) a boat ride
c) seeing birds d) using a phone
- 4.** They took the boat ride
- a) in the morning b) at noon
c) in the evening d) at night

D Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:

"An Arab hero"

Exam (2)

A Language Functions

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Karim thinks a fair leader treats everyone the same.

Salma : What does a fair leader do, Karim?

Karim : (1).....

Salma : (2).....?

Karim : No, they never have favorites.

Salma : Do people like fair leaders?

Karim : (3)..... . Everyone feels safe with them.

B Vocabulary and Structure

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The young wrote about his adventures across mountains and rivers.

a) inventor

b) explorer

c) driver

d) pilot

2. The lion is a strong that hunts other animals.

a) prey

b) insect

c) predator

d) tribe

3. Nabil loves stories to his little cousins before bedtime.

a) tell

b) to tell

c) telling

d) both b and c

4. The principal asked the student why he his homework the day before.

a) didn't do

b) hadn't done

c) doesn't do

d) wasn't doing

3 Read and complete the text with word(s) from the list:

of – to – kindness – preserve – connected

Celebrations around the world show customs and traditions that (1)..... the identity of societies. People greet each other with (2)..... and care for one another during these events. Customs, which are (3)..... to history and culture, are taught to young people step by step. Families and communities feel proud (4)..... their traditions and identity.

- 4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:**
1. What do the students talk about? (last Sunday)
 2. "Please water the plants while I'm away," Mom said to me. (asked)
 3. First, I discussed the problem with my friend. Then, we reached a good solution. (before)
 4. The car stopped suddenly. It caused a big accident. (that)

C Reading Comprehension

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Every year, millions of birds fly long distances in a journey called migration. They travel from cold places to warm ones in winter and back in spring. Birds migrate to find food, safe places to rest, and good spots to raise babies. Some birds fly over oceans and mountains. Scientists are fascinated by how birds know where to go. They use stars and the sun. Wildlife experts study migration by putting small tags on birds. These tags help collect data about their routes. Climate change is making migration harder—some birds arrive too early or too late. Protecting stopover sites is now very important.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Why do birds migrate?
2. Why is it a problem if birds arrive too early?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the passage is that birds
 - a) sing
 - b) migrate yearly
 - c) fly south in December
 - d) have heavy tags
4. Birds find their way during migration by
 - a) following cars
 - b) using the stars and the sun
 - c) asking other animals
 - d) reading maps

D Writing

6 Write an email of about SIX (6) sentences to your friend Salma to tell her about your favorite sport. Your name is Heba.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

A

1

Omar is telling Lina about how we celebrate Eid.

Lina : What festival do you celebrate, Omar?

Omar : (1)

Lina : (2)

Omar: It comes after Ramadan.

Lina : (3) 

Omar : We pray and visit our relatives.

8

2

- That sunset over the Nile was a/an sight full of colors and calmness.
a) scary b) slippery
c) unforgettable d) lightweight
- Education is a path to personal and national
a) ability b) prosperity
c) loss d) heritage
- They decided their old car and buy a new electric one.
a) sell b) selling c) to sell d) sold
- The teacher asked the children if they their library cards with them.
a) are bringing b) had brought
c) bring d) have brought

3

slippery – trail – embarrassed – relaxed – golden

Last October, I decided to go hiking alone in a national park. The (1)..... along the river was peaceful, with (2)..... leaves everywhere. But after heavy rains, the rocks became very (3)..... that I slipped near the waterfall. Fortunately, I didn't get hurt because I had held onto a tree branch just in time. I sat for a while, feeling a little (4)....., but also amazed by the breathtaking view.

- 4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:**
1. You should never share personal information online. (avoid)
 2. "What are you doing now?" said Mom. (Mom asked me)
 3. Dad had his breakfast. Then, he went to work. (after)
 4. "Don't look directly at the sun," the science teacher said to the class. (advised)

C Reading Comprehension

- 5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Long ago, sailors told a legend about Black Bay—a quiet place where the water sometimes glowed with a strange blue light. Many claimed to have seen a mysterious creature rise from beneath the waves. Some said it was a giant beast; others believed it was a man-made submarine from a secret expedition. The public debate grew intense, and newspapers were full of reports. A professor and his loyal servant once set sail to solve the mystery. They watched the waves for hours but saw nothing—until one night, a vivid, glowing shape moved silently past their boat. They never captured it, but they believed it was real.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. What did the glowing shape look like when it passed the boat?
2. Why do you think people kept talking about the mystery even after years?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the passage is about
 - a) taking photos
 - b) a mysterious glowing light
 - c) a sailing boat
 - d) dangerous submarines
4. A went to Black Bay to solve the mystery.
 - a) novelist and a harpooner
 - b) professor and his servant
 - c) captain and his crew
 - d) sailor and his dog

D Writing

- 6 Write a paragraph of about SIX (6) sentences on:**

"Animal adaptation"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam (4)

A Language Functions

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Rami is asking Heba about her visit to Luxor.

Rami: Have you ever been to Luxor?

Heba: (1)..... I went with my parents last spring.

Rami: (2).....?

Heba: We visited Karnak Temple.

Rami: Was it hot there?

Heba: (3)..... But we wore hats and drank lots of water.

B Vocabulary and Structure

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Athletes from every continent will their countries during the big event.

- a) represent b) attend c) expect d) welcome

2. Good role models teenagers to become better.

- a) welcome b) deny
c) inspire d) adjust

3. I that book before I saw the movie.

- a) read b) had read
c) have read d) was reading

4. She her brother not to play video games after midnight.

- a) told b) said c) asked to d) spoke

3 Read and complete the text with word(s) from the list:

thick – adapt – adopt – survival – hole

Desert nights can be freezing cold, even after a hot day. Animals must (1)..... to this extreme change in temperature. The fennec fox uses its (2)..... fur to stay warm at night. It sleeps during the day in an underground (3)..... . These simple actions are part of their incredible (4)..... strategy in a harsh environment.

- 4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) between brackets:**
1. I thanked the young man for helping my father. (because)
 2. The phone is not working. I bought it yesterday. (that)
 3. You must ask for permission before leaving class. (need)
 4. "Can you swim?" said my friend. (My friend wanted to know)

C Reading Comprehension

- 5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Last Friday, I spent a special day with my friends at the zoo. We were all excited because it was our first visit this year. First, we went to see the lions and tigers. We listened carefully to the zookeeper describing how they live in the wild. Then, we watched the monkeys swinging from tree to tree. After that, we had lunch under a big umbrella while talking and laughing about the animals we saw. In the afternoon, we visited the aquarium and saw colorful fish and turtles. We also took many pictures to bring back happy memories. I really enjoyed this day because I learned a lot about animals and nature while having fun with my friends.

A) Answer the following questions:

1. Where did the friends have their lunch?
2. What can you infer about how the friends felt at the zoo?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3. The main idea of the passage is about
 - a) a fun day at school
 - b) visiting a zoo with friends
 - c) going to a movie
 - d) shopping with family
4. The friends saw the first.
 - a) monkeys
 - b) lions and tigers
 - c) fish
 - d) turtles

D Writing

- 6 Write a biography of about SIX (6) sentences on:**

"A good leader you admire"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....